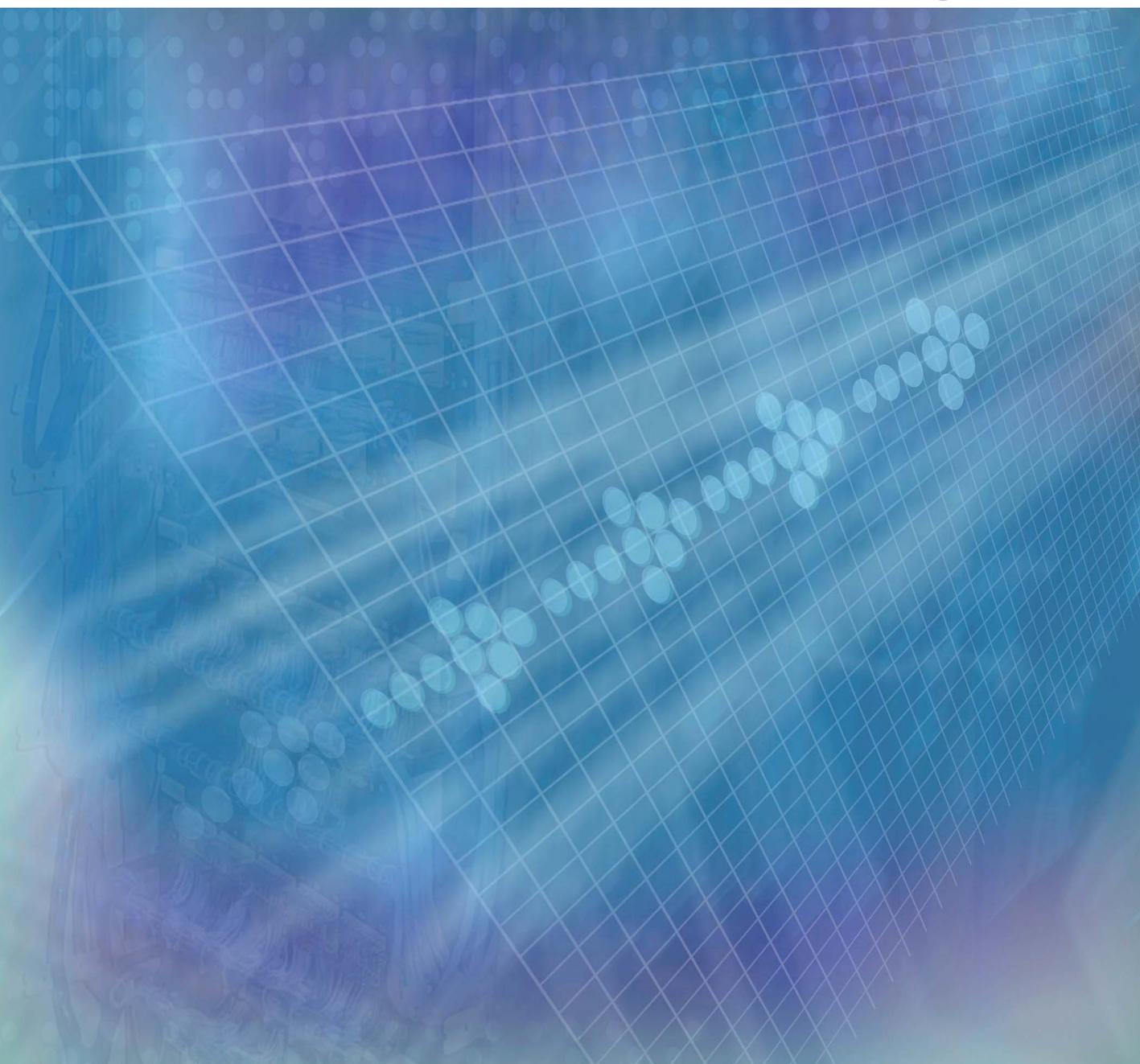


UNITED NATIONS ECONOMIC COMMISSION FOR EUROPE

Guidelines on Statistical Business Registers



UNECE

UNITED NATIONS ECONOMIC COMMISSION FOR EUROPE

**Guidelines on
STATISTICAL
BUSINESS REGISTERS**



UNITED NATIONS
NEW YORK AND GENEVA, 2015

NOTE

The designations employed and the presentation of material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area, or of its authorities, or concerning delimitation of its frontier or boundaries.

Preface

The statistical business register (SBR) plays a central role in the production of economic statistics, both in terms of the way the statistics are produced and in terms of their content and quality. Traditionally the function of the SBR has been to provide a population of statistical units from which frames and samples for economic surveys can be drawn, also to provide the tools for monitoring survey samples and response burden. Today, however, the SBR fulfils two other important roles. First, it is crucial in the integration and use of data from administrative and other sources. Second, a well-developed SBR with a comprehensive list of enterprises and other statistical units, and information about their characteristics, can be used as a source of economic statistics in its own right. Business demographics can be derived directly. New statistics can be produced by combining information from the SBR with information from other statistical registers and administrative sources. Thus, the SBR is the backbone in the production of economic statistics, in ensuring coherence across the various statistical outputs, and in developing efficient statistical production processes.

The growing demand for better and more detailed economic statistics together with the need to make production more efficient has put the spotlight on the SBR and its role in the production process and in improving existing statistics and developing new statistics. On-going economic globalization also poses challenges for SBR production and increases the demand for internationally comparable SBRs.

In light of the growing demand for higher quality and more internationally comparable economic statistics, the Bureau of the Conference of European Statisticians recognised a great diversity in the content and use of SBRs across countries and regions. Therefore, in November 2011, the Bureau established a Task Force to produce a set of international guidelines and recommendations to assist countries in developing and maintaining their SBRs.

The Guidelines, which are the result of the Task Force's work, provide descriptions and recommendations of good practices covering the key areas of the SBR and its various roles in the production of economic statistics. It is hoped that countries will find the Guidelines useful for their work on SBRs.

Background and acknowledgements

Over the last decade the growing demand for better and more detailed economic statistics has put focus on statistical business registers (SBRs) and their role in the production of economic statistics. While traditionally the primary role of SBRs has been to provide sample frames for business statistics, SBRs of today often include more information and can be used in their own right as a source from which to derive economic statistics. SBRs have also proved to be central for statistical offices' efforts to reduce response burden and utilise administrative data sources and for the combination of survey data and administrative data.

There is also growing interest in the role of SBRs as the backbone in the production of economic statistics and the potential benefits of integrating the SBR with other statistics. These include both improvement of the quality of existing statistics and development of new statistics by combining SBRs with information from other administrative or statistical registers. Integration of SBRs also means an opportunity to modernise the statistical production process. In its vision for the production of official statistics, the High-Level Group for Modernising Statistical Production and Services, established by the Conference of European Statisticians (CES), has raised a number of challenges for the development of the statistical production and services. SBRs will be important in this development.

The need for international guidance and recommendations of good practices on SBRs has been raised by countries participating in the Wiesbaden Group on Business Registers and in the joint UNECE/Eurostat/OECD Expert Group on Business Registers. The proposal for international guidelines was supported by the Steering Group of the Wiesbaden Group in 2011. There was agreement that the guidelines should cover the various roles of SBRs, including the provision of services for business surveys, the use of administrative sources and the role of business registers in the production of economic statistics.

At its meeting in November 2011 the Bureau of the Conference of European Statisticians (CES) recognized a great diversity in the content and usability of SBRs among countries and regions, while the demand for high quality and internationally comparable business statistics is growing. Given this background the Bureau concluded that a set of international guidelines would be useful, and agreed to establish a Task Force on SBRs with the objective of producing a set of international guidelines and recommendations of good practices to assist countries in developing and maintaining their SBRs. The guidelines should be targeted at both developed and less developed statistical systems and provide practical guidance and recommendations on the establishment and maintenance of an SBR.

According to its terms of reference, the Task Force should:

- a) Provide practical guidance on core issues of establishing and maintaining the SBR.
- b) Clarify typology, concepts and definitions, including for statistical units.
- c) Provide guidance on the use of administrative and other sources for the establishment and updating of the SBR.
- d) Provide guidance on how to use the SBR in its own right for production of statistics and how information from the SBR can be combined with information from other statistical registers, administrative sources or surveys to produce new statistics.
- e) Provide guidance on the role of SBRs in the modernisation of statistical production and services.

The Guidelines should include country experiences and case studies when found useful to illustrate good practices. Links to other statistical subject areas, such as national accounts and trade statistics should be made when relevant. The Guidelines should take into account other international work in the area of statistical business registers, in particular the *Business Registers Recommendations Manual*, Eurostat (2010) and the *Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa*, African Development Bank (2012), and consistency with these should be ensured.

During its period of work from 2012 to 2014 the Task Force had three face-to-face meetings and a number of audio conferences throughout the period. Drafts of chapters and other relevant materials were shared on a common designated website created for the purpose.

The Task Force had its first audio conference in January 2012 where it agreed on a time and work plan and on a first outline of the Guidelines. During the first part of 2012 the Task Force developed a detailed outline of the Guidelines, which was presented to the meeting of the Wiesbaden Group on Business Registers in September 2012 in Washington. The Task Force received useful comments and proposals from the participants concerning the content and structure of the Guidelines.

Based on the feedback received the first version of the chapters of the Guidelines was drafted and subsequently presented and discussed at the joint UNECE/Eurostat/OECD Expert Group meeting on Business Registers in September 2013 in Geneva. The participants provided a number of useful comments and suggestions. Countries with less developed statistical systems participated in both the Wiesbaden Group meeting in 2012 and the Expert Group meeting in 2013, which helped to ensure that issues of particular importance to these countries were also raised.

Furthermore, United Nations Statistical Division (UNSD) in 2012/2013 conducted a global survey on SBRs the results of which were presented at the Expert Group meeting in September 2013. The survey provided useful information on particular challenges concerning data sources, coverage of business registers and definition of units and classifications, which the Task Force agreed to incorporate in the further drafting.

The Task Force reviewed all draft chapters, the comments received from countries and the outcome of the UNSD global survey on business registers at a meeting on 5 September 2013. At this meeting it was concluded that an editor would be needed to ensure coherence and consistency across the chapters. As a response to this need, Statistics Canada agreed to fund an editor, Michael Colledge, who carried out the first round of editing in February – April 2014.

The Task Force discussed the second draft version of the chapters and a number of cross-cutting issues at a meeting on 28 April 2014 in Luxembourg, back-to-back with the Eurostat Working Group on business registers. Following this meeting the authors continued to review and further elaborate the draft chapters and submitted updated drafts in August 2014. After a second round of editing, the third draft version of the chapters was presented to the Wiesbaden Group meeting on 15-18 September 2014 in Vienna to solicit concrete comments and proposals on the draft chapters. The Task Force conducted a survey to all participants of the Wiesbaden Group meeting requesting comments and proposals for all draft chapters, which resulted in written comments from eight countries.

In the course of preparing the Guidelines the Task Force identified a number of questions related to the definitions and delineations of enterprises and institutional units in 2008 SNA. To ensure that the Guidelines would be in line with these standards the Task Force submitted a number of questions for clarification to the Intersecretariat Working Group on National Accounts (SWGNA) and the Advisory Expert Group on National Accounts in September 2014. The Task Force received a response from the ISWGNA which was taken into account in the relevant chapters.

From September to November 2014 authors worked to incorporate comments received from the Wiesbaden Group and suggestions for improvements and clarifications by the editor and the chair of the Task Force. Additional country examples of good practices (e.g. from Costa Rica, Georgia and Malaysia) were received to be included in annexes. A final round of reviewing and editing of all chapters and annexes was carried out from November 2014 to January 2015 to ensure coherence and similarity in style across chapters.

After agreement of the CES Bureau the draft Guidelines were circulated for consultation to all members of the CES in March-April 2015. The final version incorporating comments and proposals received in the consultation was submitted to the CES plenary session in June 2015 where it was endorsed.

Acknowledgements

The Guidelines are the results of the collective efforts of the members of the Task Force. The Task Force was chaired by Norbert Rainer (Austria) and included the following members: Jenny Foster (Australia), René Beaudoin (Canada), Miguel Angel Cardenas Contreras, Margarita Ramirez Ardila and Sandra Liliana Moreno Mayorga (Colombia), Vibeke Skov Møller and Peter Ottosen (Denmark), Iman Ahmad Ahmad Elhitta (Egypt), Sylvie Mabile, Pierrette Schuhl and Pierre Teillet (France), Monica Consalvi and Caterina Viviano (Italy), Susana Perez (Mexico), Rico Konen and Anita Vaasen-Otten (Netherlands), Fabio Tomasini and Claude Macchi (Switzerland), Anton Tovchenko (Ukraine), Andrew Allen (United Kingdom), Amerigo Liotti and Susanne Maus (Eurostat), Mariarosa Lunati (OECD), Besa Muwele (The African Development Bank), Ronald Jansen and Luis Gonzalez Morales (UNSD), and Carsten Boldsen and Evan Brand (UNECE). UNECE provided the secretariat of the Task Force.

The chapters of the Guidelines were drafted by lead authors and with contributing authors providing comments and proposals. The lead authors of the Guidelines were: Norbert Rainer (Austria), Jenny Foster (Australia), René Beaudoin (Canada), Sylvie Mabile, Pierrette Schuhl and Pierre Teillet (France), Monica Consalvi and Caterina Viviano (Italy), Rico Konen (Netherlands), Fabio Tomasini and Paul-André Salamin (Switzerland), Andrew Allen (United Kingdom) and Amerigo Liotti and Susanne Maus (Eurostat).

The annexes of the Guidelines include a number of useful examples and country case studies. These were provided by René Beaudoin (Canada), Martha Poveda Gomez and Sandra Rodriguez Lopez (Colombia), Odilia Bravo Cambroner (Costa Rica), Vibeke Skov Møller (Denmark), Pierrette Schuhl (France), Gogita Todraze (Georgia), Monica Consalvi and Caterina Viviano (Italy), Hartini Yaacob (Malaysia), Rico Konen (Netherlands) and Fabio Tomasini and Paul-André Salamin (Switzerland).

Special thanks go to Michael Colledge for his commitment and substantial work on reviewing and editing the Guidelines to ensure coherence and clarity of language and presentation style across chapters, and to Statistics Canada who financed the work of the editor. The publication was formatted for printing by Olga Semenova and Evita Sisene, UNECE.

List of abbreviations and acronyms

AfDB	African Development Bank
BPM6	Balance of Payments and International Investment Position Manual, 6 th edition
CES	Conference of European Statisticians
ESA	European System of Accounts
EU	European Union
FATS	Foreign Affiliate Statistics
GDP	Gross domestic product
GSBPM	Generic Statistical Business Process Model
GSIM	Generic Statistical Information Model
HC	Holding company
HO	Head office
ICLS	International Conference of Labour Statisticians
ILO	International Labour Organization
IMF	International Monetary Fund
ISIC	International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities
ISWGNA	Intersecretariat Working Group on National Accounts
KAU	Kind-of-activity unit
LKAU	Local kind-of-activity unit
MNE	Multinational enterprise group
NOE	Non-observed economy
NPISH	Non-profit institution serving households
NSI	National statistical institute
OECD	Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development
SBR	Statistical Business Register
SEEA	System of Environmental and Economic Accounts
SNA	System of National Accounts
SPE	Special purpose entity
UNECE	United Nations Economic Commission for Europe

Table of Contents

Preface	iii
Background and acknowledgements	v
List of abbreviations and acronyms	vii
Chapter 1 Introduction	1
1.1 Context.....	1
1.2 What is an SBR?.....	1
1.3 Use of an SBR.....	3
1.4 Aims of the SBR Guidelines	4
1.5 Overview of the Guidelines	5
1.6 Terminology.....	6
Chapter 2 Roles of the SBR.....	9
2.1 Introduction	9
2.2 SBR live register.....	10
2.3 SBR register snapshot and frozen frame.....	11
2.4 SBR survey frame.....	13
2.5 SBR survey support.....	14
2.6 SBR based statistics	16
2.7 SBR information source	17
2.8 SBR international data exchange.....	19
2.9 SBR in modernisation of statistical production and services	20
2.10 Satellite approach to extend functionality.....	21
Chapter 3 Coverage of SBR.....	23
3.1 Introduction.....	23
3.2 Key concepts	23
3.2.1 Production boundaries, institutional sectors and enterprises	23
3.2.2 Market and non-market producers.....	24
3.2.3 Non-observed and observed economies	24
3.2.4 Informal sector	24
3.2.5 Illegal activities.....	26
3.2.6 Underground activities	26
3.3 SBR coverage.....	27
3.3.1 Type of institutional units.....	27
3.3.2 Government units	27
3.3.3 Corporations	27
3.3.4 Non-profit institutions	27
3.3.5 Households.....	27
3.3.6 Self-employed professionals.....	29
3.3.7 Own-use production.....	29
3.4 Special cases.....	29
3.4.1 Agricultural holdings	29
3.4.2 Illegal and underground production	29
3.4.3 Extraterritorial organisations and bodies.....	30
3.5 Summary of coverage recommendations.....	30
Chapter 4 Units in the SBR.....	33
4.1 Introduction.....	33
4.1.1 Content and references.....	33
4.1.2 Brief presentation of units and problems covered	33

4.2	Types of statistical units	35
4.3	Enterprise group (and truncated enterprise group)	38
4.3.1	Definition of enterprise group (and truncated enterprise group)	38
4.3.2	Link between national and global views: truncated enterprise group	39
4.3.3	Identifying enterprise groups in practice	39
4.4	Enterprise	40
4.4.1	2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4 definitions of enterprise	41
4.4.2	European definition of enterprise	41
4.4.3	Simplified correspondence between legal units and enterprises	42
4.5	Establishment	42
4.5.1	Introductory remarks	42
4.5.2	ISIC Rev. 4 Definition of establishment	42
4.5.3	Implementation notes	43
4.6	Other statistical units	43
4.6.1	Kind-of-activity unit	43
4.6.2	Local unit	44
4.7	Legal unit - pivotal between administrative units and statistics	45
4.7.1	Definition of legal unit	45
4.7.2	Market and non-market legal units	46
4.7.3	Quasi-corporations:	46
4.8	Administrative units	46
4.8.1	Linkage to statistical units	46
4.9	Units in agriculture and government sectors	46
4.9.1	Units in agriculture, forestry and fishing	46
4.9.2	Units in government	47
4.10	Branches, ancillary activities, special purpose entities, franchises and related concepts	48
4.10.1	Branch	48
4.10.2	Ancillary activities	48
4.10.3	Special purpose entities	49
4.10.4	Distinction between head offices and holding companies	51
4.10.5	Franchises	51
Chapter 5 Characteristics of units		53
5.1	Introduction	53
5.2	Identification and contact characteristics	53
5.3	Demographic characteristics	54
5.4	Economic/stratification characteristics	55
5.5	Relationships and links between units in the SBR	56
5.6	Relationships and links with other registers	57
5.7	Characteristics by unit type	57
Chapter 6 Data sources for the SBR		59
6.1	Introduction	59
6.2	General methods, procedures and issues	60
6.2.1	Cooperation with data providers	60
6.2.2	Common identification systems	60
6.2.3	Identifying and using external data sources	60
6.2.4	Combined administrative and statistical register	61
6.2.5	Linking and matching	61
6.2.6	Integration of the administrative units into the SBR	61
6.2.7	Transforming administrative units to statistical units	61
6.3	Administrative data sources	61
6.3.1	Typical administrative sources	61
6.3.2	Advantages of using administrative data	62
6.3.3	Disadvantages of using administrative data	63
6.3.4	Monitoring the quality of administrative data	63
6.3.5	Legal issues and access to administrative sources	64
6.4	Using administrative sources in practice	65

6.4.1	Keeping administrative and statistical data separate	65
6.4.2	Establishing unique identifiers	65
6.4.3	Using sector specific and additional sources	65
6.4.4	Thresholds.....	66
6.4.5	Handling changes in administrative sources.....	66
6.5	Identifying statistical units.....	66
6.5.1	Identifying enterprises.....	66
6.5.2	Identifying local units and/or establishments.....	67
6.5.3	Converting from legal units to statistical units.....	67
6.5.4	Transformation rules.....	67
6.5.5	On line delivery	68
6.6	Statistical sources	68
6.6.1	Economic census.....	68
6.6.2	Feedback from enterprise and establishment surveys.....	68
6.6.3	SBR improvement surveys.....	69
6.6.4	Profiling.....	69
6.7	Combining administrative and statistical sources	70
6.8	Record linkage in creation and maintenance of the SBR	70
6.8.1	Basic approach.....	70
6.8.2	Types of matching	71
6.8.3	Standardizing.....	71
6.8.4	Matching of text strings	72
6.8.5	Blocking.....	72
6.8.6	Computing overall similarity measure	72
6.9	Other data sources	73
Chapter 7 Maintenance of the SBR.....		75
7.1	Introduction.....	75
7.2	SBR maintenance strategy.....	75
7.2.1	Use of administrative sources.....	75
7.2.2	Use of feedback from surveys	76
7.2.3	Use of SBR improvement surveys	76
7.2.4	Profiling.....	76
7.2.5	Dealing with conflicting information	76
7.2.6	Maintenance groups.....	76
7.2.7	Updating schedule	77
7.2.8	Historical register.....	78
7.3	Handling births, deaths and linkage changes of statistical units.....	78
7.3.1	Demographic events.....	78
7.3.2	Demographic events, continuity and information sources for enterprises	79
7.3.3	Demographic events, continuity and information sources for local units.....	81
7.3.4	Demographic events, continuity, information sources - enterprise groups	81
7.4	Handling changes in characteristics of statistical units.....	85
7.4.1	Changes in identification and contact characteristics	85
7.4.2	Changes in economic/stratification characteristics	85
7.5	SBR maintenance procedures	86
7.6	Treatment of errors.....	87
7.6.1	Taking account of different user needs.....	87
7.6.2	Data about errors and corrections.....	87
7.6.3	The time dimension	88
7.6.4	Error correction policy.....	88
Chapter 8 Survey frame methodology.....		91
8.1	Introduction.....	91
8.2	Identify concepts	91
8.3	Design outputs	93
8.4	Design frame and sample	93
8.5	Design collection	97

Chapter 9 Dissemination.....	99
9.1 Introduction.....	99
9.2 Dissemination of economic statistics.....	99
9.2.1 Dissemination conditions.....	99
9.2.2 Confidentiality considerations.....	100
9.3 Dissemination of business demographics statistics.....	100
9.3.1 Background.....	100
9.3.2 Advantages of using the SBR.....	101
9.4 Micro-data dissemination.....	103
Chapter 10 Quality.....	105
10.1 Introduction.....	105
10.2 SBR quality dimensions.....	105
10.3 Difference between survey quality and SBR quality.....	106
10.3.1 Use of administrative data.....	106
10.3.2 Heterogeneity of inputs.....	106
10.3.3 Variability of inputs over time.....	107
10.3.4 Technological requirements.....	107
10.3.5 Primary output is micro-data.....	107
10.3.6 Heterogeneity of users.....	107
10.3.7 Continuous updating of SBR data.....	107
10.4 Assessing the quality of administrative data for the SBR.....	108
10.5 Frame errors and their implications for surveys.....	108
10.5.1 Types of frame errors.....	108
10.5.2 Impact of errors on survey frames.....	109
10.6 Classification of metadata.....	109
10.7 Quality assessment methods.....	110
10.7.1 User survey.....	110
10.7.2 SBR audit.....	110
10.7.3 SBR improvement surveys and quality measurement surveys.....	110
10.7.4 Auditing clerical work.....	110
10.7.5 Macro-editing.....	110
10.7.6 Defining and monitoring quality indicators.....	111
10.8 SBR quality indicators.....	111
10.8.1 Conceptual framework for quality indicators.....	111
10.8.2 Quality of SBR inputs.....	111
10.8.3 Quality of SBR processes.....	112
10.9 Quality policy and improvement.....	114
10.9.1 Quality policy.....	114
10.9.2 General approach to improving quality.....	114
10.9.3 Improving timeliness.....	114
10.9.4 Improving completeness.....	114
10.9.5 Improving coverage.....	114
10.9.6 Improving quality reports.....	115
10.9.7 Providing survey support.....	115
10.10 Examples of quality indicators by quality dimension.....	115
Chapter 11 Key considerations in establishing an SBR.....	117
11.1 Introduction.....	117
11.2 Planning considerations.....	117
11.2.1 Initial versus longer term scoping: the importance of a modular approach.....	117
11.2.2 Key considerations for establishing a survey frame.....	118
11.3 Governance and organizational considerations.....	119
11.3.1 Relationships with users.....	119
11.3.2 Legislative framework.....	120
11.3.3 Funding and development phases.....	120
11.3.4 Human resources.....	121
11.3.5 SBR training.....	123

11.4	IT considerations.....	124
11.4.1	Project management methodology.....	124
11.4.2	Software development methodology.....	124
11.4.3	Solution architecture.....	124
11.4.4	Database.....	125
11.4.5	Database Management System (DBMS) options.....	126
11.4.6	Programming requirements.....	127
11.4.7	IT environments.....	128
11.4.8	Programming language.....	128
11.4.9	Relationships with other systems and registers.....	128
11.4.10	Establishing a unique identifier for statistical units.....	128
11.4.11	Tools/software for record linkage.....	130
11.4.12	Job scheduling software.....	130
11.4.13	Documentation.....	130
11.5	Data retention.....	130
Chapter 12 Topics for further work and research.....		133
12.1	Introduction.....	133
12.2	Recommended topics by domain.....	133
Annex A Characteristics of units by unit type.....		137
Annex B International classifications.....		157
B1: International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC), Revision 4.....		157
Annex B2: Classification of institutional sectors.....		160
Annex C Examples of statistical business registers.....		163
Annex C1: SBR development at Statistics Denmark.....		163
Annex C2: Costa Rica's SBR programme.....		168
Annex C3: Statistics Canada's Statistical Business Register.....		171
Annex C4: Business register at the National Statistics Office of Georgia.....		173
Annex C5: Redeveloping the Malaysian Statistical Business Register.....		176
Annex D Examples relating to SBR quality assurance.....		179
Annex D1: Istat's SBR quality indicators.....		179
Annex D2: Columbian experience in implementation of quality processes.....		182
Annex D3: Statistics Netherlands' administrative data source evaluation checklist.....		187
Annex E Additional concepts and procedures.....		191
Annex E1: Register based census.....		191
Annex E2: Calculating a check digit for an identification number.....		195
Glossary.....		197
References.....		231

Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1 Context

1.1 In considering national and international economic policy actions, statistical data are an important input for analysts, researchers and politicians. Also the general public are interested in the status and development of the economy as they are part of the economic system being consumers, entrepreneurs, employers or employees. Therefore, the production of high-quality official economic statistics is an important task of national statistical institutes (NSIs). Such statistics usually comprise structural information, business cycle indicators, production indices, price indexes and various other types of statistical domains. Also the production of national accounts data for analysis from a macro-economic point of view is part of the economic statistical system of a country.

1.2 The demand for economic statistics is growing in all countries as well as at international level. To a large extent this is the result of the fact that economies have become more complex, with increasing division of labour both at national and at global level. To remain relevant and to meet user needs, economic statistics should, therefore, cover new areas and should provide more detailed information about activities and variables. There is also a general need to improve timeliness, coherence and reliability at both national and international level.

1.3 While business statistics should achieve these new and enlarged goals, it should do so in an efficient way and with a response burden as low as possible. This means efforts must be made to modernise the production processes, to use administrative data to reduce survey burden, to redesign survey systems, to harmonize surveys and variables, to comprehensively link administrative data and survey sources, and to cooperate more closely with administrative authorities on a continuous basis to improve the quality of the SBR. Better consistency between the various statistical areas at national and international level has also become a much more important goal than it was in the past, when the economic development was less effected by international dependencies, and the globalisation of production and markets was at a lower level.

1.4 In all these developments of business statistics the statistical business register (SBR) plays a key role. Therefore, the challenges of current and future business statistics are at the same time also challenges for the SBR. The SBR delivers the basic information for

conducting economic surveys by providing the populations of statistical units and their characteristics. Further, the SBR provides links to administrative units and registers, thus enabling the use of administrative data for statistical purposes. It also provides unique identifiers enabling linkages at the micro-level across statistical domains as needed.

1.5 High quality business statistics depend on high quality SBR. A high quality SBR fulfils the user needs in an optimal way, and is based on international concepts, definitions and classifications. Thus, it serves as the basis for international harmonisation of economic statistics in terms of coverage, statistical units and frame methodology. The main users of SBR information are survey staff in the NSIs. These staff use the SBR as the source of input for survey design and survey operations. As SBR and survey staff are in the same organisation, close cooperation and exchange on user needs should be easily possible. The basic roles that SBR plays for the production of business statistics has a significant effect on the national accounts, which needs high quality and consistent business statistics to achieve its goals.

1.2 What is an SBR?

1.6 An SBR is a *regularly updated, structured database of economic units in a territorial area, maintained by an NSI, and used for statistical purposes*. In this definition the terms have the following meanings.

Structured database

1.7 This is a complex property. An SBR is a structured (electronic, relational) database, where defined characteristics are stored for each economic unit. In circumstances where there is more than one kind of economic unit (which is normally the case) the relationships between these units are also included. For example, for each local unit there is a link to the enterprise to which this unit belongs; for each legal unit there is a link to which enterprise it is associated. Economic units are assigned unique numerical identifiers so that they are easily identified and to make sure that no units are included twice.

Economic units

1.8 Economic units comprise legal/administrative units and statistical units. Legal/administrative units are units registered in administrative registers, such as taxation registers, social security register, company register, register of the chamber of commerce, etc.,

including also non-market units such as government departments and non-profit institutions. Legal/administrative units serve as the basis for delineation of statistical units, by which they are represented for statistical purposes. Examples of statistical units are the enterprise, the local unit and the establishment. In most cases a legal/administrative unit corresponds to a statistical unit. However, in specific cases, a legal unit might not correspond to a statistical unit. Therefore, in an SBR database these two types of units are recorded as two separate but related types of entities. This sort of approach applies to all types of units. For instance, enterprises and their local units are recorded as separate types of entities. Even in the case where an enterprise has only a single local unit (which is the most common situation) two units are to be recorded in the SBR: an enterprise unit and a local unit.

Regularly updated

1.9 An SBR that was not regularly updated would soon lose its value as ongoing changes in the numbers and structure of the economic units were not incorporated in the database. Such changes include: new economic units being created and others being closed; economic units being merged or changing legal form, location or activity; units having higher or lower turnover over time or engaging more or less employees than in the past period. Thus, also the stratification variables used for the delineation of survey frames may change over time.

1.10 The frequency of SBR updating depends on data availability, mainly on the availability of administrative data. If data for SBR updating are only available on an annual basis, use of the SBR for monthly or quarterly surveys is hampered. Some administrative data are made available on a monthly or quarterly basis, others only on an annual basis, and some data may be available early after the reference period, others may be available only later. A further issue is the time lag between an actual business event and the date when it is recorded in the administrative or other data base. SBR updating is usually a continuous process in order to minimise time lags in processing data.

Territorial area

1.11 An SBR is established to cover all business units that are resident in a specific territorial area. The territorial area is normally the territory of a country. Therefore, an affiliate of a resident enterprise in a foreign country would not be recorded in the SBR of the country of the enterprise. This affiliate would also not be covered in the administrative sources and therefore information for updating would not be available. However, information on foreign affiliates might be collected by a specific statistical survey.

1.12 The backbone role of the SBR is not easily achievable if a separate SBR is established and maintained for each region of a country. This would lead to various practical and conceptual problems. For

example, an enterprise could be active in different regions. In order to avoid such problems it is highly recommended that there should be only one SBR in a country covering all units resident in that country. If regional SBRs exist they must be coordinated at national level.

1.13 The restriction to the national territory has the consequence that multinational enterprise groups are not covered in their entirety, only the national parts of them. The coverage of multinationals would need a supra-national SBR with appropriate cross-country cooperation between the NSIs.

Maintained by an NSI

1.14 Administrative registers are maintained by administrative authorities for purposes of public administration and programmes. Their coverage, characteristics, methods of updating, etc. are designed to serve administrative purposes. An administrative business register might not cover all units but only selected ones, for example those with a particular legal form (e.g. companies), or those with a particular type of economic activity (e.g. farms), or those in a certain region. An SBR has to fulfil the requirements for economic statistics. The coverage requirements are often quite different and more comprehensive than for administrative registers. Thus an SBR has to be established and maintained by an NSI, in fulfilling its task of producing official statistics.

Statistical purposes

1.15 An SBR is established in order to provide the frame population for economic surveys, and for other statistical purposes. The requirements for an SBR can therefore be quite different from the requirements of an administrative register. Even if the SBR is based on information from administrative registers, the concepts, characteristics, methods of maintenance, etc., of the SBR need to be based on statistical concepts, preferably on internationally recommended ones. There is also one other important feature in addition to the different nature of administrative and statistical business registers. The SBR is only to be used for statistical purposes. It may not be used for other purposes, especially for administrative purposes. The reason for this is the confidentiality of individual data collected by NSIs. Data on individual natural persons or businesses collected by NSIs for statistical compilation are to be strictly confidential and used exclusively for statistical purposes.

1.16 In satisfying the requirements implicit in the above definition, an SBR is a complex system both in terms of structure and in terms of technical implementation. It might seem that a quite simple system, such as a list of businesses with the appropriate variables, could serve to provide sets of units for survey frames for collection of data. This would be the case when only one type of unit, for example enterprise or establishment, was of interest, and there were very few

surveys. However, even then such a list would have to contain many variables, including name, address, legal form, economic activity and other classification codes, and its handling and updating would be a difficult task. Where there are several types of units and many surveys to consider, a simple list is impractical, a database is needed.

1.17 A general principle is that a data update to the SBR should be time stamped to know, first, the date the change has been made, and, second, the date when the change becomes effective. For instance, a merger of two enterprises might have taken place (be effective from) 1 January 2015, but the appropriate changes to the SBR might be made at a later date, say 1 June 2015, when the information becomes available for the SBR updating purposes.

1.18 A second principle is that SBR data should never be physically deleted. For example:

- An enterprise that has ceased activity will not be deleted; rather the *activity status* of the enterprise will be set to *inactive*.
- A change of the location of an enterprise will be recorded in such a way that the old address is marked as *no longer valid* and the new address is introduced with an effective starting date.

1.19 To manage these sorts of requirements a well-structured relational database is needed. They cannot be managed as a list.

1.20 As for any other statistical product, quality of the SBR is of extreme importance, particularly as the SBR is not an end in itself, but an input to all the economic statistical products based on it. The quality of an SBR can be measured by the same criteria that are used for measuring the quality of statistical data: relevance, accuracy, punctuality, accessibility, comparability and coherence. More specifically this means: that the information provided to the users corresponds to their needs; that the economic units covered are in accordance with the defined target population; that the data are as timely as possible: that the coverage of economic units and their characteristics are as complete and accurate as possible: that the data are comparable over the activities, regions and internationally as a result of using the same concepts, methods and definitions; and that the SBR is coherent with other statistical datasets, where relevant.

1.3 Use of an SBR

1.21 An important purpose of the SBR is to provide sets of units referred to as *frames* to surveys. A survey frame is a list of units together with the characteristics of these units required in conducting the survey. By providing frames for all relevant surveys from a central source, the SBR is also acting as a coordinating instrument. As the SBR units and their characteristics are updated on a continuous basis, survey frames derived

from the SBR can be similarly updated. Updating centrally in the SBR is also much more efficient than if updates of survey frames were done by the different survey areas themselves. Thus, a single SBR is a good solution not only for harmonised statistics but also for cost efficiency.

1.22 Moreover, the SBR can do more than simply provide frames. It can also be used to combine data from different sources to improve coverage. It can provide a mechanism for identifying units and avoiding double counting, it can facilitate central storage of metadata and it can coordinate various data streams. All of these help optimize the quality of statistical processes before direct data collection has even begun.

1.23 Variations in the coverage, content and quality of SBRs across countries make comparison of economic statistics more difficult. Therefore the coverage and content of SBRs should be harmonised as much as possible and international concepts and definitions should be used to the maximum extent possible. Economic statistics describe economic production processes and financial transactions in various statistical domains. Whilst each domain has its own specific peculiarities, the data collected should be comparable across domains. This is only possible if the populations for the various domains are derived and used in a similar and coordinated way during the course of statistical processing.

1.24 Using administrative data more extensively for statistical purposes is an important strategic goal for NSIs in their efforts to keep up with ever growing demands for economic data by governments, international bodies and researchers, in particular data for microeconomic analysis of small areas, and for specific sectors of activity aggregates. Whilst administrative data may not include precisely the information that the statistician would like to collect and disseminate, they have the virtue of providing more (possibly nearly complete) coverage of a target population, whereas sample surveys cover only a relatively small proportion. The use of administrative data may therefore decrease, or eliminate, sampling errors, significantly reduce or remove non-response, and may provide more accurate and detailed estimates for various sub-populations. Thus, to reduce both the costs of data collection and response burden, administrative data sources should be further integrated into the statistical processes used in collecting and compiling economic statistics. The starting point is using administrative data in the creation of statistical units in the SBR.

1.25 Use of administrative data also increases the range of tasks that can be achieved by an SBR. It becomes not only a database providing frames for survey purposes but also a powerful database that can be used for the direct production of statistics. Furthermore, links to administrative data and registers

facilitates the use of administrative data for supplementing or replacing data collected by survey.

1.26 New developments in the production of economic statistics will extend the role and use of the SBR. Globalisation, increase in the use of administrative data, industrialisation, and upcoming new data sources (for example big data, Internet) are some of the developments that have to be taken into account when looking at the future use of the SBR.

1.27 Within an NSI, the SBR should be the single, central place where statistical units are derived and maintained for economic statistics. In this way the economic behaviour of various populations of enterprises can be compared over space and in time. The SBR's coordinating role is even stronger when statisticians gathering or compiling statistics refer to, and use, the units provided by the SBR without further modification. However, this requires their satisfaction with the quality of the data provided by the SBR and hence with the administrative sources on which these data are based.

1.28 In many countries also other institutions, such as government agencies or the central bank, compile official business statistics. In such cases the NSI SBR faces additional challenges to fulfil its coordinating role to ensure consistent official statistics. If legally possible the SBR of the NSI should serve as the central register and other institutions needing register data for their surveys should have access to the NSI SBR. As minimum, some kind of register cooperation should be aimed at as maintaining different SBRs is not only costly, it would also result in different survey frames and thus to non-harmonized business statistics.

1.29 The demand for better, quicker and more detailed business statistics, and the need of policy makers for more comparable international economic data, is likely to force many NSIs to extend the roles of their SBRs and create a multipurpose system which supports statisticians in improving the efficiency of their processes and quality of their outputs.

1.4 Aims of the SBR Guidelines

1.30 The main objectives of the Guidelines, as mentioned in the Background and acknowledgements, were to:

- a) Provide practical guidance on core issues of establishing and maintaining the SBR.
- b) Clarify typology, concepts and definitions, including for statistical units.
- c) Provide guidance on the use of administrative and other sources for the establishment and updating of the SBR.
- d) Provide guidance on how to use the SBR in its own right for production of statistics and how information from the SBR can be combined with information from other statistical registers, administrative sources or surveys to produce new statistics.

- e) Provide guidance on the role of SBRs in the modernisation of statistical production and services.

1.31 The Task Force has tried to ensure that the Guidelines satisfy these objectives. However, guidelines are never finished and these Guidelines will need to be updated from time to time to integrate guidance on national and international developments and to deal with new challenges that arise for the SBR.

1.32 The Guidelines are targeted at SBR management, SBR staff members, the staff of business statistics, and the staff dealing with respondent relations and with administrative authorities that deliver data to the SBR. They may also be useful for training purposes.

1.33 These guidelines are not sufficiently detailed and comprehensive to cover all the SBR issues, concepts, definitions and methods that are important in every country. They do not and could not take fully into account all the various national institutional structures and concerns. Like any other international manual, the Guidelines can only provide guidance in the form of a broad range of concepts and explanations that need to be interpreted within each particular national context, which is invariably different from country to country.

1.34 The main conceptual framework on which the Guidelines are based is the 2008 System of National Accounts (2008 SNA) and the European version (ESA). The 2008 SNA is the overarching framework for integrated economic statistics and therefore the natural reference for the concepts and definitions of the relevant terms of the SBR. International classification manuals, in particular the International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC) Revision 4, are also referenced.

1.35 A variety of other international guidance manuals that deal with specific phenomena or domains should also be mentioned. They include manuals on the use of administrative data, on the informal sector, on business demography, on foreign affiliates statistics, on environmental-economic accounting, and on integrated economic statistics, which also addresses the key role of the SBR. Other relevant international manuals are currently under preparation, such as the guidelines on measurement of global production.

1.36 All these international manuals and various other documents, papers and reports were consulted and utilized in developing and drafting of these guidelines. However, there are two international guidelines which directly focus on the SBR: the *Business Registers Recommendations Manual* of Eurostat (latest version 2010) and the *Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa* (African Development Bank 2012). These two manuals have been extensively used as it was a principle in developing the Guidelines that already existing material should be used whenever feasible and appropriate.

1.37 As already stated, international manuals and guidelines can provide concepts and definitions needed for harmonized statistics, and thus help developing the national implementation. However, exchange of experience between countries and bilateral co-operations are also recommended. There are two main international fora for exchange and discussion of national experience, country practices and international developments in the area of SBR. One is the Wiesbaden Group on Business Registers, which organizes biennial meetings and the second is the biennial, joint UNECE, Eurostat, and OECD Expert Group Meeting on Business Registers, which takes place in years where there is no Wiesbaden Group meeting.

1.5 Overview of the Guidelines

1.38 The Guidelines are structured into 12 chapters and 5 annexes. Each chapter can be read separately, according to the interests and needs of the reader. Cross-references are provided. In the following paragraphs a short description of the topics and contents of each chapter and of the annexes are provided.

1.39 *Chapter 2* on the roles of the SBR provides an overview of the various roles that SBR play in the context of the production of business statistics. In total eight different roles are distinguished and described. The first role is the central role, namely the maintenance of a set of statistical units by providing a gateway between data from various input sources (mainly administrative sources) and statistical units. This results in continuous updating of the content of a *live register*. The second role is to provide *register snapshots* and *frozen frames*, from which *survey frames* are derived. These roles are the most central and important ones and focus on the support function of the SBR for business surveys. An additional role is direct support for the surveys by survey registration, monitoring survey response and measurement and control of response burden.

1.40 Chapter 2 also describes additional new roles that have emerged in the last years and show the usefulness of SBR databases. The most important is the production of statistics directly based on the SBR. Examples are economic censuses and business demography statistics. In some countries individual data on enterprises can be made public and thus support directory/lists of businesses or georeferenced information systems. Due to the globalization, international comparability of statistical data has become more important. A key enabler would therefore be the exchange of micro-data between countries through the SBR, which would allow a significant increase in quality of global statistics. A related SBR role is the integration of the SBR in the production process of economic statistics.

1.41 *Chapter 3* describes coverage of an SBR, examining the concept from the perspective of various

institutional unit types and sectors of the economy as defined in the 2008 System of National Accounts (2008 SNA). It notes that, in principle, the SBR should record all units in the national economy that contribute to gross domestic product (GDP) but that, in practice, this is not be achievable due to various constraints, which are described. The chapter deals with the relevant concepts, such as market and non-market producers, observed and non-observed economy, informal sector and illegal activities. It provides recommendations for a minimum coverage of an SBR.

1.42 *Chapter 4* and *Chapter 5* deal with the concepts and characteristics of statistical units. While Chapter 4 introduces the various statistical units and their delineation, Chapter 5 provides information on their characteristics, which should be recorded in the SBR. The main statistical units discussed in Chapter 4 are the *enterprise group*, the *enterprise*, the *establishment*, the *kind-of-activity unit* and the *local unit*. The chapter also deals with various forms of legal and administrative units that are the main building blocks for delineation of the statistical units. The chapter provides also some guidance on specific kinds of units, such as holding companies and other special purpose entities, as well as on units for specific economic sectors, such as agriculture and government.

1.43 *Annex A* and *Annex B* are connected with Chapter 5. Annex A lists and explains in detail the characteristics of the legal/administrative units and the various statistical units. Annex B introduces the international activity classification ISIC Rev. 4, and the SNA classification of institutional sectors, which are the two most important statistical classifications used in the SBR.

1.44 *Chapter 6* deals with the data sources for the establishment and maintenance of the SBR. It considers not only the various administrative data sources, which are the main sources of input information, but also all other sources. The chapter describes the general methods, procedures and issues in relation to the data sources, especially the co-operation with the administrative authorities. It gives advice on the use of administrative data and the problems that may occur when administrative data are used for statistical purposes. The chapter also gives an introduction to the record linkage methods that are used when the linking of individual units in the various data sources is not supported by common identifiers. Methods based on other data such as name and address have to be applied to identify the same units in the different sources so to correctly link them.

1.45 Related to Chapter 6 is *Annex D3*, which contains an excerpt of the administrative data source evaluation check list, developed by Statistics Netherlands.

1.46 The concepts of the update and maintenance of the SBR are the subject of *Chapter 7*. It provides the

fundamentals and basic considerations for the establishment of a maintenance strategy that is based on the needs of the users, especially survey staff. The chapter deals with the recording of demographic events, such as enterprise births, the handling of the changes in the characteristics, the continuity rules and, last but not least, the treatment of errors.

1.47 *Chapter 8* covers survey frame methodology. Starting from the Generic Statistical Business Process Model (GSBPM), the specific roles of the SBR are described in relation to the survey requirements. The various population concepts lead to the discussion of frame design. The chapter deals with the effects of over-coverage and under-coverage errors and their correction, as well as other kinds of frame errors.

1.48 The emerging role of producing statistics directly based on the SBR is discussed in *Chapter 9*. As previously noted, the SBR may itself now also have a dissemination role, whereas in the past only survey results were published. The full coverage and good timeliness of SBR data are used to produce census type statistics and business demography statistics. Dissemination also requires consideration of confidentiality rules, which certainly differ between the countries. The provision of micro-data certainly needs a specific legal basis. In some countries it is possible to provide micro-data to researchers or even to publish individual business information. In most countries it is not. *Annex E1* gives an overview of the Italian register-based census as an example for statistics directly based on SBR.

1.49 *Chapter 10* discusses SBR quality. As already mentioned, SBR quality is a crucial issue as it has a major impact on the quality of business statistics, especially in terms of completeness of coverage and accuracy of the characteristics (such as economic activity code) used for survey frames and sampling. Beginning with the definition of quality and the explanation of the quality dimensions related to the SBR, the chapter deals with the methods of quality assessment. It proposes quality indicators and provides the basic elements of a quality improvement policy. *Annex D1* describes the Italian SBR quality indicators and *Annex D2* the Colombian experience in implementing quality processes.

1.50 *Chapter 11* on key considerations in establishing an SBR is of particular interest for countries where an SBR is being developed or under review. It deals with three related areas: planning, governance and organisational and IT considerations. It covers the various aspects that need to be taken into account in the process of establishing an SBR (including long term scoping and modular approach). It deals with the legislative framework, funding and human resources, and it discusses and provides guidance on IT topics such as system architecture, database management, programming and software tools. A particular case of SBR architecture from Statistics Canada is described in

Annex C3. Annex E2 illustrates the calculation of a check digit for an identification number.

1.51 The last *Chapter 12* lists and briefly describes topics for further work and research as recommended by the Task Force. These topics were identified during the course of development of the Guidelines and are prompted by the need to deal with emerging issues that will pose major challenges in the future. As developing new methods and good practices is resource demanding, experience should be shared among countries and common development projects should be encouraged. The topics identified include the concepts and delineation of statistical units, the use of administrative data sources, the exploration of new data sources, the challenges of economic globalisation, the role of SBR as the backbone for economic statistics and the role of SBR in the modernisation of statistical production and services.

1.52 *Annex C* presents examples of SBRs in Denmark, Costa Rica, Canada, Georgia and Malaysia.

1.53 The *List of abbreviations and acronyms* provides an overview of the most commonly used abbreviations and acronyms in the Guidelines. The *Glossary* presents a list of the key terms used in the Guidelines with brief definitions and explanations. Material referred to is listed in the *References*.

1.6 Terminology

Introductory remark

1.54 As in guidelines of any sort, it is vital that everyone is on the same page as regards the meanings of the key terms used. The aim of the following paragraphs is to ensure all key terms are identified and defined, and that there is minimum use of other terms that are synonyms but could be interpreted as having slightly different meanings. In the case of synonyms only one term is used throughout the Guidelines, other term(s) being referenced the first time the selected term is used in the text. In the cases where the terms are not synonyms, the intended distinctions between them are made clear the first time they are used.

1.55 The definitions in the document and summarised below are based on terminology defined in 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4, supplemented where necessary by terms from the Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa developed by the African Development Bank. Additional information is provided in the Glossary.

1.56 The terms *business, company, establishment, enterprise, unit, statistical unit, respondent, economic unit, economic organization, economic operator, economic producer, legal entity, legal unit, local unit, legal local unit* tend to be used with different meanings in the literature. In the Guidelines they have the following specific meanings.

- *Unit* – a single distinct part or object, as generally understood in the English language, needing further qualification to have a more precise meaning.
- *Entity* – a synonym for *unit*.
- *Legal unit* – a unit that is recognized by law or society, independently of the persons or institutions that own it. The characteristics of a legal unit are that it owns goods or assets, it incurs liabilities and it enters into contracts. A legal unit always forms, either by itself or sometimes in combination with other legal units, the legal basis for a statistical unit.
- *Economic unit* – a *legal unit*, or part of a *legal unit*, with economic production as defined in 2008 SNA.
- *Economic operator*, *economic producer*, and *economic organisation* are synonyms for *economic unit*, not used except where they appear in a quotation.
- *Administrative unit* – a unit defined by a legal unit for the purposes of conforming with an administrative regulation, for example VAT.
- *Operational unit* – a unit defined by a legal unit for the purposes of organising itself, for example a division, branch, workshop, warehouse, or outlet.
- *Local unit* – an *enterprise* or a *part of an enterprise* (for example, a workshop, factory, warehouse, office, mine or depot) that engages in productive activity at or from one location.
- *Institutional unit* – an *economic entity* that is capable, in its own right, of owning assets, incurring liabilities and engaging in economic activities and in transaction with other entities. The term covers both market as well as non-market units.

Other types of units

- *Business* – (loosely used) as a type of enterprise, namely a commercial enterprise or legal unit with commercial economic activity.
 - *Corporation* - legal unit created for the purpose of producing goods or services for the market that may be a source of profit or gain to its owner; collectively owned by the shareholders who have the authority to appoint directors responsible for its general management.
 - *Company* – synonym for corporation.
 - *Firm* – used to refer to a company, partnership or unincorporated sole proprietorship.
 - *Observation unit* – a unit, *about which* data are obtained during the course of a survey; usually a statistical unit, or, if data cannot be obtained about a target statistical unit, then some other unit about which data can be obtained and from which data for a statistical unit can be compiled.
 - *Reporting unit* – the unit *from which* data about an observation unit are obtained during the course of a survey. It may, or may not, be the same as the observation unit. An example of it not being the same is where an accounting business reports data on behalf of a client business that is the actual subject of the survey.
- #### Standard statistical units
- *Statistical unit* – a unit defined for statistical purposes; the basic unit of observation within a statistical survey; the unit for which information is sought and for which statistics are ultimately compiled. There are four types of statistical unit defined in 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4, as defined immediately below. In addition, enterprises may be grouped by legal and/or financial links into an *enterprise group*.
 - *Enterprise* – a *legal unit* (or the smallest set of *legal units*) that produces goods or services and that has autonomy with respect to financial and investment decision-making. An enterprise may be a corporation (or quasi-corporation), a non-profit institution, or an unincorporated enterprise. An unincorporated enterprise is household or government unit in its capacity as a producer of goods or services.
 - *Establishment* – an *enterprise* or *part of an enterprise* that is situated in a single location and in which only a single (non-ancillary) productive activity is carried out or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added.
 - *Local kind-of-activity unit* – synonym for *establishment*.
 - *Kind-of-activity unit (KAU)* – an *enterprise* or *part of an enterprise* that engages in only one kind of productive activity or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added.

Data elements associated with SBRs

- *Register* - as generally understood in the English language – database on items or events, often kept by official whose job is to do so - needing further qualification to have a precise meaning.
- *Business register* – database on businesses, or, more generally of any administrative or statistical units, kept for a commercial, administrative, or statistical purpose, including relevant characteristics of the business/units.
- *Statistical business register (SBR)* – database on statistical and other units kept by an NSI for statistical purposes.
- *Live register* – the part of an SBR that is being continually updated with new information about the units and their characteristics.
- *Register snapshot* – a copy of the *live register* as of a given point in time.

- *Register picture* – synonym of *register snapshot*.
- *Frozen register* - synonym of register snapshot.
- *Frozen frame* – *register snapshot* containing only active statistical units.
- *Common frame* - synonym of *frozen frame*.
- *Frame* – set of statistical units, which forms the actual population for a survey.
- *Frame population* – synonym of *frame*.
- *Historical register* – capacity to view content of the *live register* at points in time in the past; can be via a set of consecutive *register snapshots*.

Miscellaneous other terms

1.57 The terms *enterprise* and *economic statistics* are used in preference to the narrower terms *business* and *business statistics* as an SBR may well include lists of government units and non-profit organisations, which are enterprises but not businesses, and which are the subject of some surveys (for example employment) for which frames are derived from the SBR.

1.58 The terms *characteristic*, *variable*, *property*, and *attribute* as applied to units in the SBR are considered as synonyms and the term *characteristic* is used in the context of the SBR and survey frames. The term *variable* is more appropriate in the case of surveys where sampling is involved and there is thus the notion of variability due the probability mechanism involved in selecting the samples.

1.59 Any type of survey conducted by SBR staff specifically to improve SBR quality is referred to as an *SBR improvement survey*. Synonyms are *quality improvement survey*, *nature of business survey*, *control survey* and *SBR survey*, *SBR coverage survey*, and *SBR quality improvement survey*.

1.60 As regards the organisations or persons using of SBR outputs, the term *user* is used, rather than *recipient*, *receiver*, or *customer*. Most SBR users are internal to the national statistical institute, being the staff of surveys that draw frames from the SBR.

1.61 In the context of surveys (including SBR improvement surveys) the term *response burden* is used in preference to synonyms such as *respondent burden*, *reporting burden* and *administrative burden*.

Chapter 2

Roles of the SBR

2.1 Introduction

2.1 As discussed in Chapter 1, an SBR is a vital component of the core statistical infrastructure supporting collection of economic data and production of economic statistics. The SBR serves as the coordinating mechanism for economic statistics and ideally provides all the information needed by the statisticians who are responsible for the various economic surveys and related statistical processes and outputs. The SBR is therefore sometimes said to play the role of a backbone in the production of economic statistics.

2.2 This chapter presents the specific roles of the SBR, which are listed in Figure 2.1 below. Each role is described in detail, indicating the inputs needed to perform the role and the statistical outputs produced. The chapter first presents the primary roles of an SBR in

maintaining and providing sets of statistical units, in particular enterprises, and in providing frames and other supports for surveys. It then lists a number of other SBR roles that are related to the primary purpose and build upon the methodology and databases of SBR. The chapter draws on material from Eurostat working groups and international conferences and meetings and includes examples from the Dutch, Italian, Mexican and South African NSIs.

2.3 The first role (*SBR live register*) of the SBR listed in Figure 2.2 is to maintain a set of statistical units as the foundation for creating frames for economic surveys. On a daily basis, the SBR is updated with new information from various sources. This information is used to create and deactivate statistical units, and to update their characteristics. This functionality of continuously creating, updating and deactivating of the corresponding units is referred to as the “*live register*”.

Figure 2.1 Overview of the SBR roles

	Role	Purpose
1	SBR live register	Provide the gateway between data from various input sources and statistical units
2	SBR register snapshot and frozen frame	Provide populations of statistical (and possibly administrative) units at fixed points in time
3	SBR survey frame	Provide a set of statistical units for a survey, valid for a specified reference period, with all characteristics required.
4	SBR survey support	Monitor survey response and measure and control response burden
5	SBR statistics	Produce statistics based directly on the SBR
6	SBR information source	Provide lists of enterprises and their locations and possibly other characteristics
7	SBR international data exchange	Facilitate coherence in international statistics
8	SBR in modernisation of statistical production and services	Promote integration of SBR within the production processes for economic statistics

2.4 The second role (*SBR register snapshot and frozen frame*) is to produce register snapshots and frozen frames from the live register as the basis for subsequent generation of survey frames. A *register snapshot* contains the set of statistical units valid for a specific reference period and hence represents a coordinated population of statistical units in space and time. A *frozen frame* contains all the active statistical units in a snapshot that have sufficient information associated with them for sample selection purposes. A snapshot (or frozen frame) may also provide the links between statistical and administrative units (for data collection) for the specific reference period.

2.5 The third role (*SBR survey frame*) of the SBR is to provide frames for surveys. For each survey the SBR provides the set of statistical units in scope for the survey (typically a subset of the frozen frame) together with the characteristics required for stratification and sampling, and, for the selected units, the information required to contact and communicate with them.

2.6 The fourth role (*SBR survey support*) concerns survey registration and survey control. It involves tracking the reporting statuses of enterprises and the response burden on enterprises imposed by surveys. The SBR supports this by storing information that can be used to optimize survey design as well as to monitor reporting statuses and to compile overall response burden.

2.7 The fifth (*SBR statistics*) and sixth (*SBR information source*) roles are to provide macro-data (economic and demographic statistics), and micro-data (enterprise names, address and characteristics), respectively, to users external to the NSI. This includes also data provided for analytical and economic research purposes. Such dissemination is constrained by the confidentiality provisions applying to the NSI, particularly in the case of micro-data.

2.8 The seventh role (*SBR international data exchange*) is to facilitate exchange of data and metadata across countries in order to improving coherence and international comparability of economic statistics. This is particularly important to ensure coherence of cross-border economic statistics, e.g. inward and outward foreign affiliates statistics (FATS) between two countries, and for the measurement of activities of multinational enterprises.

2.9 The eighth role (*SBR in modernisation of statistical production and services*) refers to the SBR's role in coordinating, linking and connecting units that occur in all kinds of sources relevant for statistics. The SBR facilitates the use of administrative registers and is a potential gateway for combining data from traditional sources and new media, and may serve as a data warehouse providing integrated data to users. It can also

facilitate new, industrialised and standardised production of statistics as part of a modernisation of statistical production and services, at both national and international levels.

2.2 SBR live register

2.10 Statistical units in economic statistics are used to describe in a standard way the various populations of organisations or parts or groups of organisations involved in economic production. An important role of the SBR is to maintain, and to keep track of changes in, statistical units and their characteristics that occur in the economy. Maintenance is a continuous process in which constant modifications of the set of statistical units occur over time. The extent of the modifications depends on the update strategy of the SBR. In this respect the SBR is considered to be a *live register* in which the composition and characteristics of units continuously change over time.

2.11 The live register is a vehicle for bringing together data from the various sources that provide the basis for derivation of statistical units. It is the starting point for communications with the owners of the sources. Legal units are usually the building blocks for creating statistical units. In some countries the SBR is the only environment in which legal units of all forms are brought together.

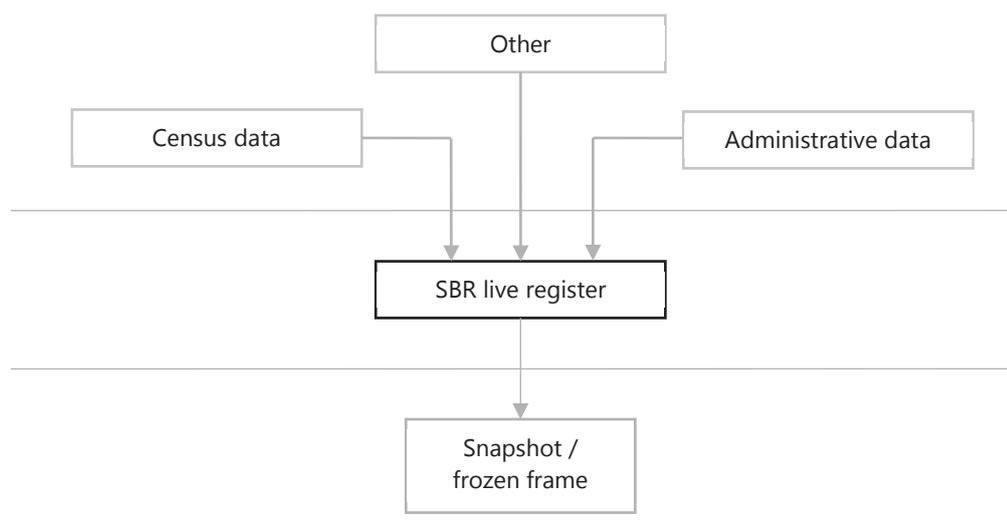
2.12 Statistical units are created in the live register. There are several types of statistical units. The most important type is the *enterprise*, usually defined in accordance with an international definition (as further discussed in Chapter 4) though implementation may require some compromise.

2.13 An economic census used to be one of the main sources from which to derive a common frame in order to conduct and coordinate business surveys. Nowadays SBRs are usually based on legal and/or administrative units obtained from a network of administrative registers and feedback from economic surveys, as illustrated in Figure 2.2.

2.14 The processes for creation and maintenance of statistical units, in particular the set of enterprises, are the most important factors in determining the quality and the usability of SBR populations for economic statistics. A well-defined maintenance strategy is a key aspect of an SBR. The units in an SBR are maintained and updated with the most recent information available, as further discussed in Chapters 6 and 7.

2.15 Timeliness and linkage issues can pose problems when using multiple sources, but their use in combination allows an NSI to derive all relevant statistical information and hence to reduce response burden and create new and more detailed outputs.

Figure 2.2 SBR live register



2.16 In order to make full use of source information, the values of key characteristics of units in the sources should be harmonised using well defined standards, for example, for dates, telephone numbers, addresses, legal form, economic activity, number of employees, etc., as further discussed in Chapter 5.

2.17 Monitoring the continuity of statistical units is also an important aspect of SBR maintenance. In the event of new information about a statistical unit, a decision has to be made whether the unit keeps its identity in the SBR, is deactivated in the SBR, or is registered as a new unit. This is further discussed in Chapter 7.

2.18 When updating administrative and statistical units and their characteristics, the existing and previous values should be retained in the live register if possible, or at least be retained in a *historical register*. This enables any change over time in any unit used for statistical production to be traceable back to the source, which may help understanding anomalies in statistical processes. Key SBR users, particularly those with direct access to the live register, must be trained so that they are aware why historical versions exist and why they may differ for certain units for different extraction dates.

2.19 Units from different sources are linked at micro level. However, not all legal or administrative units lead to the creation of a statistical unit or are necessarily linked to a corresponding statistical unit. This can happen because a legal/administrative unit is dormant, or inactive, or the information to determine whether the unit is active is simply not available in the source data. Thus, some legal/administrative units are not represented in the frozen frame since it contains only statistical units and are not, therefore, used in constructing survey frames or in subsequent compilation of statistical aggregates. However these *floating*

legal/administrative units and their data should remain available in the live register. Survey statisticians may need the information about such units to impute missing data, or to conduct surveys on specific groups of missing units, or to help in profiling.

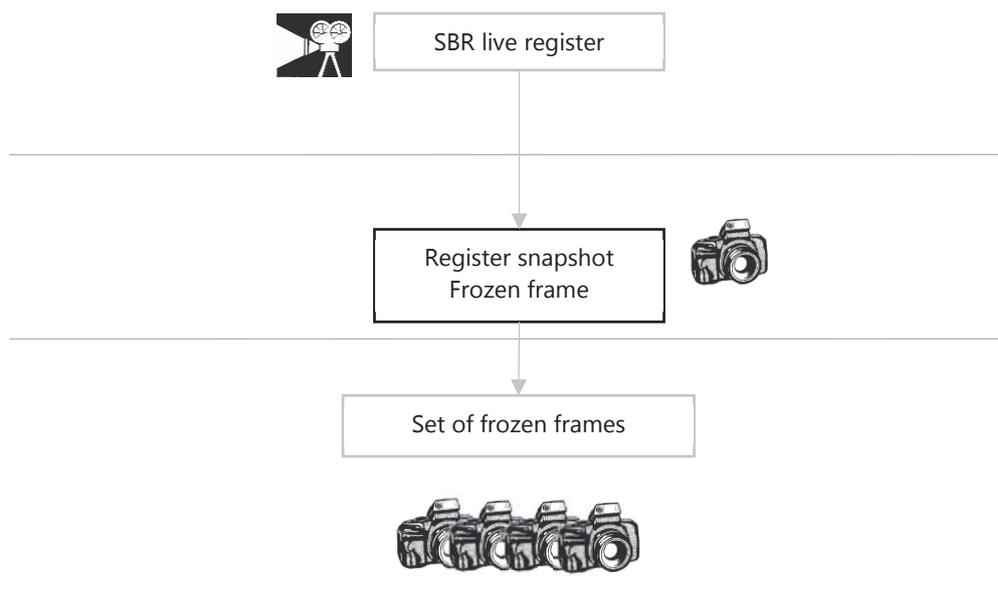
2.3 SBR register snapshot and frozen frame

2.20 The most important role of an SBR is its coordinating task in the production of economic statistics. This backbone role is best fulfilled if all statisticians in an NSI use the units delineated in the SBR as of specified reference dates. In other words, it must be possible for statisticians to view and retrieve a common set of units from the SBR as of specific reference date.

2.21 Thus, whilst the live register changes on an on-going basis, statisticians need coordinated input for their processes. If surveys are conducted with different time lags from a given reference period, the composition and the quality of the population of statistical units in the live register at the times the survey frames are drawn will differ. This indicates the need to derive a *"frozen version"* of the population of statistical units - a composition of units that is valid for a particular moment in time for use by all surveys. This is realised by taking a *"snapshot"* of the live register (which itself may be viewed as a *continuously changing movie*) as illustrated in Figure 2.3.

2.22 Each *snapshot* is extracted from the live register at a point in time. The set of all snapshots represents a set of coordinated populations of statistical and administrative units at specified time points, with a certain quality level. More precisely, a snapshot at date t consists of:

Figure 2.3 SBR frozen frame



- statistical units (SUs) at t ;
- administrative units linked to SUs at t (or *links* to these administrative units); and possibly
- administrative units not linked to SUs at t , but in the live register at t .

2.23 The units in a particular register snapshot that are “active” as of the specified reference period together with all the information about their characteristics needed for survey sample selection and other statistical purposes, constitute the “frozen frame” for that period. More specifically, a frozen frame at date t consists of:

- SUs active at t , and with sufficient information for survey sample selection, and
- Administrative units linked to SUs at t , or links to these units.

2.24 In some literature on this topic a frozen frame is called a *master frame*, or a *common frame*. This is because typically (as discussed below) several survey frames are derived from this single common extraction from the live register, thereby coordinating the survey frames at a moment in time.

2.25 The quality of a frozen frame depends on the quality of the information about the existence of units and their characteristics and on the reference period for which statistics are being compiled. This should be taken into account in trying to ensure that short term and annual indicators, which refer to overlapping reference periods, are coherent. It may lead to the revision of previously published short time indicators when annual indicators are produced. If a statistician needs more information about certain units than is available from

the frozen frame, then this extra information may be obtained by linking back to the same units in the live register.

2.26 In summary, a snapshot is a copy of all the statistical units in the live register, and all administrative units or at least all links from statistical units to administrative units. It is an intermediary step between live register and frozen frame. It is used to check for errors that have crept in during processing since the previous snapshot, also as the basis for a historical record (as further discussed below). It may contain many inactive enterprises. A frozen frame is a subset of the snapshot that comprises all statistical units that are active, or potentially active, or active within the previous reference year. It also includes administrative units that are linked to these statistical units. Its aim is to include all units and all characteristics that are used by subsequent processes and nothing else. In other words it is a trimmed down version of the snapshot that is easier to manipulate because the (possibly large number of) inactive units are not there.

2.27 If the frozen frame for an annual survey for reference period t is also used to observe the short time indicators in year $t+1$, it will not include the information on newly active units for reference year $t+1$. Therefore some NSIs create new version of the frozen frame at later points in time for sub annual surveys. Thus frozen frames may be produced annually, quarterly, or monthly. In all cases, it is important to control their use so that the resulting survey frames are as coherent as possible.

2.28 A set of frozen frames effectively constitutes a *historical register* which:

Frozen frames for business statistics at Statistics Netherlands

The Dutch SBR is the container of statistical units, and of administrative units coming from the Trade Register and the Tax Office. This information is needed to describe financial and production processes of resident enterprises.

Statisticians within Statistics Netherlands are obliged to use the SBR in producing economic indicators based on coordinated enterprise populations. Every month, an actual frozen frame is derived from the live register. This frozen frame represents the coordinated population that is valid for that month. This coordinated population consists of enterprise groups, enterprises and local units, and their main characteristics. In addition the statistical units are linked to the legal and the administrative units valid for that month. Besides a list with frame errors referring to activity codes or size classes of statistical units, is kept in order to be able to generate several instances of each frozen frame with improved quality levels.

Each month the frozen frame is stored a separate environment, which can be consulted for statistical production. This environment includes all past frozen frames and coordinates the populations used for statistical purposes. From this set of frozen frames an authorized statistician can retrieve the micro data needed for a statistical activity, for example, linking tax data and survey data to a frozen frame.

- Coordinates populations of statistical units.
- Provides links between statistical and administrative units.
- Links the SBR to other sources (administrative registrations, survey samples) used for statistical outputs.
- Enables the reconstruction of the history of the units it contains

2.29 Statisticians often compare particular populations of statistical units at different reference points in time and try to describe and explain the differences. The basic data for this sort of analysis is available from the historical register. The evolution of a particular population of enterprises may be presented in the form of enterprise demographic statistics.

2.4 SBR survey frame

2.30 A survey frame (sometimes called a sampling frame or a survey sampling frame) is a list of units from which a survey sample is selected, together with the characteristics required to draw the sample according to the agreed design (i.e. characteristics required for stratification, sample size determination and sample selection).

2.31 The frame for an economic survey should be a subset of the frozen frame, comprising the set of statistical and (linked) administrative units that match the specification of the survey target population and are active during the survey reference period, together with the characteristics that will be needed for the survey. Thus, for example, a survey of employment will include active units in all (or at least most) industries that are employers, i.e., will exclude units that are non-

employers. A survey of manufacturing will include active units that have an ISIC code in the manufacturing group, whether they have employees or not. A survey of capital expenditure will typically include active units in all industries above a certain size. Thus, the frames for different surveys for a given reference period are different from one another but are extracted from the same common set of units, namely the frozen frame.

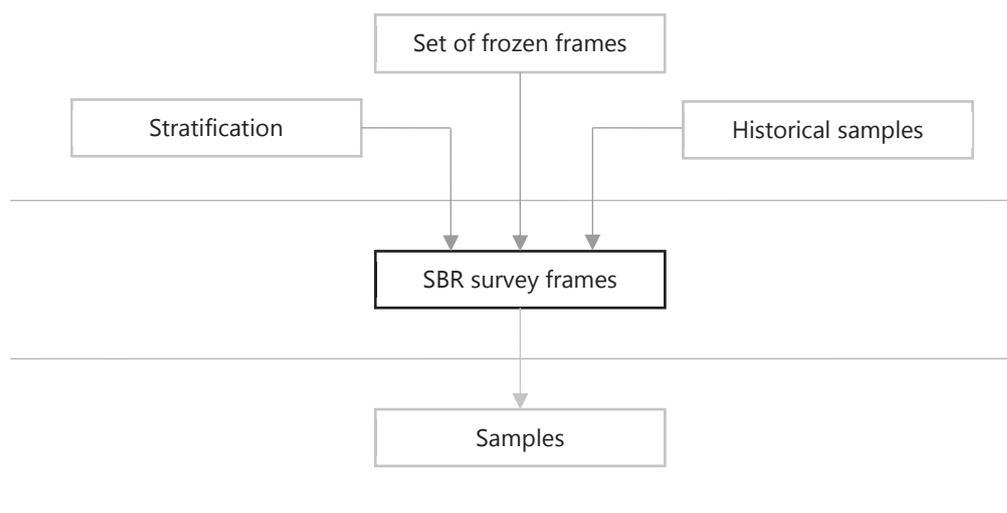
2.32 The primary benefits of survey frames that are extracted from a coordinated set of frozen frames are:

- Harmonisation of the surveys.
- Increased potential for integration of survey data.
- Reduction of costs.
- Prevention of double counting.
- More coherence in the resulting statistics.

2.33 Of course, these benefits can only be realized when a single live register is maintained and used to derive the frozen frames used for all relevant surveys.

2.34 It may be that an optimized sample design cannot be applied because some important stratification variables (e.g. turnover) that correlate strongly with the key indicator to be compiled, are missing from the live register and hence from the frozen frame. In this case it should be possible to enrich the statistical units with characteristics available from other (independent) sources and satellite registers in order to complete the survey frame.

2.35 A sample design which uses a panel population may be very complex to apply. In this case information on units in historical samples for similar surveys should be made available.

Figure 2.4 SBR survey frame

2.36 Some NSIs exclude enterprises from the survey that have already participated in a previous survey, or are in another on-going survey, in order to spread the response burden more equitably across the survey population. This is sometimes referred to as giving the enterprises a survey holiday.

2.5 SBR survey support

2.37 The role of survey support is illustrated in Figure 2.5. In a typical enterprise survey, information is collected from *reporting units* who report on behalf of the *observation units* (which are statistical units) in the survey sample (as further discussed in Chapter 4). The answers to survey questions are recorded on questionnaires filled out by reporting units directly, or, less frequently, with the aid of an interviewer. To support this process, information on how to contact the reporting units and their relationships to the observation units is required. While this information can be included in the frozen frame and hence in the survey frame, it is

more efficiently extracted afresh from the live register for the sampled units only. Exactly what information is required depends on the mode(s) of data collection.

2.38 Survey support is provided in three areas: data collection; survey registration and survey control.

Survey data collection

2.39 The primary activity in conducting a survey is data collection from reporting units. As previously noted, the information needed to contact the reporting unit depends on the mode used for data collection. In some cases a paper questionnaire is sent to the mailing address of the reporting unit. For a face-to-face interview a fieldworker has to visit the reporting unit to collect the information, so a physical address is needed. If the information is to be gathered by telephone, a telephone number is required. It is also possible that a reporting unit may submit an electronic questionnaire by e-mail or via a web site, in which case an email address is required.

Example from Statistics South Africa (SSA)

The SSA live register has two parts:

- an administrative part, containing several sets of administrative units maintained from administrative sources; and
- a statistical part (called the business sampling frame), containing statistical units derived from administrative units and maintained from administrative data, survey feedback, profiling etc.

The SSA snapshot contains all statistical units as of the point in time it is created and includes the values of all the characteristics that may be used for sampling. A snapshot is created, analysed and verified every quarter.

The SSA equivalent of a frozen frame is called the *Common Frame*. It is created, analysed and verified quarterly, but only used once per year as the basis for generation of survey frames. It contains all statistical units active with the characteristics (and only these characteristics) that are, or may be, used for sampling. Thus, statistical units that do not have valid values (industry code, size code, provincial code) for these sampling characteristics are excluded. Selected data are disseminated directly from the Common Frame.

Once per year all survey frames are drawn afresh from the most recent Common Frame. Contact data for sampled units are subsequently extracted from the live register.

Survey registration

2.40 Units that are involved in different surveys, or on repeated occasions for the same survey, can be the subject of a policy to reduce and/or spread response burden. For example, it may be policy for any small enterprise to be observed only once every two years or to participate in at most one survey per year. Also, as previously noted, enterprises that have already participated may be given a *survey holiday*.

2.41 The survey registration process provides information about the observation units about which data are to be acquired and the reporting units that are to provide these data. The likelihood of contacting a reporting unit is improved when the most recent contact or communication information is available.

2.42 It is important to provide the reporting unit's preferred response mode for the survey. Response mode may influence response rate. Making available a range of modes (paper, telephone, face-to-face, web-based or other electronically) can improve response rates.

Survey control and response burden measurement

2.43 To help control the data collection process, reporting units should be monitored throughout the collection process. When frame errors are detected they should be recorded. The survey help-desk may be the mechanism by which information about errors is received.

2.44 In order to improve response rates, reminders are often sent. The administration of reminders can be a complicated process, especially as it depends not only on the official deadline for reporting specified by the

survey but also on an estimate of the likely reaction time of the reporting units and/or of the quality of the answers they can provide. All attempts to contact reporting units have to be recorded, not only to ensure that follow-up is efficiently conducted, but to support subsequent enforcement of a response, as further illustrated by the following example from the Netherlands.

2.45 Reporting unit response rates (by mode in the case of multiple modes) and questionnaire item non-response rates are important in monitoring the quality of the survey outcomes, as discussed in more details in Chapter 10. Sample sizes and reporting unit response rates are also used in calculating target response burden and actual response burden.

Use of SBR for economic census

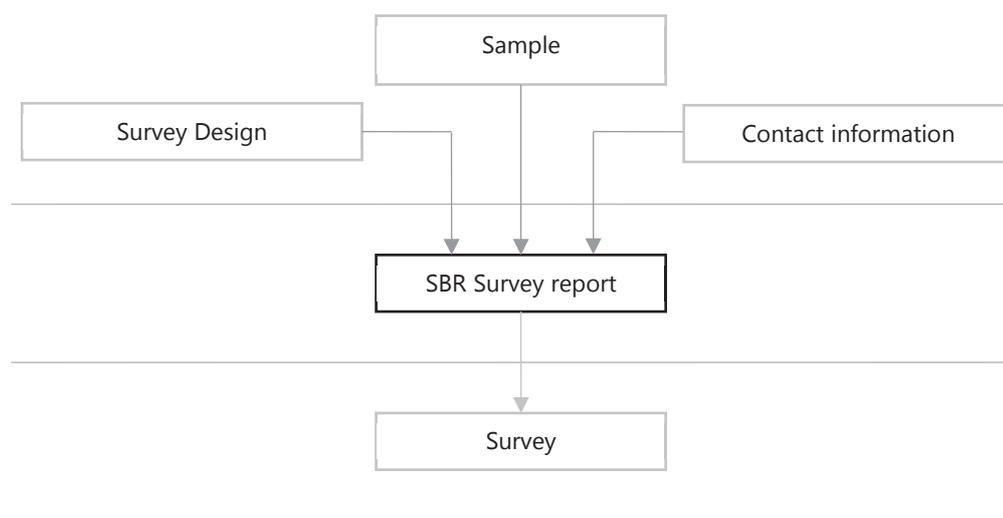
2.46 An economic census is a special type of survey in which the aim is to collect data from all statistical units in the target population. An SBR can be involved in variety of ways.

SBR is not used. The economic census is conducted on the basis of comprehensive area enumeration. The resulting set of statistical units, whether local units or enterprises, may be used subsequently as the basis for creating or updating the SBR. This approach was used in the past but has become less and less common because (1) it requires extensive resources, (2) does not take advantage of existing lists of enterprises and data about them and (3) leaves behind a list of units that is impossible to maintain in its entirety because to do so would require an ongoing census.

Response enforcement information in the Netherlands

Many countries have legislation requiring enterprises to respond to questionnaires from the NSI. In 2003, the Netherlands introduced a new statistical law. This law states that Statistics Netherlands is obliged to make maximum use of administrative data to derive its statistical output. Another of Statistics Netherlands' obligations is to reduce the response burden on enterprises, for example by utilising administrative data sources. This implies that the units registered with all these sources should be integrated into the SBR or at least linked to the SBR. In addition, Statistics Netherlands has included fiscal information on the structure of enterprises (available from the finance department) in its SBR. However, not all information can be extracted from the administrative sources available. Therefore surveys in which data are directly obtained by questionnaire from a relatively small number of respondents are still needed.

By law Statistics Netherlands has the right to require enterprises that do not respond to questionnaires to provide the requested information. In introductory letter that accompanies a survey, the enforcement procedure is explained. If an enterprise does not respond to an official questionnaire send by the statistical office, then several (predefined) reminders are sent to the responsible contact person. If the enterprise refuses to respond, Statistics Netherlands has the right to fine the enterprise without any intervention of a third part. To assist this process a separate system has been created, containing all relevant SBR information and keeping track of the complete history of all attempts to contact the responsible person in the enterprise. This information can be used as evidence if the enterprise starts a juridical procedure against the statistical office.

Figure 2.5 SBR Survey Support

SBR provides initial frame. In this approach, which might be called a *register assisted census*, enumerators are provided with an initial list of statistical units (local units or enterprises) based on the SBR, and they correct and supplement this list. This approach makes better use of the SBR but does not assume the SBR is definitive.

SBR provides the complete frame. In this approach the census is restricted to units that are in the SBR. Statistical data are collected about some or all of these units. For some units, data may be obtained from administrative sources instead.

SBR provides the complete frame and links to administrative data. There is no statistical data collection process. The data are obtained entirely from administrative sources through the SBR. This may be termed a register based census. Further details, including an example from Italy, are provided in Annex E1.

2.6 SBR based statistics

2.47 NSIs are confronted with increasing demands from governments, international bodies and researchers for business statistics on specific topics such as small areas or sectors of activity, and other particular aggregates. The information provided has to be consistent and comparable at country level, internationally, and for any other geographical area, also across different economic activities. At the same time NSIs are under pressure to reduce the data collection costs and response burden.

2.48 As illustrated in Figure 2.6, the SBR can play a key role in providing more information at less cost through direct use of SBR data. It can be a primary source of information on the structure and the demography of the population of enterprises. Also, in combination with other administrative registers or statistical data sources, it can produce additional statistical information for economic analysis.

Enterprise demography statistics

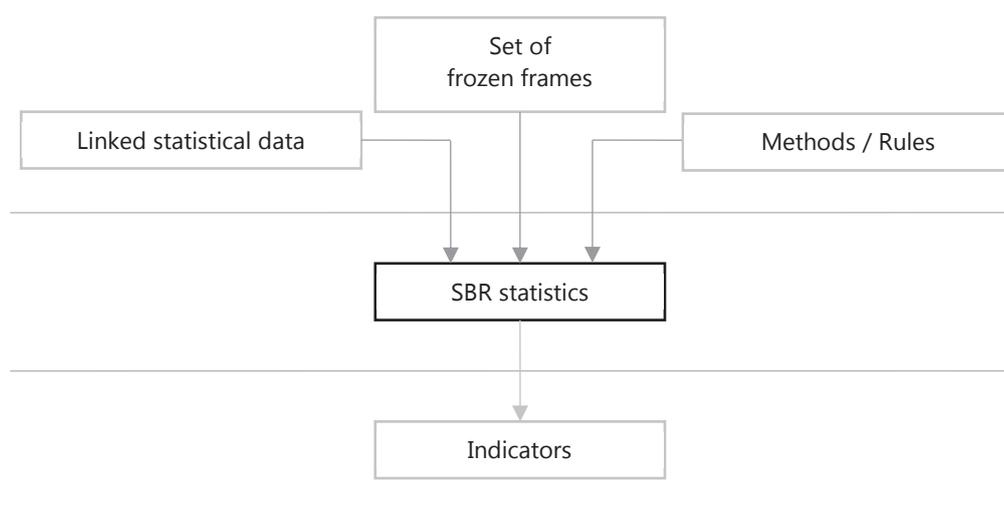
2.49 Data on births and deaths of enterprises, their survival rates and the role they play in economic growth and productivity as well as data for tackling socio-demographic issues are increasingly requested both by policy makers and analysts. As further discussed in Section 9.3, there are requirements for:

- Data for sub-populations of small and medium size enterprises.
- Historical data about enterprises.
- Identifying subpopulations of interest: for example, enterprises with high growth, or with large increases in numbers of employees.

2.50 Also, when calculating ratios, there needs to be conceptual consistency between the denominator and numerator populations.

2.51 The SBR can satisfy all these requirements because it covers the whole population of enterprises. Thus it can provide regional and small area data, basic characteristics like economic activity code, employment and/or turnover, and data on births and deaths. In summary it is an ideal source in terms of coverage and cost for the production and dissemination of enterprise demographic statistics.

Figure 2.6 SBR based statistics



2.52 However, use of the SBR for producing statistics raises similar issues regarding treatment of data over time as does its use in providing survey frames. The live register is constantly being refreshed. The updates applied over the time period (t) to $(t+1)$ represent not only the actual economic changes that occurred during that period, but also adjustments in the coverage or characteristics of units that resulted from SBR maintenance procedures and that had nothing to do with changes in the real world. For example, based on the results of an SBR improvement survey during the time period (t) to $(t+1)$ economic activity classifications of enterprises, or their measures of size, or the dates on which they ceased or commenced activity, may be corrected from their former out-of-date, erroneous or missing values. In summary, SBR data cannot be simply regarded as the result of a point in time statistical survey, which collects information about the status of an enterprise at time (t) or changes in the enterprise over the period (t) to $(t+1)$.

2.53 It may be advisable for statistics derived from SBR data to be based on a *satellite approach*. If parts, or the whole, of one or more frozen frames are extracted from the SBR and linked to data from other sources and if the resulting information is maintained outside and independent of the SBR environment, then the product is referred to as a *satellite*. A satellite approach (as further elaborated in Section 2.10) is a good way of addressing issues that may arise from corrections of classifications or reference periods as the base population can be well defined and coordinated. There may also be an organisational advantage to a satellite approach in the sense that the task of producing SBR based statistics from the satellite can be assigned to the organisational unit responsible for economic data production and dissemination rather resting with the SBR unit.

Integration with external trade register

2.54 External trade statistics do not present any explicit information on the characteristics of enterprises that undertake the trading. The concepts and classifications in external trade statistics differ from those in production statistics. Knowledge of a trading enterprise's profile - economic activity, size, location, and whether or not it belongs to an enterprise group - is important in the analysis of globalisation of the national economy and the determinants of this internationalisation. Coherent compilation of trade statistics by enterprise characteristics requires linkage of trade and business registers at micro level. If this can be achieved, the combination of the key enterprise characteristics and the trade data, such as product code and partner country, offers many opportunities for producing a more complete and diversified view of the structure of both trade and production.

2.7 SBR information source

2.55 The roles discussed in Sections 2.5-2.6 concern production and internal and external use of statistics (i.e. macro-data) based on SBR data. This section concentrates on the provision of SBR micro (individual) data as *open data*, i.e. the data that are publicly available for any individuals or organisations to use and that are licensed in a way that allows for reuse. Access may be made available to:

- Lists of enterprises – for the use of other government agencies and market research companies so that they can conduct surveys.
- Ownership and control information – “who-owns-who”.
- Information to support investigations into government program performance or to support preparation or monitoring of local, regional or national economic development programs.

2.56 As illustrated in Figure 2.7, in determining the scope of this role, the NSI is dependent on the dissemination infrastructure available. For example, provision of data through a geographical interface depends on the availability of a suitable geo-statistical infrastructure. The NSI is also likely to be significantly constrained by the confidentiality and privacy provisions embedded in the laws and regulations governing the dissemination of statistics as discussed in a following subsection. A supportive legal framework can open up the possibility of providing external users with access to business data that are already in the public domain, such as: trade name, ownership, economic activity, size, geographic location and contact data, as exemplified by the Mexican DENU system that is referenced in an example below and in Chapter 9.

SBR regulatory framework

2.57 SBR data must be handled in accordance with the regulatory framework that governs the NSI. On the one hand privacy and confidentiality provisions under the statistical legislation have to be observed. On the other hand much of the data about enterprises in the SBR is information that the enterprises themselves make public and/or is generally considered (within the legal framework in a country) to be of public interest, i.e. information to which any citizen should have access.

2.58 In ideal circumstances a regulatory framework would allow dissemination of the following SBR data:

- Identification and stratification characteristics: name of enterprise, denomination or corporate name, code and name of the economic activity class, size code based on number of personnel.
- Geographical location characteristics: street, external and internal number, neighbourhood, postal/zip code, locality.

- Geographical coordinates of the location: latitude and longitude.
- Contact characteristics: phone, fax, e-mail, and web-page.
- Date of birth of unit in the SBR.

2.59 In practice, the ability to provide this information may require review and revision of laws, regulations, policies and standards governing both the NSI and its administrative sources.

Geo-statistical information and SBR data consultancy systems

2.60 In recent years, there has been a growing interest in geospatial analysis. This interest can be attributed to significant increases in the use of geographic information systems (GIS), characterised by the capacity to integrate and use a wide variety of spatial information. Individual address records have become the standard level for spatial investigation in many socioeconomic and planning applications. Because of the increased level of user friendliness and accessibility of GIS packages, geographical coordinates can be assigned to each address in the SBR. The geospatial dimension introduced in the SBR is used as a basis in building a geographic infrastructure data system for geospatial analysis of economic structures.

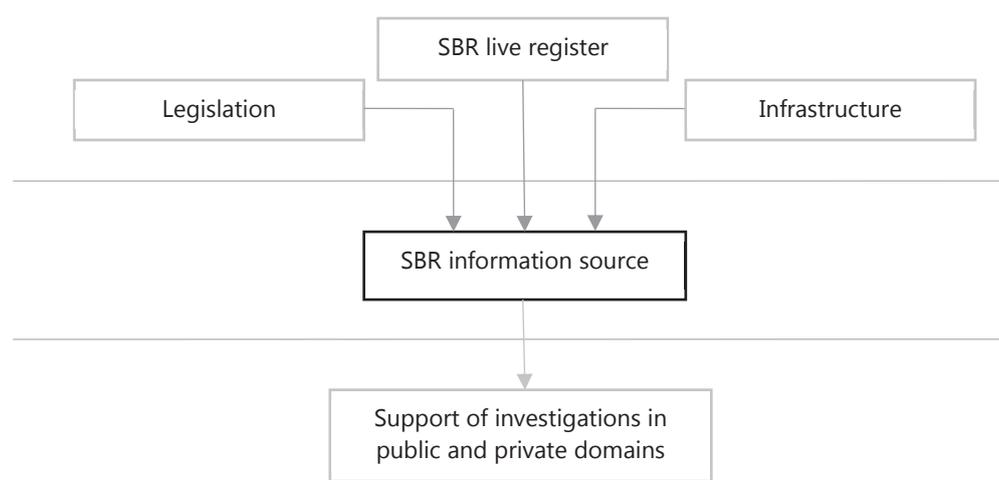
2.61 The geospatial information needs to be updated regularly. Ideally, on this basis, the SBR should be able to provide information on the distribution of economic activity and enterprises/establishments by geography. A GIS can present this information as geo-statistical cartography. The use of GIS is fundamental in providing users with the necessary data to analyse economic activity in relation to geography.

The role of the SBR in the System of Environmental-Economic Accounting (SEEA)

The System of Environmental-Economic Accounting (SEEA)* is the international statistical standard to measure the environment and its relationship with the economy. The SEEA Central Framework measures the contribution of the environment to the economy and the impact of the economy on the environment. It is a satellite accounting system to the System of National Accounts and uses similar concepts and classifications (e.g. for economic activities and products) to those employed in the SNA for environmental information. The SEEA comprises physical and monetary supply and use tables and asset accounts showing natural resources inputs such as energy and water products and residuals such as air pollution, water emissions, solid waste, oil and gas reserves, environmental investments and subsidies, protection expenditure, and so on.

The SBR supports the compilation of SEEA accounts and tables by providing coordinated populations of statistical units and their characteristics by industry, which can be used to collect information in physical and monetary terms. This allows the derivation of aggregates automatically related to the aggregates of an economic indicator related to the corresponding population of industries used by the national accounts. Therefore, high quality of the economic activity classification (by ISIC and/or NACE) and the linkage of the SBR with other data sources are of great importance.

**System of Environmental-Economic Accounting 2012. United Nations, et al, New York 2014.*
http://unstats.un.org/unsd/envaccounting/seeaRev/SEEA_CF_Final_en.pdf

Figure 2.7 SBR information source

Through a GIS, it is possible to incorporate the many information layers as geo-statistical data, including settlements, street axes, block fronts, locality polygons, blocks, external numbers, urban services, reference elements, natural resources, geographical names, hydro graphic networks, routes of communication, territory images, relief, limits references, and geodesic references.

2.8 SBR international data exchange

2.62 In a society that is more and more influenced by globalisation, international comparability of economic statistics is becoming increasingly important. Internationally defined indicators based on internationally harmonised populations of statistical units are desirable because the resulting statistics are more comparable when measuring globalisation effects. At the same time it is important for producers and users of statistics to understand the potential limitations of the SBR in the context of international comparability.

2.63 Much effort is spent in the SBR to guarantee coherence, in terms of concepts, methods and quality within an NSI and between NSIs. In the last few decades, thanks to the activities of supra-national and international organisations such as Eurostat, IMF, OECD, World Bank and UN, worldwide coherence in the definition and treatment of enterprises and their statistics, as described in the 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4, has increased considerably. This is important as SBR data

are used in studies involving (the structures of) different national economies, as illustrated in Figure 2.8.

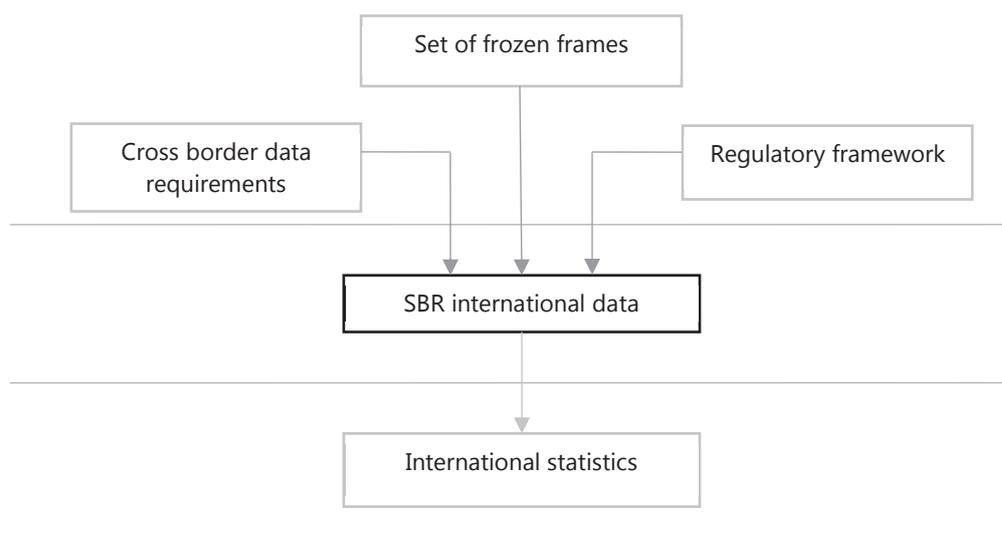
2.64 Key factors in improving the quality of international statistics are the exchange and coordination of micro-data between countries and the central accessibility of these data, for example, storing them in one central database or at least accessing them through a single gateway. In this context national SBRs are potential data providers and a network of these could be established.

2.65 Data exchange is not only important for international statistics, but also in achieving consistency in statistics dealing with cross-border issues in different countries. For example a subsidiary of an enterprise in country X should be covered by inward FATS in country Y and by outward FATS in country X.

2.66 A complex question for an NSI is the legal basis for sharing micro-data with statistical authorities of other countries or international organisations. International standards regarding the legal basis for micro-data sharing are yet to be established. Exchange of data on multinational enterprises can be seriously hampered by the requirements that, first, data are used exclusively for statistical purposes and, second, disclosure of data about individual statistical units is forbidden. The capacity to transfer the data to another country depends upon confidentiality requirements within the sending country. The receiving country is

Geo-statistical information in Mexico

In Mexico, the *National Directory of Economic Units (DENUE)* is a part of the SBR that is available to any user through a free consultation system in the *National Institute of Statistics and Geography* (<http://www3.inegi.org.mx/sistemas/mapa/denue/default.aspx>). Its geo-statistical features have broadened its role as a tool supporting public and private policy developers and decision makers as well as academia and researchers.

Figure 2.8 SBR international data exchange

responsible for satisfying whatever conditions are imposed by the sending country and its own confidentiality laws.

2.67 Thus, such exchanges require close cooperation between the partner countries, comparable rules for the use and protection of confidential data, a solid agreement between the countries, and, above all, trust that data are not misused.

2.9 SBR in modernisation of statistical production and services

2.68 Development of the SBR is a key to meeting user demands for more, better and more timely statistics. As a unifying tool, the SBR is pivotal in modernising the statistical production process in line with an integrated statistical architecture. Keywords in current attempts to modernise statistics are efficiency, coherence, interoperability and cooperation. In this context, the Generic Statistical Business Process Model (GSBPM) is a standard but flexible tool for describing and defining the common set of business processes that typically constitute statistical production. It is being used in developing a common business reference architecture that has the aim of obtaining more coherence in official statistics. The SBR fulfils a backbone role in this respect by integrating several data sources and supporting the collection of economic data. This backbone role can be strengthened when the use of the SBR is seen to support the business processes as described in the GSBPM (as further elaborated in Chapter 8).

GSBPM Sub-process 2.4. Design frame and sample

This sub-process only applies to processes which involve data collection based on sampling, such as through statistical surveys. It identifies and specifies the population of interest, defines a sampling frame (and, where necessary, the register from which it is derived),

and determines the most appropriate sampling criteria and methodology (which could include complete enumeration). Common sources for a sampling frame are administrative and statistical registers, censuses and information from other sample surveys. This sub-process describes how these sources can be combined if needed. Analysis of whether the frame covers the target population should be performed. A sampling plan should be made.

GSBPM Sub-process 4.1. Select frame and sample

This sub-process establishes the frame and specifies the sample. It includes the coordination of samples between repetitions of the same statistical business process, in particular to manage overlap or rotation of the sample. It also includes coordination between samples for different processes by using a common frame to manage overlap and/or to spread response burden. Quality assurance and approval of the frame and the selected sample are also undertaken in this sub-process, though maintenance of underlying registers is treated as a separate business process.

2.69 The SBR can be linked to other than administrative sources. This can be achieved by storing the identification numbers of units in other sources in the live register, or by integrating special modules in the SBR to be used for matching with other sources. In this case the statistical units in the SBR can be linked to the units in these other sources, which means their data are available to assist in maintaining the units in the SBR and/or for use by surveys. To improve interoperability, the SBR should support development of the conditions for exchange of coordinated statistical information among countries, including an international identification service. The SBR may also take advantage of methods and software for SBR maintenance that have been developed by other countries.

Euro Group Register (EGR)

The EGR is a central business register maintained by Eurostat that supports production of micro based statistics on globalisation in Europe, both at country and European level. National data from various commercial and institutional sources are integrated into the EGR without questioning their quality. The EGR thus constitutes, in effect, an international network of registers. It provides access to integrated and up-to-date data on multinational enterprise groups that have statistically relevant (financial or non-financial) transnational operations in at least one of the European countries involved in the project.

European System of Business Registers (ESBRs) Project

The ESBRs project (2013-2017) is rationalising, strengthening and standardising all national SBRs in the ESS with the ultimate aim of integration within an interoperable system. It is a continuation of the EGR Project and the ESS International Profiling Project. A core goal is improvement of the EGR so that it can provide better quality information on multinational enterprises (MNEs), with on-line access by NSIs. It incorporates a new model for statistical units and profiling that enables views of MNE groups in their entirety, often referred to as *seeing the whole elephant*.

European Statistical System Network (ESSnet): Exchange of trade micro-data

Experts within the ESS EGR and International Profiling Projects are developing methodological guidelines for derivation of coordinated populations to support Foreign Trade Statistics and Statistics on Foreign Direct Investments at European level. These guidelines are a starting point for a worldwide discussion on the measurement of global indicators to describe globalisation effects and may well influence future exchange of data from SBRs.

2.70 Demands for more detailed, timely and coherent data require a modernized national statistical system which produces official statistics more efficiently and in an integrated and internationally coordinated way. The High-Level Group for the Modernisation of Statistical Production and Services (HLG), established by the Bureau of the Conference of European Statisticians, promotes standards-based modernisation of statistical production and services. This calls for a common architecture for data collection, processing and dissemination in which context the SBR will play a key role.¹

2.10 Satellite approach to extend functionality

2.71 If all the roles described in the previous sections are supported by the SBR, the result may be quite a complex network of databases and functionalities. An approach that can be used to extend the functionality with minimum complication is to extract parts or the whole of one or more frozen frames from the SBR and afterwards link information from other data sources to its units. The resulting product, which is maintained outside and independent of the SBR, is called an SBR *satellite*.

2.72 The responsibility for and control of a satellite are separated from the SBR and usually take place in a different environment. Whilst this can adversely affect

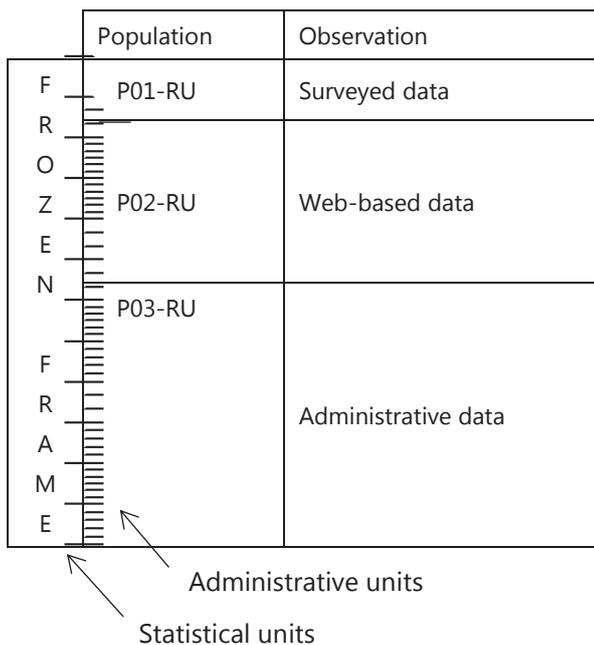
the coordinating role of the SBR, the big advantage is that much more additional information can be stored and managed without interfering with the basic functions of the SBR. Satellites can, for instance, support international trade statistics, or cooperation with central banks. In such cases anomalies that might result from integration within the SBR environment can be avoided.

2.73 The SBR may support the satellite approach in different ways. If the units available in one or more frozen frames are linked to data from sources other than those used in the SBR, then the combined result may be a semi-manufactured statistical product blending statistical and administrative data. The difference from a sample is that, in this kind of satellite, information is linked to all units in the underlying population. This approach is useful, for example, to provide economic indicators on self-employed (income-estimation) or to compile the regional distribution of production factors to support regional accounting information.

2.74 By linking information collected by different methods, for example by survey and from an administrative source to the units in one or more frozen frames, a satellite is useful in splitting off and controlling domains where secondary data collection based on administrative sources is not possible or is less efficient. The production of a satellite register is illustrated in Figure 2.9 where the population is covered through three data sources, survey data, data collected from the web and administrative data, which are integrated into one satellite register. The example could also illustrate the traditional approach of merging administrative data for small enterprises and survey data for large enterprises.

¹ More information about the work of the HLG is available from the website of the UNECE Statistical Division, <http://www.unece.org/statistics>

Figure 2.9 Production of a satellite register



- P01 = Population 01
- P02 = Population 02
- P03 = Population 03
- SU = Type of statistical unit
- RU = Type of reporting unit

It is also possible to analyse and even compensate for over- or under- coverage of units in the live register by comparisons with other sources. Instead of including the other sources in the live register, it may be more convenient (and less complex) to maintain a satellite outside the SBR environment.

2.75 This kind of approach may be appropriate for units in the governmental sector (S13), or units that belong to the financial sector (S12), or foreign units that belong to the sector representing the rest of the world (S2).

2.76 Another possible circumstance in which to set up a satellite is where different statistical units from those recorded in the live register are used to describe a phenomenon. There may be a case for maintaining descriptions of such units in a satellite to ease the workload on SBR staff and reduce the complexity of the SBR system, even though additional resources may be required to maintain two separate systems. For example, to produce tourism statistics, data are collected on the capacity and the occupancy of accommodation establishments used by tourists, for example, nights spent, arrivals, occupancy rates, and number of bedrooms. For this purpose the data collection at the level of an enterprise unit with a main activity in the tourism groups would be insufficient as many tourist accommodation establishments are provided by enterprises or institutes with another main activity offering accommodation as a secondary activity. For this reason a special satellite linked to the SBR that records tourism establishments may be a better solution than attempting to extend the functionality of the SBR itself to include such units.

2.77 In conclusion, it must be reiterated that the main reason for setting up a satellite is to simplify otherwise complicated statistical processes by splitting them off from the SBR, with the aim of simplifying control and/or spreading responsibility.

Chapter 3

Coverage of SBR

3.1 Introduction

3.1 This chapter describes the coverage of an SBR and examines the concept from the perspective of the various institutional unit types and sectors of the economy, and it flags key issues that NSIs need to consider.

3.2 In principle, an SBR should record all institutional units in the national economy that are engaged in productive economic activities, i.e., activities contributing to the gross domestic product (GDP). In accordance with the 2008 System of National Accounts (2008 SNA: 1.40), the term “*economic production*” is understood as referring to “*a process carried out under the control and responsibility of an institutional unit that uses labour, capital, goods and services to produce outputs of goods and services*”, and institutional units engaged in production are referred to as *enterprises*. This chapter examines the three key aspects of SBR coverage:

- *Completeness* is the extent to which the SBR includes all institutional units within the 2008 SNA production boundary.
- *Coverage* is the proportion of total national economic production that the units represent.
- *Content* is the set of characteristics (e.g., institutional sector, size, location and registration status) of the units contained in the SBR.

3.3 An SBR can be said to provide complete coverage and content if it includes all units producing goods and services together with all their required characteristics. In reality, complete coverage of all these units within the SNA production boundary is impossible to achieve. However, for the purposes of international comparisons, it is desirable that the coverage of an SBR should meet agreed standards, with completeness being the ultimate aim.

3.4 During any period units commence and cease operations. Thus SBRs should be regularly updated, new units created, and units that have ceased economic activities deactivated. Construction and maintenance of the SBR are described in Chapters 6 and 7.

3.5 The SBR provides frozen frames, each of which contains all units in the live register for a given reference period. Frames for economic surveys are derived from frozen frames. Thus the coverage of an SBR for a *given reference period for a given survey* can be defined as the

extent to which the survey frame from the SBR represents the survey target population.

3.6 This chapter presents considerations that are pertinent in formulating the SBR coverage and content decisions and it discusses specific issues for various segments into which the SBR may be divided. It is based on concepts articulated in the *2008 SNA, ISIC Rev 4*, Eurostat’s *Business Register Recommendations Manual*, the African Development Bank’s *Guidelines for Building SBRs in Africa* and other sources as footnoted and listed in *References*.

3.2 Key concepts

3.2.1 Production boundaries, institutional sectors and enterprises

3.7 The concept of *production* is defined in the 2008 SNA together with descriptions of the production boundaries, which clarify the activities constituting production. The 2008 SNA includes two types of production boundary: the *general production boundary* and the *SNA production boundary*.

3.8 The *general production boundary* defines production as an activity carried out under the control of and under the responsibility of an institutional unit that uses inputs of labour, capital and goods and services to produce outputs of goods or services. There must be an institutional unit that assumes responsibility for the process of production and owns any resulting goods or knowledge-capturing products, or is entitled to be paid or otherwise compensated, for the change-effecting or margin services provided (2008 SNA: 6.24).

3.9 The *SNA production boundary* is a more restricted version of the general production boundary. It excludes activities undertaken by households that produce services for their own use, except for services provided by owner-occupied dwellings and services produced by employing paid domestic staff (2008 SNA: 6.26).

3.10 The 2008 SNA (4:24) describes the five sectors into which institutional units may be divided. These are *non-financial corporations*, *financial corporations*, *government units*, *households* and *non-profit institutions serving households*. Dividing the total economy into sectors enhances the usefulness of the data for purposes of economic analysis by grouping together institutional units with similar objectives and types of behaviour. Each of the sectors may be divided into subsectors. No single method of sub-sectoring is optimal for all

purposes or all countries. Sectors and subsectors are also used to target or monitor particular groups of institutional units for policy purposes. More details are provided in Annex B2.

3.11 In their role as economic producers, 2008 SNA refers to institutional units as “enterprises”.

3.2.2 Market and non-market producers

3.12 The distinction between market and non-market production is critical from the perspective of the 2008 SNA and hence important for the SBR. *Market producers* are enterprises that sell all or most of their output at prices that are economically significant (2008 SNA: 4.88). Prices are said to be *economically significant* if they have a significant effect on the amount that producers are willing to supply and the amounts purchasers wish to buy. Market producers make decisions about what to produce and how much to produce in response to expected levels of demand and expected costs of supply and are exposed to the risks associated with this production. They adjust supply either with the goal of making a profit in the long run or, at a minimum, covering capital and other costs.

3.13 The core coverage of the SBR comprises units that are market producers and whose principal activity is the production of goods and services. Registered market producers are very important from an economic point of view and in principle are not difficult to cover based on available administrative registers.

Non-market producers

3.14 Non-market producers are not likely to respond to changes in economic conditions in the same way as market producers. Their economic behaviour is influenced by the receipt of financial support in the form of transfers such as taxes, grants and donations. Government units and non-profit institutions that provide most of their services at prices that are not economically significant prices are considered non-market producers.

3.15 The recommended SBR treatment of non-market producers is covered in the discussion on government and non-profit institutions.

3.2.3 Non-observed and observed economies

3.16 In national accounts the term non-observed economy is used to describe activities that, for one reason or another, are not captured in regular statistical enquiries. The reason may be that the activity is informal and thus escapes the attention of surveys geared to

formal activities; it may be that the producer is anxious to conceal a legal activity, or it may be that the activity is illegal (2008 SNA: 6.39). As noted in *Measuring the Non-Observed Economy. A Handbook* (OECD et al., 2002), complete coverage of economic production is a vital aspect of the quality of the national accounts. However, this is hard to achieve because of the difficulties in recording certain types of productive activities. Activities that are missing from the basic data used to compile the national accounts are said to comprise the *non-observed economy (NOE)*. Productive activities may be non-observed because they are *informal, household production for own final use, illegal, underground, or due to deficiencies in the basic data collection system*. Making estimates for them in the national accounts is referred to as *measurement of the NOE*.

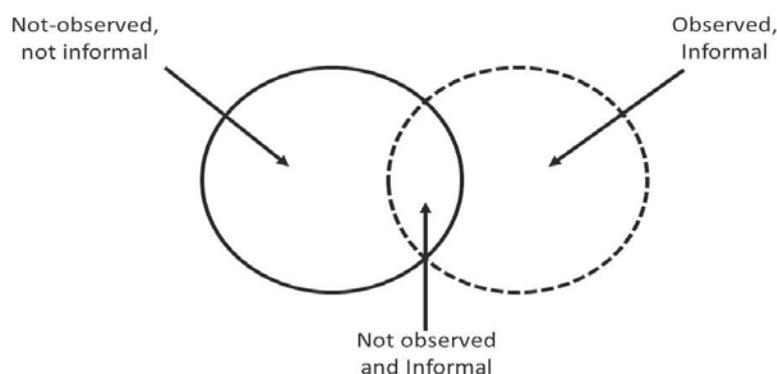
3.17 It is difficult to identify the enterprises that are part of the non-observed economy and thus they are often defined to be outside the planned coverage of the SBR, as further discussed in Sections 3.3 and 3.4. In this case their economic activities have to be measured in some way other than by a survey based on the SBR.

3.2.4 Informal sector

3.18 A national economy can be divided into three parts: the formal sector, the informal sector, and household non-market production for own final use. The major portion of the difference between the total economic production of households and what is readily measured by enterprise surveys and administrative sources is the *informal economy*, i.e., production by enterprises that are considered to be in the informal sector as defined below (paragraph 3.26). As noted in 2008 SNA (25.47), the term *sector* in this context “*does not have the same basis as the usual use of the word sector throughout the SNA. In the SNA, sectors are made up of complete institutional units; in the context of the informal sector only the productive activities are concerned.*”

3.19 The relationship between the non-observed economy and the informal sector is illustrated in Figure 3.1, taken from 2008 SNA: Figure 25.1. The solid circle represents the non-observed economy and the dotted circle the informal sector. The relative size of the three segments shown in the figure varies from country to country.

3.20 The informal sector represents an important part of the economy in many countries, playing a major role in production, income generation, and employment creation.

Figure 3.1 Non-Observed economy and Informal Sector

3.21 The informal sector has been defined by the Fifteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians in its resolution concerning statistics of employment in the informal sector organised by the International Labour Organization (ILO) in 1993. A resolution of the Conference describes the informal sector in broad terms reflecting the types of production units of which it is composed. It also provides a framework within which each country must formulate its own specific operational definition. Discussion of the informal sector in chapter 25 of the 2008 SNA is consistent with the resolution.

3.22 The informal sector is broadly characterized as consisting of units engaged in the production of goods or services with the primary objective of generating employment and incomes for the persons involved in the production. These units typically operate at a low level of organization, with little or no division between labour and capital as factors of production and on a small scale. Labour relations – where they exist – are based mostly on casual employment, kinship, or personal and social relations rather than contractual arrangements with formal guarantees². The informal sector thus defined excludes households producing exclusively for own final use (2008 SNA: 25.41).

3.23 More specifically, the ILO framework requires that the informal sector be defined as a subset of household unincorporated enterprises, comprising those enterprises that:

- produce at least some output for the market; and
- are less than a specified size in terms of the number of persons engaged, or of employees or of employees employed on a continuous basis; and/or

- are not registered under specific forms of national legislation, such as factories or commercial acts, tax or social security laws, professional groups' regulatory acts, or similar acts, laws or regulations established by national legislative bodies.

3.24 These criteria provide a framework for a definition of the informal sector, *not a single, unambiguous definition*. Thus, there are variations across countries in how the informal sector is actually defined. The units included in the informal sector depend upon whether registration and/or number of employees is/are used as a criterion, and, in the latter case, on the size boundary for number of employees. It also depends upon whether or not agricultural units are included. In fact the ILO recommends that household unincorporated enterprises that are involved in agricultural activities (ISIC section A) are measured separately from other economic activities to ensure international comparability and to facilitate the selection and application of appropriate statistical data collection tools and sample design (2008 SNA: 25.46). They are referred to in these Guidelines as *informal agriculture*.

3.25 Figure 3.2 shows how the three economic sectors into which the economy may thus be divided relate to the institutional sectors defined in the 2008 SNA, and it indicates which household unincorporated enterprises are considered to be part of the informal sector. This is further elaborated in Section 3.3, where a slight distinction between the 2008 SNA and ILO frameworks for defining “informal” is described.

² 2008 SNA: 25.36 and ICLS93: 5(1)

3.26 The particular informal sector definition recommended in these Guidelines is the set of *household enterprises that have market production but are not registered in the administrative source(s) on which the SBR is based*. This definition is in accordance with the 2008 SNA and ILO frameworks and provides a clear formal/informal boundary. It means that:

- The suite of economic surveys based on the SBR and on administrative data measure the formal sector.
- Household market enterprises not included in SBR constitute the informal sector (which may itself be divided into informal non-agriculture and informal agriculture).

3.27 More information can be obtained from *Measuring informality: A statistical manual on the informal sector and informal employment* produced by the ILO in 2013. This document is a technical guide for NSIs and other producers of statistics on the informal sector and informal employment. It presents the ILO international standards as well as the guidelines on informal employment adopted by the 17th ICLS in 2003. It also provides practical guidance on implementing the standards, by presenting alternative methods of measurement along with examples based on national experience, and includes guidelines for the dissemination of statistics on the informal sector and informal employment.

3.2.5 Illegal activities

3.28 The national accounts (2008 SNA: 6.43) distinguishes between two kinds of illegal production:

- Production of goods or services whose sale, distribution or possession is forbidden by law.
- Production activities that are usually legal but become illegal when carried out by unauthorized producers, for example, unlicensed medical practitioners.

3.29 Examples of activities that may be illegal but productive in an economic sense include the manufacture and distribution of narcotics, illegal transportation in the form of smuggling of goods and of people, and services such as prostitution. Both kinds of illegal production are included within the production boundary of the SNA provided they are genuine production processes whose outputs consist of goods or services for which there is an effective market demand (2008 SNA: 6.44-6.45).

3.2.6 Underground activities

3.30 Certain activities may clearly fall within the production boundary of the SNA and be legal, provided certain standards or regulations are complied with, but deliberately concealed from public authorities for the following kinds of reasons (2008 SNA: 6.40):

Figure 3.2 Identifying units in the ILO Informal Sector^{a)}

Institutional Sector	Sector of Economy		
	Formal	Informal ^{b)}	Household Non-Market
Non-Financial and Financial Corporations	All	-	-
General Government	All	-	-
Non-Profit Organisations Serving Households (NPISH)	All	-	-
Households	Household unincorporated enterprise that are registered or have more than a given number of employees	Without employees (" <i>informal own-account enterprises</i> " in ILO terms) With employees (" <i>enterprises of informal employers</i> " in ILO terms)	Household unincorporated enterprises undertaking production only for own final use (including owner occupation of dwellings)

^{a)} Based on 2008 SNA, Figure 25.2.

^{b)} May be divided into informal non-agriculture and informal agriculture.

- Avoiding payment of income, value added or other taxes.
- Avoiding payment of social security contributions.
- Avoiding having to meet certain legal standards such as minimum wages, maximum hours, safety or health standards, etc.
- Avoiding complying with certain administrative procedures, such as completing statistical questionnaires or other administrative forms.

3.31 Such kinds of activities are referred to as underground activities.³

3.3 SBR coverage

3.3.1 Type of institutional units

3.32 The SNA production boundary covers the productive activities undertaken by all institutional units. Thus NSIs should aim to cover as much national production as possible in their SBRs by including all types of institutional units engaged in production. However, as previously noted, complete coverage can never be attained in practice, and a more realistic aim is for coverage to meet agreed standards.

3.33 The following paragraphs contain detailed discussion on the coverage of the various groups of units in the SBR. Groups of units should not be omitted without an assessment of their economic importance. SBRs should aim to record, at a minimum, all active economic units in the formal economy that are engaged in economic activities contributing to the gross domestic product (GDP).

3.3.2 Government units

3.34 2008 SNA describes *government units* as unique kinds of legal entities established by political processes that have legislative, judicial or executive authority over other institutional units within a given area (2008 SNA: 4.9).

3.35 Data for general government units are often obtained directly from a single source within the government rather than requiring direct survey of individual government ministries, departments, and agencies.

3.36 The advantage of inclusion of government units in the SBR is that it enables a single system to provide frames for all surveys. Appropriate reporting arrangements can be recorded in the SBR to indicate whether or not the data for a particular survey can be collected from a single centrally located government source rather from the individual government units.

3.37 The identification of statistical units for government may vary from country to country

according to the particular way in which the government is organised. However, the same general principles for determining the appropriate statistical units can be used for governments as are used in identifying other large complex enterprises. This is further discussed in Chapter 7 of these Guidelines.

3.3.3 Corporations

3.38 In the 2008 SNA (4.7) the term *corporation* covers legally constituted corporations and also cooperatives, limited liability partnerships, notional resident units and quasi corporations.

3.39 Units that are market producers and whose principal activity is the production of goods and services constitute the core coverage of the SBR. The subset of these units comprising all registered profit oriented *corporations* is the most important one from an economic point of view. Their inclusion in the SBR causes, in principle, no coverage difficulty since sources that identify corporations are usually readily available.

3.3.4 Non-profit institutions

3.40 In 2008 SNA non-profit institutions (NPIs) are legal or social entities created for the purpose of producing goods and services but whose status does not permit them to be a source of income, profit or other financial gain for the units that establish, control or finance them (2008 SNA: 4.8). Ideally all NPIs should be included in the SBR. However, some NPIs may not be included in the administrative sources used to maintain the SBR, for example because they are below employment and turnover thresholds.

3.3.5 Households

3.41 Based on 2008 SNA, households involved in some form of economic production may be referred to as *household (unincorporated) enterprises*. As indicated in Figure 3.2, they may be divided into four categories:

- a) Household enterprises that are defined to belong to the formal sector, i.e. are registered, or have more than a given number of employees.
- b) Household enterprises without employees belonging to the informal sector (referred to as informal own account enterprises by the ILO).
- c) Household enterprises with employees in the informal sector (referred to as enterprises of informal employers by the ILO).
- d) Household enterprises undertaking production only for own final use, including owner occupation of dwellings.

3.42 Household enterprises in b) and c) may be further subdivided into three subgroups:

- Market producers selling most or all production, which may themselves be divided into professionals and other.

³ OECD Handbook. Measuring the Non-Observed Economy, 3.2.2.

- Producers for own final use selling some production.
- Producers for own final use not selling any production.

3.43 These subgroups reveal a slight difference in 2008 and ILO frameworks for defining informal. The 2008 SNA (25.65) defines this difference as follows:

“The ILO treats an enterprise as a market producer if any of the output is sold whereas the SNA requires that most or all of the output be sold. To overcome this difference, it is recommended that a three way split of production be made:

- market production according to the SNA criterion whereby most or all output is sold,
- output for own final use where some is sold, and

- output exclusively for own final use.

The sum of the first two categories then accords with the ILO guidelines for inclusion in the informal sector as market producers though only the first category is so regarded in SNA terms.” This distinction is illustrated in Figure 3.3, which is an expansion of Figure 3.2 for the household sector.

3.44 Ideally, in accordance with the 2008 SNA production boundary, the SBR should include all household enterprises. In practice it is impossible to identify administrative sources that cover all such small units. More realistically, the target coverage for each category of household enterprise is shown in the final row of Figure 3.3, which indicates the type of units for which coverage is desirable but for which inclusion in the SBR is conditional on suitable administrative sources being available.

Figure 3.3 Institutional units in the informal sector and recommended coverage in the SBR^{a)}

Non-financial and financial corporations		Households								
Those that are registered or with greater than a given number of employees	Those that are not registered or with fewer than a given number of employees	Those that are registered or with greater than a given number of employees	Self-employed (Informal own account enterprises)				Unincorporated enterprise with employees (enterprise of informal employers)		Institutional households, households with no unincorporated enterprises, households only undertaking production for own final use (including owner occupation of dwellings)	
			Market producers		Producers for own final use		Market producers	Producers for own final use		
			Self-employed professionals	Selling most or all production	Selling some production	Not selling any production	Selling most or all production	Selling some production	Not selling any production	
	Informal SNA		Informal SNA	Informal SNA			Informal SNA			
	Informal ILO		Informal ILO	Informal ILO	Informal ILO		Informal ILO	Informal ILO		
Include in SBR	Desirable to include in SBR, but only if suitable administrative sources available	Include in SBR	Desirable to include in SBR, but only if suitable administrative sources available			Do not include in SBR	Desirable to include in SBR, but only if suitable administrative sources available		Do not include in SBR	

^{a)} All rows except the last row are derived from 2008 SNA, Figure 25.4. Enterprises in the Government or NPIS sectors are not considered informal.

3.45 The particular informal sector definition recommended in these Guidelines, in paragraph 3.26, is that the informal sector should comprise the set of household enterprises with market production but which are not registered in the administrative source(s) on which the SBR is based. If this definition is adopted then, by construction, the SBR includes only the formal sector enterprises. In terms of Figure 3.3, this corresponds to the first and third columns.

3.46 Enterprises that comprise economic activities of households that are employers of domestic and other personnel should be included in the SBR if they are registered as employers. Their inclusion allows the SBR to be used in connection with employee or household-based surveys such as the labour force survey where employees of these units are likely to be included.

3.47 Some household enterprises are lessors, involved only in letting and/or operating self-owned or leased real estate. If they are not registered as employers they should be excluded from the SBR, first because they are part of the informal sector, and second because they occur in large numbers and would inflate SBR unnecessarily. If an enterprise's letting activities move to a larger scale, the enterprise may well decide to incorporate, in which case the resulting enterprise should be included in the SBR. It is recognised that in some countries the difference between household and incorporated lessors may be difficult to determine based on the administrative sources used for the SBR. In this case, the NSI may be compelled to include household lessors (or some of them) in the SBR.

3.3.6 Self-employed professionals

3.48 Self-employed professionals who are non-employers, i.e. one person enterprises, are frequently under-covered but tend to play a very important role in several ISIC sections (e.g. section M (professional, scientific and technical activities) and class 9000). If they are registered with an administrative source they should be included in the SBR. Typical administrative sources are social security files, income tax files, VAT files, files of chambers of commerce and of crafts, government registration files, and lists of doctors. Those that are not registered are part of the self-employed (informal own account enterprises) column in Figure 3.3.

3.49 Some countries may also, or as well, use area enumeration, for example during the course of an economic census, to detect these units, but this approach is not recommended as a source of SBR coverage as it is typically only periodic.

3.3.7 Own-use production

3.50 2008 SNA (6.28-6.48) specifies that the household production boundary includes the production of goods but excludes the production of most services for own use. The exceptions to the exclusion are services provided by owner-occupied dwellings and services produced by employing paid domestic staff.

3.51 However, household enterprises should not be included in the SBR if the goods and services they produce are for their own final consumption, e.g. production from domestic gardens, or invested in the household, e.g. do-it-yourself activities, as there is no reliable means of maintaining such a list. Thus the SBR has no role to play in the measurement of household production for own final use. Data about these productive activities are best obtained through surveys of households, not of enterprises.

3.4 Special cases

3.4.1 Agricultural holdings

3.52 In this context, *agriculture* refers to activities defined in accordance with ISIC section A.

3.53 It is strongly recommended that agricultural holdings should be included in the SBR provided they are registered. Some countries manage a farm register (possibly including forestry) independently from the SBR. This practice can lead to inconsistency in coverage across economic surveys, as some units may be included in both the SBR and the farm register and others may be excluded from both. It may also result in less effective and efficient updating routines, and greater response burden for the agricultural holdings.

3.54 The inclusion of agricultural holdings is not only an SBR objective but also an important step towards integration of agricultural statistics into a comprehensive and coherent system of economic statistics, which is highly desirable, especially for the purposes of national accounts. However, it is not always straightforward to equate a farm with an enterprise as it may be part of legal entity, or may involve more than one legal entity.

3.4.2 Illegal and underground production

3.55 2008 SNA (3.96) explicitly states that productive illegal activities should be included in national accounts. Illegal actions that fit the characteristics of transactions (notably the characteristic that of mutual agreement between the parties) are treated the same way as legal actions. The production or consumption of certain goods or services, such as narcotics, may be illegal but market transactions in such goods and services have to be recorded in the accounts. If expenditures on illegal goods or services by households were to be ignored on the grounds of principle, household saving would be overestimated and households presumed to obtain assets that they do not in fact acquire. Clearly, the accounts as a whole are liable to be seriously distorted if monetary transactions that in fact take place are excluded. It may be difficult, or even impossible, to obtain data about illegal transactions, but in principle they should be included in the accounts if only to reduce error in other items, including balancing items.

3.56 Some activities, for example the production and distribution of alcohol, or prostitution, may be

illegal in one country but legal in another. Exclusion of illegal production would thus distort international comparisons. Likewise, it would give rise to distortions over time if some activities switch from being illegal to be legal, or the converse.

3.57 However, although there is general agreement on the correctness, in principle, of including illegal activities in the national accounts, *in some countries, the difficulties of capturing illegal activities may mean that they are either not well covered or deliberately ignored on pragmatic grounds* (2008 SNA: 25.25). Thus, only a relatively small number of countries explicitly include illegal activities at the present time, and the methods available are still experimental. It should be noted that as from 2014 EU member states are required to include illegal activities in their accounts.

3.58 In summary, in countries where the value of illegal productive activities is quantitatively insignificant, it is almost certainly a poor use of resources to try to measure them precisely. On the other hand, in some countries excluding illegal activities may lead to significant underestimation of the overall economic activity. Whether or not illegal activities are actually included in the national accounts, an SBR based on administrative registration data cannot be expected to assist in their measurement. If an enterprise undertaking illegal production is registered, it will be included in the SBR but the enterprise will disguise its illegal activities. If the enterprise is unregistered, it will not be included in the SBR. In either case *the SBR plays no role*.

3.59 The same applies to underground activities. Unless underground production is very widespread, it is almost certainly a poor use of resources to try to measure it precisely. In any case, the SBR has no role to play as, by definition, the enterprises involved are not registered in the sources on which the SBR is likely to be based.

3.4.3 Extraterritorial organisations and bodies

3.60 International organisations, embassies and foreign government representations can be split into two groups:

- Those whose sites are deemed to form part of the economic territory of another country (e.g. embassies, consulates, military bases). These units should not be included in the SBR of the host country. They should be included as units in the SBR of the country to which they belong, where they would probably be classified to ISIC section U. For example, the German embassy in Canberra, Australia should be a unit in the German SBR.
- Those whose sites do not form part of the economic territory of another country. This group includes units such as international organisations (e.g. the United Nations and its agencies, European

Communities, OECD, IMF, World Bank, etc.) that are not part of the economic territory of the host country according to the 2008 SNA. However, for the sake of completeness they should be included in the SBR of the host country, as they do not appear in any other country's SBR. The NSI in the host country can decide how to treat them for the purposes of its economic statistics.

3.5 Summary of coverage recommendations

3.61 In principle as many types of enterprises as possible should be included in the SBR. More complete coverage of enterprises means that the SBR can, for example, provide frames for a wider variety of surveys in different sectors of the economy. On the other hand, the more types of enterprises included the more sources have to be used and the more maintenance have to be undertaken. Thus, NSI decisions which categories of enterprises to include should be based on the appropriate international standards, the availability of suitable sources, and the corresponding maintenance costs. A suitable source is one that provides coverage of the units and their basic characteristics, is regularly updated and can be readily acquired and processed by the NSI.

3.62 In line with the viewpoint that SBR coverage should be focused on the formal sector, as discussed in paragraph 3.26, Figure 3.4 summarises the recommendations for SBR coverage for the various categories of enterprises. It is provided as a guide only. It can be used as a template by means of which an NSI can describe the coverage of its SBR. An example from Australia is presented in Figure 3.5.

3.63 Whatever enterprise categories are covered, it is important to ensure that all users, particularly the survey and the national accounts units, are fully aware of the SBR coverage criteria and the types and overall production of the enterprises that are thus excluded from the SBR. They must also be informed of any planned or unplanned changes in the SBR coverage.

3.64 The survey and national accounts area within the NSI should make appropriate provision for measuring or estimating the economic production of enterprises that are not included in the SBR and/or for informing users of missing coverage. For example, if informal non-agricultural enterprises are excluded from the SBR but their production is thought to be significant, then such production should be measured by means of a two stage household-enterprise survey. The first phase is a household survey in which households having an enterprise producing for the market are identified. The second phase is a survey of these enterprises. The same approach can be used for informal agricultural enterprises.

Figure 3.4 Recommended SBR coverage

Enterprise Type	Recommended SBR Coverage	Additional information^{a)}
Government	Yes	Component of formal sector. Inclusion of units in the SBR is preferable but having links in the SBR to data for government units held in an administrative source is acceptable.
Financial corporations and quasi-financial corporations (including those controlled by government)	Yes	Component of formal sector.
Non-financial corporations and quasi corporations	Yes	Component of formal sector.
Non-profit institutions serving households	Yes	Component of formal sector.
Registered household enterprises (including agricultural)	Yes	Component of formal sector.
Own account ^{b)} , non-registered non-agricultural household market enterprises excluding self-employed professionals	Yes, but only if suitable administrative source available	Component of informal sector. If significant but no administrative source, cover through two stage household-enterprise survey.
Own account ^{b)} , non-registered non-agricultural household market enterprises that are self-employed professionals	Yes but only if suitable administrative source available	Component of informal sector. If significant but no administrative source, cover through two stage household-enterprise survey.
Own account ^{b)} , non-registered agricultural household market enterprises	Yes, but only if suitable administrative source available	Component of informal sector. If significant but no administrative source, cover through two stage household-enterprise survey.
Non-registered, non-agricultural household market enterprises with employees	Yes, but only if suitable administrative source available	Component of informal sector. If significant but no administrative source, cover through two stage household-enterprise survey.
Non-registered, agricultural household market enterprises with employees	Yes, but only if suitable administrative source available	Component of informal sector. If significant but no administrative source, cover through two stage household-enterprise survey.
Household non-market enterprises	No	If significant, cover their activities through two stage household-enterprise survey.

^{a)} Recommended coverage is provided on the assumption that the informal sector is defined as the set of household enterprises that have market production but are not registered in the administrative source(s) on which the SBR is based. (See paragraph 3.26).

^{b)} Own account means self-employed with no employees.

Figure 3.5 Example - Australian SBR coverage

Enterprise Type	Included in SBR	Additional information
Government	Yes	Government units are eligible for selection in labour collections and other SBR based collections. There is a link between the administrative government finance units and government units on the SBR
Financial corporations and quasi-financial corporations	Yes	These units are eligible for selection in labour collections and other SBR based collections. A link between the surveys of financial information and financial corporation units in the SBR is under development.
Non-financial corporations and quasi corporations	Yes	Micro corporations are separately identified
Non-profit institutions serving households	Yes	Micro NPIs are separately identified
Registered household enterprises with greater than a given number of employees (including agricultural)	Yes	Micro units are separately identified
Registered household enterprises with less or equal to than a given number of employees (including agricultural)	No	
Informal own account ^{a)} , non-agricultural household market enterprises excluding self-employed professionals	No	The coverage of the ABS SBR is based on entities which have registered for an Australian Business Number. Registration is mandated for businesses above a size cut-off. So this sector is known to be very small
Informal own account ^{a)} , non-agricultural household market enterprises that are self-employed professionals	Yes	
Informal own account ^{a)} , agricultural household market enterprises	No	The coverage of the ABS Business Register is based on entities which have registered for an Australian Business Number. Registration is mandated for businesses above a size cut-off. So this sector is known to be very small
Unincorporated enterprises with employees, non-agricultural market producers	Yes	
Unincorporated enterprises with employees, agricultural market producers	Yes	
Household non-market enterprises	No	

^{a)} Here, *informal* implies non-registered; *own account* implies self-employed with no employees.

Chapter 4

Units in the SBR

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 Content and references

4.1 This chapter describes the different types of units from both a conceptual and an operational view. The following broad groups of units are distinguished.

- *Statistical units* – units defined for statistical purposes, for which information is sought and for which statistics are compiled; there are several types of statistical units.
- *Legal, administrative and operational units* – legal units are recognised by law or society, independently of the persons or institutions that own it; administrative units are units that are defined by a legal unit for the purposes of conforming with an administrative regulation (for example reporting units for accounting purposes or taxation); operational units are defined by a legal unit for the purposes of organising itself, for example a division, branch, workshop, warehouse, or outlet. All these units are the basis for creating and maintaining statistical units.
- *Observation and reporting units* - observation units are the units *about which* data are actually obtained during the course of surveys; reporting units are the units *from which* data are actually obtained.

4.2 The set of possible statistical units is usually much broader than what is actually incorporated and maintained in the SBR of a country. Which statistical units should be incorporated and maintained in a national SBR depends mainly on the requirements of the business statistics system. Those statistical units which are needed for business statistics should be maintained in the SBR. The SBR should also be the only source for deriving statistical units for survey purposes. Only if this is the case coherent economic statistics with consistency across sectors, countries and geographic areas, and over time can be achieved. Statistical units are not the only requirement for consistent data, although a basic one. For international comparability harmonized definitions of the statistical units as well as harmonized implementation in the national SBRs are required. Reduction in response burden achieved by collecting data from administrative sources also requires a common understanding of these units.

4.3 In most cases, a statistical unit is also an observation unit and a reporting unit. However, the

three types of unit may differ, especially, for example, when dealing with large and complex enterprises.

4.4 Links between the different types of units are important. Each NSI has to identify the differences between legal units, administrative units, statistical units and observation units and determine how it is possible to bridge from one to another.

4.5 The main characteristics of the various types of units and their links are presented in Chapter 5. The general structure of the SBR database required to support storage and access of units and their characteristics is presented in Chapter 11.

4.6 The main references for this chapter are Eurostat's *Business Register Recommendations Manual*, the African Development Bank's *Guidelines for Building SBRs in Africa, 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev 4*. Other sources are footnoted and listed in *References*.

4.1.2 Brief presentation of units and problems covered

Statistical units

4.7 Statistical units (SUs) about which information is sought and for which statistics are ultimately compiled are the crucial units in the SBR. They should be economically significant, harmonised and have associated with them all the characteristics required for providing frames for economic surveys. They need to be harmonised so as to underpin the production of consistent statistics. They are not always directly observable.

4.8 The main SUs used internationally are:

- Enterprise group.
- Enterprise.
- Establishment, also called local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU).

4.9 Other units with international acceptance are:

- Kind-of-activity unit (KAU).
- Local unit.

4.10 A *multinational enterprise group (MNE)* is a unit that crosses national boundaries. Until recently individual countries have been interested only in those parts of enterprise groups that operate within the national boundaries. These are referred to as "*truncated enterprise groups*". Those enterprise groups comprising

enterprises that are all contained within the national borders of a country are called *all-resident groups*.

Developments in definitions of statistical units in the European Statistical System (ESS)

4.11 The definitions of statistical units (SUs) were laid down in a European Union Regulation in 1993. This regulation defines the following SUs: enterprise, institutional unit, enterprise group, kind-of-activity unit, local unit and local kind-of-activity unit.

4.12 In the last decades economies have undergone huge structural changes in the organisation of the production. Both international trade and direct investments in other countries have increased. Enterprises that originally operated only in their home country have become global, and the importance of multinational enterprise groups has increased considerably. At the same time the legal complexity of the organisation of the enterprises has increased. Enterprises that used to consist of one legal unit have split their activities across a number of legal units. The reasons for these splits are based on tax, liability, tariff and other reasons, not only directly related to the economic purpose of the enterprise.

4.13 In order to correctly capture the structure of the economies and their development clarifications of the statistical units were seemed necessary. It was also the case that the statistical units were not uniformly applied in European statistics resulting in inconsistencies of the data both between the EU member states as well as between the various statistical domains.

4.14 It was therefore decided to develop up-to-date and practical rules which should help for a better harmonised interpretation and application of the statistical units. The Guidelines will refer to some of these operational rules for explanation of the concepts.

Legal, administrative and operational units

4.15 The SBR records not only data about the SUs but also data about all the other types of units that are

needed in practice for the creation and maintenance of the SUs. These types of units include:

- *Legal unit* – a unit that is recognised by law or society independently of the persons or institutions that own it; this unit is pivotal in linking administrative units and statistical units, because, among other reasons, most administrative registers are based on legal units.
- *Administrative unit* – a unit specifically designed for the purposes of conforming to an administrative regulation, for example VAT or Social Security.
- *Operational unit* – unit defined by a legal unit for the purposes of organising itself, for example, a division, branch, workshop, warehouse or outlet.

Observation and reporting units

4.16 In addition, for the collection of economic data, two more types of units are defined:

- *Observation unit* - a unit, usually a statistical unit, *about* which data are obtained during the course of a survey. If a target statistical unit is not directly observable, the corresponding observation unit may be a legal unit or administrative unit linked to the statistical unit. Mostly observation units are legal or administrative units but they may also be operational units.
- *Reporting unit* - unit *from* which data about an observation unit are obtained during the course of a survey.

Characteristics of units

4.17 For each of these types of units, a set of characteristics is held in the SBR, such as economic activity code, size code, institutional sector, whether they are a market/non-market producer, and/or region of operations. Such characteristics are of great interest for economic analysis and are also needed as stratification variables in the derivation of survey frames. The main characteristics for each of the types of units are discussed in Chapter 5.

Example: European survey on outward foreign affiliates

In this survey:

- *Statistical units* are enterprises operating abroad (foreign parts).
- *Observation units* may be the subsidiaries abroad.
- *Reporting units* are often the global group heads or the highest level consolidation units, if different.

4.2 Types of statistical units

4.18 As noted above, a *statistical unit* (SU) is a unit about which information is sought and for which statistics are ultimately compiled. It is the unit that provides the basis for statistical aggregates and to which tabulated data refer. Data for an SU may be directly *observable*, as for example in the case where a statistical unit coincides with a legal unit, or may be *derived* by splitting or grouping data from observation units⁴ using statistical estimation methods, or in some cases may be provided directly by the respondent⁵.

4.19 The various types of SUs are not independent, but are linked to each other forming a *statistical unit model*, that is, a conceptual framework of SUs and their relationships. These relations are embedded in the SBR by appropriate links. The most important relations are the following ones.

- Each *enterprise* consists of one or more *legal units*. (Very occasionally, in the situation where a split of legal unit is appropriate, an enterprise may contain a part of a legal unit.) Thus (except in cases where a legal unit is split), each legal unit is attributed to only one enterprise.
- In case where an enterprise consists only of one legal unit, this legal unit corresponds to the enterprise.
- Each enterprise has one or more *local units* (*locations*). Each local unit is attributed to only one enterprise.
- In case where an enterprise has only one local unit, this local unit corresponds to the enterprise.
- Each enterprise has one or more *establishments* (*local kind-of-activity units*). Each establishment is attributed to only one enterprise.
- In case where an enterprise has only one establishment, this establishment corresponds to the enterprise.

4.20 The enterprise groups do not cover the whole population of legal units. An enterprise group is defined only in the situation where two or more legal units are linked together by ownership or control. The enterprise groups, therefore, do not cover the legal units which are linked to enterprises that are not part of an enterprise group.

⁴ Extension of definition in §5.27 of *Working Paper on Statistical Business Registers*, United Nations Statistical Division and Eurostat (2011), which considers splitting units but not grouping them.

⁵ This is often the case for enterprises in a large enterprise group that have been profiled for SBR purposes (as further discussed in Section 6.6.4) and that may operate on a pure "gentleman's agreement" basis.

4.21 When the statistical unit model is to be transformed into an IT data model, each type of a statistical unit should get a separate set of identifiers, even if units of one type often correspond to units of another type. Also the relations between units should be depicted by separate data elements (links) and not incorporated in the identifiers.

4.22 In defining standard statistical units, the two most authoritative international sources are the 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4. As described in Chapter 3, 2008 SNA introduces the notions of institutional unit and enterprise, and of statistical units formed by partitioning an enterprise.

- An *institutional unit* is defined as an economic unit that is capable, in its own right, of owning assets, incurring liabilities, and engaging in economic activities and in transactions with other entities (2008 SNA: 4.2). On the basis of their principal functions, behaviour, and objectives, institutional units are grouped for national accounts purposes into five mutually exclusive institutional sectors (2008 SNA: 4.17), namely non-financial corporations, financial corporations, general government, non-profit institutions serving households (NPISHs) and households.
- An *enterprise* can be regarded as core statistical unit of the 2008 SNA. It is defined as *the view of an institutional unit producing goods and services* (2008 SNA: 5.1), as further discussed in Section 4.4.

4.23 The 2008 SNA acknowledges that a large enterprise may be engaged in several different types of economic activities, at several different locations. The treatment of such an enterprise for statistical purposes as having a single type of activity at a single location would distort the resulting statistics. Thus, 2008 SNA recommends that large enterprises be partitioned into smaller, more homogeneous producing units that can be more precisely classified and that collectively represent the enterprise as a whole as follows (2008 SNA: 5.12-14).

- The type of unit resulting from partitioning an enterprise by its different economic activities is a *kind-of-activity unit* (KAU).
- The type of unit resulting from partitioning an enterprise by its different locations is a *local unit*.
- The type of unit resulting from partitioning an enterprise by both its economic activities and its locations is an *establishment*, also called local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU).

Figure 4.1 2008 SNA/ISIC Rev 4 statistical units model

		Partition by location	
		No	Yes
Partition by activity	No	Enterprise	Local unit
	Yes	Kind-of-activity unit	Establishment (Local kind-of-activity unit)

4.24 This set of statistical units is illustrated in Figure 4.1. The enterprise is the basic unit; all other units are defined by partitioning the enterprise.

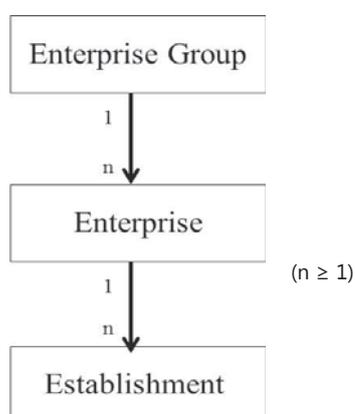
4.25 However, despite the widespread agreement on the use of 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev 4, this model has not been universally implemented. In practice, there are deviations from the conceptual framework due to its complexity and the amount of information required for its implementation. Not all types of statistical units are necessarily included in the SBR or used in the various statistical domains.

Recommended basic statistical units model

4.26 The basic model described in these Guidelines (in Sections 4.3-4.5) is in line with the one recommended in the AfDB SBR Guidelines. It is a simplification and extension of the 2008 SNA model and is loosely based on a 2008 European Union business register regulation⁶, which requires that four units – namely, *legal unit*, *enterprise*, *local unit*, and *enterprise group* - need to be maintained in the national SBRs of the EU member states.

4.27 The model comprises three hierarchically organized statistical units, as illustrated in Figure 4.2, namely *enterprise group*, *enterprise* and *establishment* (*local kind-of-activity unit*).

Figure 4.2 Recommended statistical units model



4.28 The need for an enterprise group is recognised in the 2008 SNA even though it is not defined. The 2008 SNA notes that large groups of corporations, or conglomerates, may be created whereby a parent corporation controls several subsidiaries, some of which may control subsidiaries of their own, and so on. The subsidiaries of a group may be resident in more than one country. For certain purposes it may be desirable to have information relating to a group of corporations as a whole (2008 SNA: 4.51). The notion of an enterprise group is essential in SBR construction and maintenance as it is an important input for delineating and recording the enterprises that belong to a conglomerate, and it is vital for structural statistics as it facilitates linkage of national operating enterprises to the foreign enterprises that control them.

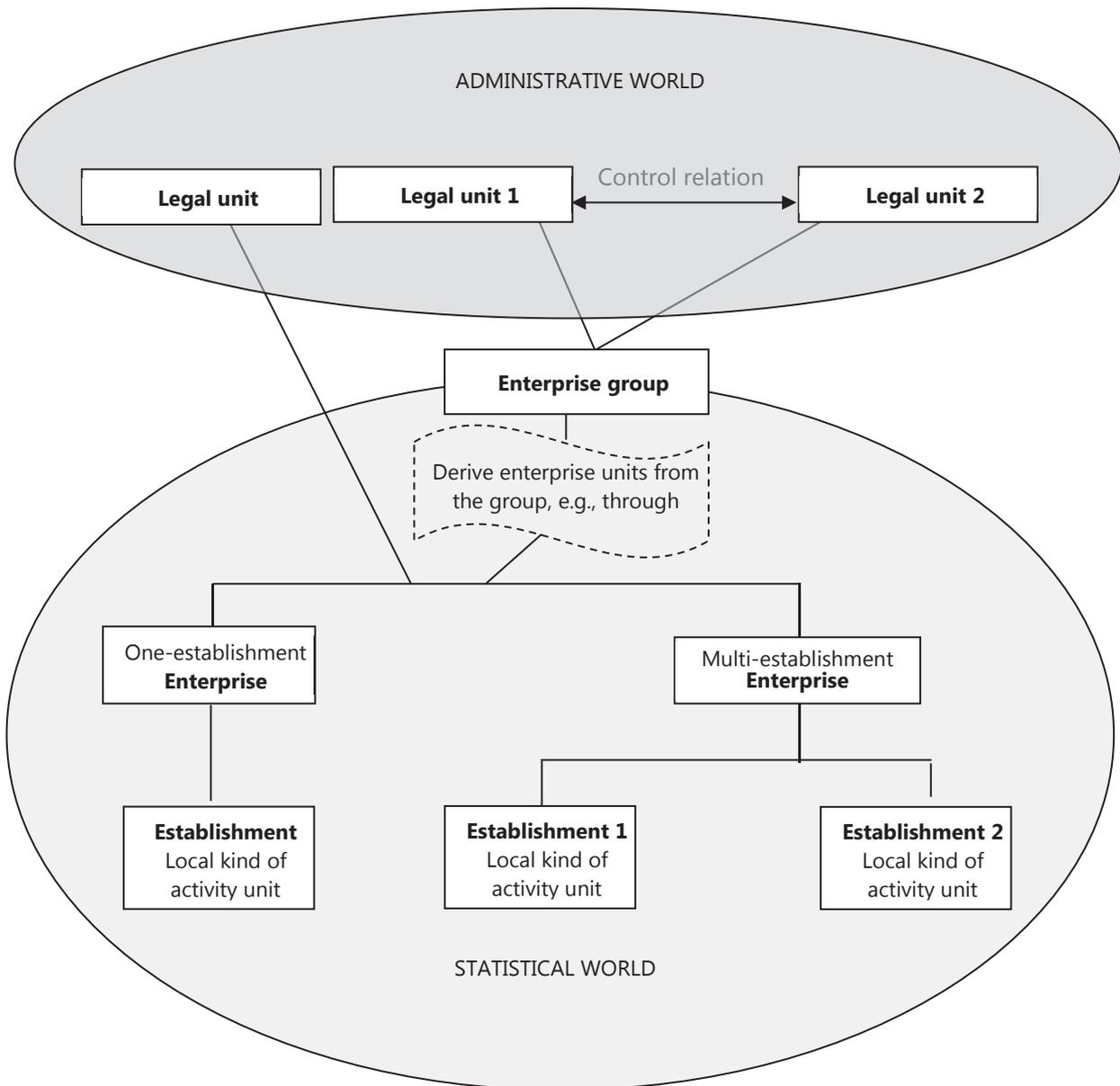
4.29 The way in which the model fits with the economic and administrative worlds it aims to represent is illustrated in Figure 4.3.

- The linkage between an administrative unit and a statistical unit is typically through a legal unit but in more complex cases may be through an enterprise group.
- Conceptually, an enterprise could also be delineated at the multinational level. However, in a national SBR the delineation of an enterprise is normally restricted to the national territory.
- An establishment is always located in a specific country or a specific region within a country.
- Even though an enterprise is usually equal either to a legal unit, or to the combination of a number of legal units, the definition allows a legal unit to be split into parts, each part being an enterprise.

4.30 If required, the basic model can be extended to include *local units* in accordance with the 2008 SNA model (2008 SNA: 5.13).

⁶ Business Register (BR) Regulation (EC) No. 177/2008

Figure 4.3 Links between statistical and administrative Units⁷



⁷ Source: Working Paper on Statistical Business Registers, United Nations Statistical Division and Eurostat (2011)

4.3 Enterprise group (and truncated enterprise group)

4.31 Statistics based on enterprise groups are presently not very far developed, but with increasing globalisation, they are progressively becoming of more interest. Statistics using enterprise groups as statistical units are also useful for the analysis of market concentration.

4.32 Enterprise groups are also important for delineating enterprises within a group. They are needed for compiling data on the impact of multinationals on an individual country's economy, presently mostly in terms of inwards and outward foreign affiliate statistics (FATS) and foreign direct investment (FDI) statistics.

4.33 Ideally, delineation of the enterprises within an enterprise group should be done using a *top-down approach*, starting from the enterprise group level, in consultation with the *global group head* or the *global decision centre*. This is easiest when the global group head or the global decision centre is resident in the country where the delineation is to be done. In cases where only a part of an enterprise group is resident in that country, cooperation and data exchange between the SBRs in all relevant countries is required to delineate all the statistical units belonging to the enterprise group and the corresponding truncated enterprise groups and enterprises in a coherent way. However, such cooperation is not easy to achieve and data protection restrictions might make it impossible to exchange micro

data between the NSI of different countries. This means that the top-down approach may not be feasible and thus a *bottom-up approach*, starting from legal units belonging to the enterprise group resident in the country, may be the only way to delineate the statistical units.

4.34 The interest in enterprise groups is not related to the degree of development of an economy but to the shares of the main economic aggregates (such as production, value added, and foreign trade) that these enterprise groups control, whether the control is national or foreign. In consequence it is very important to identify enterprise groups, using appropriate methods, even if they are few in number.

4.35 As previously mentioned, the concept of enterprise group is supplementary to the 2008 SNA model. In fact, consolidation of enterprises into groups is an item on the SNA Work Group research agenda. As the 2008 SNA does not provide a definition of enterprise group, EU regulations and research outputs are the best sources.

4.3.1 Definition of enterprise group (and truncated enterprise group)

4.36 In the absence of an internationally agreed definition of an enterprise group the EU definition and operational rules may be referred to. Thus, the definition of enterprise group and the associated operational rules below are drawn from documentation agreed by the Eurostat Task Force on Statistical Units in spring, 2014.

European treatment of enterprise group

The enterprise group is one of the statistical units that needs to be implemented and maintained in the SBR of the EU member states according to the *Regulation (EC) 177/2008*, the so-called "*BR regulation*".

The *Eurostat BR Recommendations Manual (21.21-21.26)* states that:

"Whereas the enterprise is an actor in the economy at the level of the production process, with relative autonomy with respect to the allocation and use of its current resources, **the enterprise group** is an actor at a more strategic level taking strategic decisions on behalf of its constituent enterprises (e.g. on product policies, on major expansions, etc.). Since the enterprise group as a whole is subject to demographic events, the statistical unit 'enterprise group' in the register must be maintained according to special continuity rules for the global, truncated and all-resident groups."

The characteristics of an enterprise group represent properties of the group at global or national (truncated or all-resident) level.

Definition and explanations

4.37 *An enterprise group is a set of legal units bound together by legal and/or financial links under the same control.*

4.38 Control over a legal unit is defined as the ability to determine general corporate policy. It can be exercised by (a) owning more than half of the voting shares, (b) having the right to appoint or remove a majority of the members of the management, (c) having the right to exercise a dominant influence over it, (d) controlling more than half of the shareholders' voting power of another legal unit directly or indirectly, or otherwise (e) proving that there is de facto control exercised. Indirect control refers to controlling a legal unit via another legal unit. This includes also cumulative control, i.e. controlling two or more legal units that together own more than half of the voting shares of the legal unit in question.

4.39 An enterprise group is controlled by its global group head (GGH). The GGH is defined as the unit (legal or natural person) which controls all legal units of the group and is not controlled by any other legal unit. The parent legal unit, which is not controlled by any other unit and thus the head of the enterprise group, does not necessarily need to be subject to accounting obligations. This may be the case if the group head is a natural person or the government. Consequently, the unit at the highest consolidation level is not in every case identical with the group head.

4.40 The subsidiary enterprises of a subsidiary enterprise are considered to be subsidiaries of the parent enterprise.

4.41 An enterprise group is always controlled by a single GGH. Typically a GGH controls just one enterprise group, however may control more than one. Consolidation of the accounts at a level below the GGH and the existence of several consolidated accounts is an indication that a GGH controls several enterprise groups.

4.42 The unit carrying out the actual management of the enterprise group is named the *global decision centre (GDC)*. It is not necessarily identical with the GGH.

4.43 Shares of affiliates' undertakings have to be listed in the balance sheet of a company⁸.

4.44 All the legal units forming the enterprise group have to be consolidated in its accounts. If the GGH is identical with the highest level consolidating unit, it is included in the accounts as well. Legal units not consolidated but controlled by the GGH form also part of the enterprise group.

4.45 If the GGH does not produce consolidated accounts and reports, the legal unit below the GGH

which has to produce consolidated accounts and annual reports is called the *highest level Consolidation Unit* and determines the consolidation perimeter of the enterprise group.

4.3.2 Link between national and global views: truncated enterprise group

4.46 In practice, an enterprise group may be an *all-resident* enterprise group (otherwise known as *domestic* group or *national* group) or a *multinational* enterprise group (either domestically controlled or foreign controlled). For the purposes of a national SBR, it is useful to define the concept of a *truncated enterprise group* of a multinational enterprise group.

Definition

4.47 *The part of a multinational enterprise group that comprises only the legal units resident in the particular country is defined to be a "truncated enterprise group" within that country.*

4.48 If the parent is non-resident it is possible that the truncated enterprise group consists of several seemingly unlinked units and subgroups.

4.49 A truncated enterprise group may comprise just one unit, a parent or subsidiary, in the national territory. Such truncated enterprise groups may be difficult to identify based on national information only.

4.3.3 Identifying enterprise groups in practice

Profiling

4.50 Identification of an enterprise within and enterprise group should, in principle, be made on the basis of the structure and the perimeter of the enterprise group. In order to correctly delineate the enterprises within an enterprise group it is recommended that for the most important enterprise groups the NSI contacts the enterprise group head or the global decision centre, in order to study the managerial, accounting and legal structure of the enterprise group and the links with legal units. This may lead, in exceptional cases, to splitting a legal unit by allocating its parts to several enterprises within the enterprise group.

4.51 The process of delineating of the statistical units within an enterprise group is called "profiling". It can involve different approaches. In case of large and complex enterprise groups "intensive" profiling based on comprehensive contact with the enterprise group is recommended. As the data collected from the large and complex groups usually have great impact on the statistical aggregates, it is useful devote appropriate resources to these units. For smaller and less complex groups it may be sufficient to delineate the statistical units on the basis of the published accounts and similar information that is directly available.

⁸ Following the EU Seventh Council Directive and its amendments.

Group boundary

4.52 The usual starting point in establishing the *boundary* (also called *perimeter*) around an enterprise group is to consider the consolidated accounts it contains. In order to delineate enterprise groups based on mutually exclusive accounting groupings, the following rules are applied.

- Consider accounting groups at the highest consolidation level possible (often the GGH).
- Include in an enterprise group the units for which the accounts are entirely integrated in those of the consolidating company, and not the units whose accounts are treated differently (by the *equity method* in which only the profits and the value of the owned share of equities are consolidated).
- Add majority-controlled units with accounts not included in the overall consolidating by virtue of application of one of the criteria allowed by the seventh Directive⁹, i.e. difference in the type of activity or small relative size.
- Discount temporary links of less than a year (which means not including temporarily affiliated units in the enterprise group).

Special cases of global group heads

4.53 The GGH of an enterprise group is the enterprise corresponding to the parent legal unit, i.e., the legal unit that is not controlled either directly or indirectly by any other legal unit. The enterprises it controls are referred to as affiliates. Affiliate enterprises of an affiliate enterprise are considered to be subsidiaries (sub-affiliates) of the parent enterprise. However there are some forms of cooperative or mutual associations where the ownership is reversed, the "parent" enterprise being actually owned by the units of the group.

4.54 When the GGH does not manage the enterprise group, usually the decisions are taken by the affiliate called global decision centre (GDC). The SBR has to collect the identification numbers and characteristics of the GGH and of the GDC in order to differentiate them clearly when relevant.

4.55 When the GGH and the GDC are not located in the same country, the enterprise group may be counted twice in supra-national aggregates, that is, in both the GGH country and in the GDC country. Thus, coordination between countries is useful. Such coordination exists in the EU, with the EuroGroup Register as one example. The enterprise group is considered to be a resident of the GDC country and not of the GGH country, when the two countries are different.

4.56 The concept of control implies that natural persons cannot be part of a chain of control unless they are at the top of the structure. However, natural persons may not be recorded in the SBR because they are not considered "legal units". Exclusion of natural persons being group heads can reduce comparability of enterprise groups.

4.57 There are a number of other special cases of group heads. The group head may, for instance, be a non-profit body, trust, the state, provincial or local government. In general, they are regarded as legal units and can thus be handled according to the normal rules as controlling units, although their involvement in the practical management and decision-making of the enterprise group may vary a great deal. It is also noticeable that the state may control many enterprise groups via one or several ministries and these should not be combined when they operate in different economic activities.

Conglomerates and sub-groups

4.58 An enterprise group may correspond to a *conglomerate* held together by a network of complex relationships, in which case it frequently covers a very wide range of activities. *Subgroups* can often be identified within enterprise groups.

4.59 It is useful to identify all (majority and minority) links between the GGH and a controlled legal unit via the network of subsidiaries and sub-subsidiaries. This allows the group's entire organization to be depicted.

Multinational groups

4.60 The major challenge is that NSIs in general have only very limited information on the non-resident part of multinational enterprise groups. Statistical surveys and commercial data providers may assist in providing some information. However, it is difficult from a national perspective to "see the whole elephant"¹⁰ or for all the NSIs involved to have the same view of a multinational enterprise group. Nevertheless this should be the aim of each SBR. Evidently there is more chance of this being possible for a multinational enterprise group that resides entirely within EU member states where there are programs for collaboration than for a group involving countries where no such collaboration exists.

4.4 Enterprise

4.61 The enterprise is the core statistical unit. According to the 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4, it is *the level of statistical unit at which all information relating to transactions, including financial and balance-sheet accounts, are maintained, and from which international transactions, an international investment position (when*

⁹ EU legislation based on Article 54(3)(g) of the Treaty on consolidated accounts.

¹⁰ "Seeing the whole elephant: A proposed experiment on measuring the activities of multinational enterprises"; Richard Barnabé; Statistics Canada 2003.

applicable), consolidated financial position and net worth can be derived¹¹.

4.62 The following sections provide a definition of enterprise based on this approach and provide some guidance on how to delineate enterprises.

4.4.1 2008 SNA and ISIC Rev. 4 definitions of enterprise

2008 SNA definition

4.63 An **enterprise** is the view of an institutional unit producing goods and services. The term enterprise may refer to a corporation, a quasi-corporation, a non-profit institution (NPI), or an unincorporated enterprise. (2008 SNA: 5.1).

4.64 In this context, as previously noted, an **institutional unit** is an economic entity that is capable, in its own right, of owning assets, incurring liabilities and engaging in economic activities and in transactions with other entities. There are two main types of units in the real world that may qualify as institutional units, namely persons or groups of persons in the form of households, and legal or social entities. (2008 SNA: 4.2-3).

4.65 The main attributes of institutional units are described as follows.

- a) An institutional unit is entitled to own goods or assets in its own right; it is therefore able to exchange the ownership of goods or assets in transactions with other institutional units.
- b) It is able to take economic decisions and engage in economic activities for which it is itself held to be directly responsible and accountable at law.
- c) It is able to incur liabilities on its own behalf, to take on other obligations or future commitments and to enter into contracts.
- d) Either a complete set of accounts, including a balance sheet of assets and liabilities, exists for the unit, or it would be possible and meaningful, from an economic viewpoint, to compile a complete set of accounts if they were to be required.

ISIC Rev. 4 definition

4.66 An **enterprise** is an economic transactor with autonomy in respect of financial and investment decision-making, as well as authority and responsibility for allocating resources for the production of goods and services. It may be engaged in one or more productive activities.

4.67 An enterprise may be a corporation (or quasi-corporation), a non-profit institution or an unincorporated enterprise. Corporate enterprises and non-profit institutions are complete institutional units. On the other hand, the term "unincorporated enterprise" refers to an

institutional unit - a household or government unit - only in its capacity as a producer of goods and services.¹²

4.68 The limitations of these definitions are that they do not take into account the relationship between enterprises and the enterprise groups to which they may belong.

4.4.2 European definition of enterprise

4.69 The following European definition¹³ seems more operational, but has not been fully applied in the member states so far.

Definition

4.70 An **enterprise** is the smallest combination of legal units that is an organizational unit producing goods or services which benefits from a certain degree of autonomy in decision-making, especially for the allocation of its current resources.

4.71 An enterprise carries out one or more activities at one or more locations.

4.72 An enterprise may be a sole legal unit.

4.73 A unit is deemed to be an enterprise if it

- a) operates the necessary factors of production (e.g. human resources, capital, technology, land and in particular management);
- b) accesses the necessary controlling system, e.g. an integrated cost calculation, which covers the main, secondary and ancillary activities of the unit deemed as enterprises, and
- c) has adequate managerial structures, i.e. managers that can decide about the production process and about the economic transactions.

4.74 An enterprise group consisting of two or more legal units may be viewed as a single enterprise if the enterprise group performs its activities under a single management and operates as one organisational unit.

Implementation notes

4.75 The enterprise is an economic unit that can, in certain circumstances, correspond to a grouping of several legal units. There are two main cases.

- Some legal units perform activities exclusively for other legal units and their existence can only be explained by administrative factors (e.g., tax reasons) as they have no economic significance. Typically, the activities of these legal units should be seen as ancillary activities of the parent legal unit they serve, to which they belong, and to which they must be attached to form an enterprise. Many of these legal units either have no direct employment, or are the employer of the whole workforce of the group.

¹¹ From ISIC Rev. 4 Introduction.

¹² Explanatory Notes in ISIC Rev. 4 Introduction.

¹³ EU 1993 Statistical Units Regulation.

Example from France

Some public companies or newly privatised companies (as in rail transport - SNCF - or in postal and financial activities - La Poste) are profiled into several enterprises that have different activities and that may belong to different institutional sectors, for example, financial and non-financial sectors. The GGH, which in these cases is also by far the biggest legal unit of the enterprise group, is organised into different business units (autonomous operational divisions) that are defined as enterprises. Thus, the legal unit has been split in line with the organizational criteria.

- The enterprise is autonomous as far as production (including allocation of current resources) is concerned. Financial and most structural decisions are taken at a higher level in the enterprise group to which the legal units belong.

4.76 If a legal unit performs one or more ancillary activities for other legal units within the same enterprise group, it has to be considered to be an ancillary legal unit. In this case it is not considered an enterprise. The outputs of the ancillary legal unit have to be consolidated as inputs for the other units of the enterprise group and its data have to be consolidated within the enterprises which consume these outputs.

4.77 In case the output of the legal unit, which performs one or more ancillary activities, is only partly consumed by the other legal units, and the ancillary legal unit sells to a third party on a regular basis, it may be treated as an enterprise.

4.78 A legal unit or part thereof located in one country may carry out exclusively ancillary activities inside the enterprise group and deliver its services to more than one enterprise of the enterprise group it belongs to. If the enterprises that receive the ancillary services have locations in one or more other countries, the legal unit providing these services is by convention treated as an enterprise and is classified according to the activity it is performing.

AfDB SBR Guidelines recommendation for enterprise definition

The AfDB Guidelines recommend that legal units and enterprises are defined to be in one-to-one correspondence in the sense that there is one and only one legal unit per enterprise. The benefit of this approach is that it is simple and easy to operationalize. An enterprise is created for each active or potentially active legal unit.

4.4.3 Simplified correspondence between legal units and enterprises

4.79 While it is recommended that all NSIs introduce enterprises as distinct from legal units into their SBRs, it is recognised that an enterprise as defined in 2008 SNA, ISIC Rev. 4 or in the current European definitions, may not be practically implementable in all countries. Data on the basis of which to combine legal units to form an enterprise may not be available, or the SBR system may currently not support the separate recording of legal units and enterprises as distinct units.

4.80 In the absence of data at enterprise level, it is acceptable that statistical data and demographic data are produced on the basis of legal units. However, in adopting this approach it is highly recommended that the notion of enterprise be kept separate from that of legal unit, leaving the way open in the future to be able to distinguish and treat individually the most important cases where enterprises that are part of large enterprise groups (whether foreign or domestic) are not coincident with legal units.

4.5 Establishment**4.5.1 Introductory remarks**

4.81 As discussed in Section 4.2 and illustrated in Figure 4.1, in partitioning an enterprise by economic activity and geography, the *establishment* incorporates both the kind-of-activity dimension and the locality dimension. In Europe, the unit equivalent to the establishment is called the *local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU)*.

4.82 For national accounts purposes, industries are defined in terms of establishments. An industry consists of a group of establishments engaged in the same, or similar, types of activity. Although it is possible to use the enterprise as the unit for providing data by industries, some of the resulting industries are likely to be very heterogeneous when enterprises have secondary activities that are very different from their principal activities. It is therefore greatly preferable to partition large, complex enterprises into more homogeneous units, such as establishments, for which production data can be compiled.

4.83 According to the ISIC Rev. 4 the establishment should be used for the analysis of transactions in goods and services and for the compilation of the production account. Furthermore, policy makers interested in investigating regional (state, county, local area) differences want structural data at sub-national level, as provided by data at establishment (or local unit) level.

4.5.2 ISIC Rev. 4 Definition of establishment**Definition**

4.84 The *establishment* is defined as an enterprise or part of an enterprise that is situated in a single location and in which only a single (non-ancillary) productive

activity is carried out or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added.

4.85 The 2008 SNA definition is essentially the same. Although it does not specifically include the *non-ancillary* criterion, this is implied.

4.86 In the case of most small and medium-sized businesses, the enterprise and the establishment coincide. Large, complex enterprises that are engaged in many economic activities belonging to different ISIC industries are likely to be composed of several establishments provided that production data can be compiled for these smaller, more homogeneous production units.

4.87 The breakdown of an enterprise into two or more establishments is only required if it has locations situated in two or more different regions and/or it has two or more different, economically significant activities. Thus, only a small number of enterprises will be split into establishments. However, these will be the larger enterprises and collectively they will have a large share of the resulting industry data. In cases where an enterprise is not split into establishments, the enterprise will equal to the establishment.

4.5.3 Implementation notes

4.88 The establishment is designed as the statistical unit for which certain data, mainly production, intermediate consumption, investment and employment data, can be surveyed and compiled. However, some enterprises do not have book keeping practices that allow delivery of data at establishment level. In such a case either the enterprise may be considered as consisting of only one establishment (equal to the enterprise) or the NSI may estimate the required economic indicators based on other basic information provided by the enterprise. The first alternative is less preferable as heterogeneous enterprises not split into establishments negatively influence the homogeneity of the aggregated industry data.

4.89 Current European regulations do not require the establishment to be directly maintained in the SBR¹⁴. In addition to the estimation method data for

establishments may also be approximated from local units maintained in, or by means of, administrative registers. Often, but not always, establishments and local units are in one-to-one relationship, in particular for small and medium-sized businesses.

4.6 Other statistical units

4.90 The enterprise group, the enterprise and the establishment are the three most important statistical units recommended by these Guidelines. However, an NSI may wish to use either or both of two additional types of statistical unit defined by the 2008 SNA, namely the *kind-of-activity unit (KAU)* and the *local unit*, as previously discussed and illustrated in Figure 4.1.

4.91 The need for the establishment unit is based on the assumption that the aim of the statistical programme is to compile production or production related statistics that are classified both by activity and by geographical region. In circumstances where precision in both geographic and economic activity dimensions is not required simultaneously, the KAU and/or the local unit may be more appropriate.

4.6.1 Kind-of-activity unit

2008 SNA definition

4.92 *A kind-of-activity unit (KAU) is an enterprise or part of an enterprise that engages in only one kind of productive activity or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added.* (2008 SNA: 5.12).

4.93 Each enterprise must, by definition, consist of one or more kind-of-activity units.

Implementation notes

4.94 The unit is characterized by homogeneity of activity. Compared with the establishment, there is no restriction on the geographic area in which the activity is carried out. When partitioned into two or more kind-of-activity units, the resulting units must be more homogeneous with respect to output, cost structure and technology of production than the enterprise as a whole.

Example from European Union statistical units regulation (1993): definition of the LKAU

In Europe, the unit equivalent to the establishment is called a *local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU)*. It is the part of a kind-of-activity unit (KAU) that corresponds to a local unit. A local unit is an institutional unit, or part of an institutional unit, producing goods or services situated in a geographically identified place.

An LKAU groups all the parts of an institutional unit in its capacity as producer contributing to the performance of an activity at class level (four digits) of the NACE Rev. 2 and corresponds to one or more operational subdivisions of the institutional unit. The institutional unit's information system must be capable of indicating or calculating for each LKAU at least the value of production, intermediate consumption, compensation of employees, operating surplus and employment and gross fixed capital formation.

An LKAU may never belong to two different institutional units.

¹⁴ "2008 BR regulation" (Regulation EC 177/2008).

4.95 Analogous to the treatment of the establishment, partitioning of the enterprise into kind-of-activity units shall primarily be done for large and complex enterprises. Also the use of estimation methods may be encouraged in cases where the enterprise is not able (or willing) to provide the economic indicators for the kind-of-activity units.

4.6.2 Local unit

2008 SNA definition

4.96 A local unit is defined as an enterprise or a part of an enterprise (for example, a workshop, factory, warehouse, office, mine or depot) which engages in productive activity at or from one location. Location may be interpreted according to the purpose narrowly, such as at a specific address, or more broadly, such as within a province state county, etc. (2008 SNA: 5.12).

4.97 The definition refers only to the geographic dimension; it does not refer to the kind of activity that is carried out. The local unit thus defined is conceptually different from a legal or an administrative unit (as described in later sections). However, it may coincide with such a unit, or be defined on the basis of such units.

4.98 Each enterprise has at least one local unit, namely the location where the enterprise is registered as legal unit.

4.99 More than one activity of an enterprise may take place at a local unit. A local unit may also comprise only ancillary activities.

Implementation notes

4.100 For the concept of a local unit physical geographical location matters. A single location is normally best approximated by the corresponding postal address. Several physical locations of the same enterprise within the same community, or within the same region, are to be treated as several local units of that enterprise.

4.101 The physical allocation of a local unit may be within a building, may correspond to a building or may comprise more than one building. In the last case, the various buildings do not form separate local units if they are physically close together and have a common postal address.

4.102 A local unit may not be situated in a building at all. In this case other criteria are used in identifying the local unit. A postal address may not exist (for example for a mining site). However, identification may be defined in terms of geographical coordinates or other geographical measures (for example, the estate number in an administrative land register).

4.103 Certain economic activities may be performed outside the physical locations of the enterprise, for instance at a customer's address, at fairs, during door-to-door sales, etc. These types of location are not to be considered to be local units. Instead the sites from where the activities are organised is considered to be the local units. Such activities are treated as if they are carried out at the local unit from which they are organised. The same holds for the activities in transportation where the economic service is transportation of goods and persons over the area.

Example: European Union statistical units regulation (1993): definition of local unit

The European definition is more precise about location and employment.

A *local unit* is an enterprise or part thereof (e.g., a workshop, factory, warehouse, office, mine or depot) situated in a geographically identified place. At or from this place economic activity is carried out for which, save for certain exceptions, one or more persons work (even if only part-time) for one and the same enterprise.

Explanatory notes:

1. If a person works in more than one place (maintenance or surveillance) or at home, the local unit is taken to be the place from which instructions emanate, from where the work is organized (or in which the person monitors the production). It must be possible to specify the employment attached to any local unit (bearing in mind that workers might be under contract and not legally employed by the legal unit at the local unit location). All legal units that serve as the legal basis for an enterprise or a part thereof must have a local unit which is the registered office, even if nobody works there. Moreover, such a local unit can comprise only ancillary activities.
2. A geographically identified place must be interpreted on a strict basis: two units belonging to the same enterprise at different locations (even within the smallest administrative unit of the Member State) must be regarded as two local units. However, a single local unit may be spread over several adjacent administrative areas, in which case, by convention, the postal address is the determining factor.
3. The boundaries of the unit are determined by the boundaries of the site, for example, a public highway running through does not interrupt the continuity of the boundaries. The definition is similar to the one in paragraph 101 of the introduction to ISIC Rev. 3 in that it concerns localization in the strict sense of the term, but differs from the definition in paragraph 102 in that this strict sense may not vary according to the statistics under consideration. In addition, the criterion of persons working in the unit is normally applied.

European Union member states typically support the following legal forms

- *Sole proprietorship*: enterprise owned exclusively by one natural person.
- *Partnership*: association of persons who conduct a business under a collective name. It can take the form of a limited partnership.
- *Limited liability company*: enterprise that is a joint-stock company, limited partnership with share capital, or private limited company. (Harmonized rules at European level governing the publication of accounts for these types of companies are laid down by the Fourth Council Directive).
- *Co-operative society*: body established by law in a country, observing a number of general principles, for example may be entitled to provide services only to members, profits often distributed in proportion to members' dealings with the society, etc.
- Non-profit making body.
- Enterprise with *other form of legal constitution*: this group includes nationalized industries, publicly-owned enterprises, and state and local authority monopolies.

4.104 In case that the economic activities are performed at the private residence of the entrepreneur, this address is also the address of the local unit of the enterprise.

4.105 To be defined as a local unit there should have one or more persons working (even if only part-time) at or from the unit. However, in case of seasonal activities, a local unit may have unstaffed premises during a certain period of the year.

4.7 Legal unit - pivotal between administrative units and statistics

4.106 Although enterprises and legal units are usually closely related, the two concepts should not be confused. While legal units are independent in a legal sense, they may not necessarily constitute independent economic units with decision-making autonomy for their activities, i.e., enterprises. Data from legal units without decision-making autonomy may not be comparable with data from legal units with decision making authority.

4.107 Legal units play a pivotal role in the construction and use of an SBR. Administrative data about economic units are mainly available from legal units. Legal units are often the reporting units from which information is collected about enterprises (as contact and address information is usually available for legal units). Thus the links between the legal units and the corresponding enterprises should be always maintained in the SBR.

4.108 Whilst legal units are usually the building blocks used in defining enterprises *they are not themselves necessarily standardised and comparable across countries* since they reflect national administrative and legal requirements, which may differ across countries.

4.109 While the focus of the SBR is typically businesses, i.e., legal units engaged in commercial economic market-oriented production, the SBR may include other legal units, for example non-profit institutions (NPIs) and government units.

4.110 Administrative regulations usually apply to legal units. However, in responding to the requirements of a particular regulation, and in interacting with the corresponding administrative authority, a legal unit may register and report on the basis of *one or more parts of itself*, referred to in these Guidelines as *administrative units*. Administrative data are available for these administrative units.

4.111 Thus, although in most cases a legal unit has a single administrative unit for a single administrative source, in some cases, often the most important ones, a legal unit has several administrative units for a single administrative source. Furthermore, the sets of administrative units are typically different for different administrative sources. As administrative data are the major input for the SBR, understanding and recording the relationships between the legal units and the various sets of administrative units is vital.

4.7.1 Definition of legal unit

4.112 *Legal units are recognized by law or by society, independently of the persons or institutions that own them. The characteristics of a legal unit are the following: they own assets, they incur liabilities and they enter into transactions with other entities (contracts)*¹⁵.

4.113 Legal units include:

- *Legal persons* whose existence is recognized by law independently of the individuals or institutions which may own them, or are members of them.
- *Natural persons* who are engaged in an economic activity in their own right as independent self-employed producers.

4.114 A legal unit can be a single entity, controlled or not controlled by another legal unit, or, in some countries, controlled by a group of legal units under common control.

¹⁵ Source: *Working Paper on Statistical Business Registers*, United Nations Statistical Division and Eurostat (2011).

4.115 Legal units are the core concept in the SBR in the sense that they:

- Create the operational units by which they manage themselves.
- Register themselves (and possibly administrative sub-units) in response to administrative requirements.
- Are modelled in terms of standard statistical units in the SBR.

4.116 A legal unit always forms, either by itself or sometimes in combination with other (parts of) legal units, the starting point for defining an enterprise.

4.7.2 Market and non-market legal units

4.117 The legal form of a legal unit is not the only determinant of the institutional sector to which the unit belongs. For example, some legally constituted public sector corporations may be non-market units and hence be part of general government rather than publicly-owned corporations. Also some units that are part of general government may be classified as producer units for national accounts purposes and hence represented as enterprises even though they are not actually independent legal units. They are necessarily *recognised* as independent legal units. In this case, the corresponding statistical unit in the SBR contributes to the (national, regional) accounts, *but is not identified as a legal unit*. Thus, both the *market-non-market* characteristics of a unit, and its *legal form* (or quasi-legal form if not recognised as independent legal unit) are needed to classify the statistical unit to the appropriate institutional sector.

4.118 Annex B2 indicates the sector classification of enterprises based on legal form and market/non-market orientation.

4.7.3 Quasi-corporations:

4.119 Some *unincorporated enterprises* belonging to households or government units may behave in much the same way as corporations. Such enterprises are treated as *quasi-corporations* provided they have a complete set of accounts, even though they are not *legal units* in the strict sense of the word.

4.8 Administrative units

4.120 Lists of legal units per se are typically not readily suited for statistical purposes. To maintain their SBRs, NSIs tend to use data about units from administrative sources.

Definition

4.121 *Administrative units* are established by relevant administrative authorities in conjunction with the legal units to which they refer in order to apply the corresponding regulations. There are many different types of administrative units corresponding to the

various administrative regulations. An administrative unit may or may not correspond directly to a legal unit.

4.8.1 Linkage to statistical units

4.122 The identification numbering system for units in an administrative source often does not correspond to, or align with, that used in the SBR. Also, whilst the legal unit is usually the unit recognised by administrative authorities, legal units may be identified differently in the various administrative databases. Consequently, one of the prerequisites in using administrative data is to establish rigorous linkage between the sets of administrative units maintained by administrative authorities and the statistical units in the SBR. Such linkage is necessary to ensure that it is possible to match and combine information from various administrative sources and that there is no duplication in the resulting coverage.

4.123 As further discussed in Section 11.4.10 a unique identifier should be assigned to each statistical unit in the SBR. These identifiers should be linked to the various administrative identifiers. The goal is to ensure that during the creation and maintenance of statistical units they are correctly linked to corresponding administrative units.

4.124 Integration of administrative data into the SBR is greatly facilitated in countries where a single identifier for legal units is used by all administrative authorities in identifying administrative units.

4.9 Units in agriculture and government sectors

4.9.1 Units in agriculture, forestry and fishing

4.125 Section A of ISIC Rev. 4 covers a range of economic activities: in most countries agriculture is the biggest area; in other countries forestry is a very important industry; and in other countries it is fishery. ISIC Section A also includes supporting activities to agriculture, certain agricultural services and post-harvest crop activities, hunting and trapping, logging, and other activities closely related to agriculture, forestry and fishing. The structure of these activities may be quite differently organised from small (family) businesses to large industrial corporations and enterprise groups.

4.126 Units active in agriculture, forestry and fishing should be covered in the SBR, and if not there should at least be links to the special farm register if such exist. The statistical system in agriculture can be quite different from the statistical system in the business area due to the specific nature of agriculture. In particular, the statistical units used in agriculture may be different from those in business statistics. However, linking and integrating these two economic areas within the SBR is an important goal for comprehensive and coherent economic statistics.

4.127 The observation unit in agricultural statistics is mostly an “agricultural holding”. It has similar features to the statistical units used in business statistics, but may not have a one-to-one relationship directly to any of the units in business statistics. In principle, an agricultural holding may correspond to an enterprise, to a local unit or to an establishment. It could also correspond to a legal unit.

4.128 The Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) of the United Nations defines an agricultural holding as follows¹⁶:

4.129 *An agricultural holding is an economic unit of agricultural production under single management comprising all livestock kept and all land used wholly or partly for agricultural production purposes, without regard to title, legal form, or size. Single management may be executed by an individual or household, jointly by two or more individuals or households, by a clan or tribe, or by a juridical person such as a corporation, cooperative or government agency. The holding’s land may consist of one or more parcels, located in one or more separate areas or in one or more territorial or administrative divisions, providing the parcels share the same production means, such as labour, farm buildings, machinery of draught animals.*

4.130 Whether an agricultural unit in a specific country corresponds more closely to an enterprise, to an establishment, to a local unit, or to a legal unit, has to be analysed at country level. It has impact on how the corresponding statistical units in the SBR are built and/or how the SBR is linked to a farm register. The most straightforward case is where an agricultural holding corresponds to an enterprise, as then there is consistency between the level of enterprises in both the agricultural and non-agricultural areas. If a particular enterprise is kept in both the SBR and in the farm register, there is a risk of double counting. To prevent this checks and clarifications have to be undertaken.

4.131 In the other cases, where an agricultural holding does not equal to an enterprise, statistical enterprises in agriculture might have to be delineated in the SBR in a separate process. If the agricultural holding corresponds to an establishment, the enterprise has to be delineated by linking the establishments that belong to the same enterprise. The relevant establishments might not only be found in the agricultural area, but also in the other economic activities. In this case, it has to be determined whether the resulting enterprise has its principal activity in agriculture or in a non-agricultural industry. An enterprise with principle activity in agriculture might also produce non-agricultural goods and services (for example processed food, transportation services, tourism accommodation, etc.). Conversely an enterprise with a non-agricultural main activity may also

produce agricultural products. In each of these cases, appropriate checks have to be undertaken so that the agricultural part of the SBR is conceptually consistent with the other parts of the SBR and that the units in the SBR do not overlap, and no units are missing.

4.9.2 Units in government

4.132 The general government sector consists of institutional units that are non-market producers whose output is intended for individual and collective consumption, and that are financed by compulsory payments made by units belonging to other sectors, together with institutional units principally engaged in the redistribution of national income and wealth. Government units are unique kinds of legal entities established by political processes that have legislative, judicial or executive authority over other institutional units within a given area.

4.133 The general government sector consists of two groups of institutional units:

- Non-market producers whose output is intended for individual and collective consumption, and who are financed by compulsory payments made by units belonging to other sectors.
- Units principally engaged in the redistribution of national income and wealth.

4.134 The general government sector includes units at all levels of government, from central government to regional and to local government as well as social security funds. Public enterprises – which are enterprises owned and controlled by government – are not part of the general government sector. They belong to the financial or non-financial corporate sector. However, for certain analyses the government sector is seen together with the public enterprises, and this aggregation is called the “public sector”.

4.135 The units of general government are mainly engaged in ISIC Rev. 4 Section O *Public Administration and defence; compulsory social security*. However, government units are also engaged in other activities, mainly in education and health.

4.136 The organisation and structure of the government is quite different over countries, depending upon national legislation. Government units may be split into various levels of regional or organisational responsibility. The organisational units may be ministries, departments, offices, bureaus; they may be centrally organised or have regional offices; they may have a separate budget or not; and they may have nearly full, partial or no autonomy in terms of decisions regarding their use of resources.

4.137 The *institutional unit* should serve as the common framework for the quite differing government units across countries. As explained earlier, institutional units are units:

¹⁶ Source: FAO. 1996. Conducting agricultural censuses and surveys. FAO Statistical Development Series, No. 6. Rome.

- that are an elementary economic decision-making centre characterized by uniformity of behaviour; and
- that have decision-making autonomy in the exercise of its principal function.

4.138 An indicator of autonomy is that the unit has a complete set of accounts and responsibility for its budget. However, government units do not usually have full autonomy in decision-making even if they have a dedicated budget. Thus, various units may have to be combined to create a unit that closely matches the concept of an institutional unit.

4.139 For example, a single public school will not have autonomy in the sense of an institutional unit. Autonomy may be achieved only at the level of the ministry of education. In other words, all public schools together with the ministry of education will form one institutional unit. It may even be the case that the ministry of education does not have full autonomy as, for certain decisions, the ministry of finance also has to agree. Application of this logic in a very strict sense would result in very few governmental institutional units. However, this is quite impractical for SBR purposes as it would result in a few very big units with a high share of employment but quite differing economic activities.

4.140 Thus, in defining government units, these Guidelines recommend using a level of aggregation that is a practical balance between the autonomy aspect and the level of detail that is required. It is clear that the government units at the higher organisational levels (such as ministries or departments) will more likely have a higher degree of autonomy than the units organisationally attached to them (such as schools in the example above). Also the parliament and the high courts, etc. are viewed as separate institutional units.

4.141 In addition to institutional unit, the local unit is also relevant and important for the government sector. So, for example, schools under the responsibility of the central government will be recorded as local units of the ministry of education. Of course, if certain schools belong to provincial or local governments these schools will be recorded as local units of either the regional or local government institution responsible for the education sector.

4.10 Branches, ancillary activities, special purpose entities, franchises and related concepts

4.142 This section deals with issues that concern conceptual definitions of units and their practical delineation, that are under current review, scrutiny or research, and that have not been addressed in earlier parts of this chapter. It deals with branches, ancillary units, and special purpose entities (SPEs), holding companies (HCs) and head offices (HOs). A joint ECB/Eurostat/OECD task force has discussed the specific properties of SPEs, HCs and HOs and proposed harmonized definitions and treatment.

4.10.1 Branch

Definition

4.143 A *branch* is a local unit not constituting a separate legal unit in the country where it operates and being dependent on a foreign-controlled enterprise. Branches are treated as *quasi-corporate enterprises*.

4.144 Only branches with registered existence (as may be evidenced by a permanent address) are covered by foreign affiliate statistics. In particular, the statistical units for Outward FATS are enterprises and all branches abroad that are controlled and managed by an institutional unit resident (in the sense of its Global Decision Centre) in the compiling economy.

4.10.2 Ancillary activities

4.145 Recommendations regarding the treatment of ancillary activities and the units that perform them are given in the introduction of ISIC Rev. 4 manual, as follows.

59. *Principal and secondary activities cannot be carried out without the support of a number of ancillary activities, such as bookkeeping, transportation, storage, purchasing, sales promotion, cleaning, repair and maintenance, security etc. At least some of these activities are found in every economic entity. Thus, ancillary activities are those that are undertaken to support the main productive activities of an entity by providing goods or services entirely or primarily for the use of that entity.*

61. *There are a number of characteristics of*

European example on branches

A new legal status has been created for the so-called "European companies" or "Europeae Societae". This status allows the relevant legal units to operate in the whole of the EU without any legal registration in the Member States other than the initial one. It also allows a change of the place and country of registration through simply a decision of the board.

In consequence, according to EU methodology, locations of legal units in "other" countries are branches.

This status, which was rarely used in the recent past, seems to be now developing very quickly. It might create large problems in determining the enterprise group perimeter and country of residence.

ancillary activities that can generally be observed in practice and that help to identify them. The output is always intended for intermediate consumption within the same entity and is therefore usually not recorded separately. Although most ancillary activities produce services, some goods-producing activities may, by exemption, be regarded as ancillary. The goods thus produced, however, may not become a physical part of the output of the main activity (examples are tools, scaffolding etc.). Ancillary activities are usually fairly small-scale compared with the principal activity they support.

62. *If an establishment undertaking ancillary activities is statistically observable, in the sense that separate accounts for the production it undertakes are readily available, or if it is in a geographically different location from the establishments it serves, it may be desirable and useful to consider it as a separate unit and allocate it to the industrial classification corresponding to its principal activity. However, it is recommended that statisticians not make extraordinary efforts to create separate establishments for these activities artificially in the absence of suitable basic data being available.*

63. *Under the definition given in paragraph 59 above, the following activities are not to be considered ancillary:*

(a) Producing goods or services as part of fixed capital formation. The type of units most affected are those doing construction work on the account of their parent unit. This approach is in accordance with the classification in ISIC of own account construction units for which data are available to the construction industry;

(b) Producing output which, although also used as intermediate consumption by the principal or secondary activity, is for the greater part sold on the market;

(c) Producing goods that become a physical part of the output of the principal or secondary activity (for example, the production of boxes, tin cans or the like by a department of an enterprise as packaging for its own products);

(d) Research and development activities, which are considered part of fixed capital formation in the context of SNA.

4.146 When a unit is to be classified by economic activity ancillary activities are not considered. For coding purposes only those activities that form the principal and secondary activities are taken into account. The

costs for performing ancillary activities are allocated to the principal and secondary activities of the enterprise.

4.147 Usually an ancillary activity is not identified as a separate organisational unit or as a separate legal unit. However, the occurrence of legal units that have been created only perform ancillary activities for the enterprises of an enterprise group is increasing.

4.148 Thus, the general rule is that, since production processes are not usually viable without the support of ancillary activities, these ancillary activities should not be isolated to form distinct entities, even if they are carried out by a distinct legal entity or at a distinct place, and even if separate accounts are kept.

4.10.3 Special purpose entities

4.149 Special purpose entity (SPE) is the name used in 2008 SNA for identifying special cases of corporations. In various manuals they are also known as special purpose vehicles (SPVs), international business companies, financing subsidiaries, conduits, holding companies, shell companies, shelf companies, brass plate companies and so on. SPEs are often used as devices to raise capital or to hold assets and liabilities, and usually do not undertake significant production. 2008 SNA and BPM6 agree that there is no international standard definition of an SPE. Thus, the identification of institutional units that may be described as SPEs requires consideration of a number of characteristics, including number of employees, physical presence, residency and ownership of financial and non-financial assets.

4.150 Different ways of treatment are explained in BPM6 in where it is stated: *"Although there is no internationally standard definition of SPEs, in economies in which they are important they may be identified separately, according to either a national company law definition, or in terms of a functional definition, possibly referring to their limited physical presence and ownership by non-residents (4.87)".*

4.151 In 2008 SNA (4.58) a unit defined as an SPE is treated in the same way as any other institutional unit, being allocated to a sector and an industry according to its principal activity unless it falls into one of the three following categories:

- a) Captive financial institutions.
- b) Artificial subsidiaries of corporations.
- c) Special purpose units of general government.

ECB/Eurostat/OECD Task Force on Head Offices, Holding Companies and Special Purpose Entities (2013)

The Task Force identified 11 common types of SPEs^{*}, namely:

- 1) Holding company.
- 2) Shell company.
- 3) Unit for holding and managing wealth of individuals and families.
- 4) Securitisation company.
- 5) Conduit.
- 6) Royalty and licensing company.
- 7) Captive leasing company (including mobile equipment renting company).
- 8) Factoring and invoicing company.
- 9) Captive insurance company.
- 10) SPE carrying out other financial function.
- 11) Merchanting company*.

*Source: *Final Report by the Task Force on Head Offices, Holding Companies and Special Purpose Entities (SPEs)*. European Central Bank, OECD and Eurostat, (2013)

4.152 Aware of the difficulty of finding a common international definition, different task forces have tried to define decision trees to be used for allocating units between SPEs and normal units. In particular, the following 4 main groups have been identified:

Ownership of financial assets (Captive financial institutions - Sector S127)

- Holding companies (ISIC Section K 6420).
- Trusts, funds and similar financial entities (ISIC Section K 6430).
- Securitization companies (ISIC Section K 6499 (Assuming that the relevant units pass the institutional test, they should be classified as part of S125 if they purchase assets on the open markets while raising funds on the open markets. If they do not operate in the open markets on either assets or liabilities, they should be classified in S127).
- Captive financial leasing companies (ISIC Section K 6491 (Financial leasing companies operating on open markets are to be classified under S125).
- Captive insurance and reinsurance companies (ISIC Section K 6512, 6520).
- Invoicing companies (ISIC Section K 6499).

Ownership of non-financial tangible assets

- Renting of mobile equipment (ISIC Section N 7730 - Sector S11).
- Merchandising companies (ISIC Section G – 46xx - Sector S11).

Ownership of non-financial intangible assets

- Licensing and royalty companies (ISIC Section M 7490 - Sector S11).

Others

- Offices of airlines in airport hubs abroad (ISIC Section H 5110 - Sector S11), where Sector S11 is non-financial corporations, Sector S125 is other financial intermediaries except insurance corporations and pension funds, and Sector S127 is captive financial institutions and money lenders.

4.153 As SPEs are currently identified from a national perspective, the following proposals are to be further evaluated.

- *Terminology*: it is necessary to clarify the meaning of different labels and to use the same wording for the same things.
- *Characteristics*: a clear choice should be made among the terms “no”, “few”, “little”, and “often”.

4.154 The narrowest definition of an SPE could be based on the following features:

- No employees.
- No physical presence.
- No non-financial assets.
- Always related to another corporation and their owners are not residents in the territory of incorporation.
- No other subsidiaries in the country.

4.10.4 Distinction between head offices and holding companies

4.155 *Head offices (HOs) and holding companies (HCs) are special forms of SPEs. "The statistical analysis of HOs and HCs, and their delineation, starts after the institutional unit test. Both types of units are often referred to as holding companies, because both of them have relations to other entities, their subsidiaries. However, the relationships are quite different: while an HO exercises managerial control over its subsidiaries, the HC does not undertake any management activities and its principal activity is simply owning a group of subsidiaries".*¹⁷

4.156 From a conceptual point of view the distinction between HOs and HCs seems clear. However, applying these concepts in practice is complex as HOs and HCs have common operational characteristics. The following paragraphs provide some guidance.

4.157 The activities of an HO include the overseeing and managing of other legal units of the enterprise group, thus supporting their day-to-day operations. An HC is a legal unit that holds the assets of other legal units but does not undertake any management activities. HCs are not seen to have autonomy of decision and are combined with one or more producing legal units to form an enterprise.

4.158 HOs and HCs have relations to their subsidiaries. Hence, information on the structure of their balance sheet is one means to determine whether an entity is an HO or an HC, or any other type of unit. In order to identify HOs and HCs the following practical rule should be applied: a legal unit having at least 50% of its assets consisting of investments in its subsidiaries can be considered to be an HO or HC.

4.159 An HO may have noticeably fewer employees than the legal units it oversees and manages. However, having zero employment is a clear indication of not being an HO. On the other hand, HCs that simply hold assets may do so with very few or no employed personnel. Therefore, employment thresholds can be applied to differentiate HOs and HCs. As a general rule, having three or more persons employed is a first indicator that the unit is more likely an HO rather than an HC.

4.160 By convention the following rules should help in delineating if a legal unit holding 50% or more of its assets in its subsidiaries should be treated as an enterprise unit or not:

- a) An HO/HC owned by a non-resident parent is to be considered as an enterprise.
- b) An HO/HC owned by multiple owners, and not controlled by any other legal unit, should be considered as a separate enterprise.
- c) For an HO/HC wholly owned by a single resident unit, having no employees and no compensation of employees are not sufficient criteria for lack of independence. In such case, further investigation is needed.
- d) HOs are always considered to have autonomy of decision.

4.10.5 Franchises

4.161 Franchise operators (franchisees) may or may not belong to the same enterprise group. The franchiser is always regarded as a separate enterprise.

4.162 Franchisees are deemed to be separate from the franchiser because they comprise a complete combination of factors of production, and they run the full entrepreneurial risk. Moreover, although the definition of the enterprise requires autonomy, it allows for this autonomy to be somewhat restricted ("a certain degree of autonomy" is required). Also, full accounts tend to be available only at the level of the separate franchisees.

¹⁷ ECB/Eurostat/OECD Task Force on HOs, HCs and SPEs (June 2013).

Chapter 5

Characteristics of units

5.1 Introduction

5.1 This chapter describes the characteristics that should be recorded in the SBR for the various types of units defined and discussed in Chapter 4. Collectively, these characteristics identify the units, indicate how they can be contacted, and provide economic and geographic information, all time-stamped. They also contain links between different types of units, both within the SBR and across multiple sources of updating information. Attention is paid to the metadata documenting the characteristics and to the time stamping mechanisms (reference dates and updating dates).

5.2 The characteristics are grouped and described in accordance with the following classification:

- Identification and contact characteristics, including not only names, addresses and communication means (telephone numbers, mail addresses, websites etc.) but also specific and unique identifiers (even internal identification numbers that enterprises use in monitoring their affiliates and that are not intended for the general public).
- Demographic characteristics, including unit activity start and end dates, current status and continuity markers.
- Economic/stratification characteristics, i.e. economic variables and classifications, used for sampling survey frames, grossing up sample data and/or presenting results.
- Relationships (links) between units of different types within the SBR.
- Relationships (links) with units in other registers and data sources, including their specific identification numbers.

5.3 Sections 5.2-5.6 provide general descriptions of the primary characteristics in each of the five groups. Precise details of whether, and if so how, each characteristic applies to each unit type are provided in Annex A.

5.4 The importance of a characteristic is summarised in terms of its *core/non-core* status.

- *Core* characteristics are those that are indispensable in maintaining and/or using the SBR. Most characteristics described in this chapter are core characteristics.
- *Non-core* characteristics are those that are optional, that can be added in a later stage, such as geographical coordinates to supplement addresses.

5.5 Identification numbers are very important characteristics because they are essential in merging micro data from various sources, including from administrative files.

5.6 Some characteristics need more explanation and guidance regarding use than others. These include economic activity, sector and regional classifications, and the size classes. Not only do these basic classification concepts have to be defined, but also the processes by which their values are acquired have to be described.

5.7 Chapters 6 and 7 detail the data sources used to establish and maintain the values of the characteristics. For every value, the associated metadata (including source, date of update, and reference date) should be recorded, as further discussed in Section 10.6. The primary reference source for chapter 5 is Eurostat's *Business Registers Recommendations Manual*.

5.2 Identification and contact characteristics

Type of unit

5.8 *Purpose:* To identify the type of a unit.

5.9 *Definition:* Chapter 4 lists and defines the main types of units that may be included in the SBR. They are *enterprise group*, *enterprise*, *establishment*, *kind-of-activity-unit*, *local unit*, *legal unit* and *administrative unit*.

5.10 As noted in Chapter 4, some enterprise groups are operating and managed globally. For purely national purposes they should be truncated to the national territory. Identification of truncated enterprise groups does not involve anything more than splitting the multinational enterprise groups on a national basis.

Type of enterprise group

5.11 *Purpose:* To identify the type of enterprise group.

5.12 *Definition:* The type options are *all-resident*, *multinational domestically controlled*, and *multinational foreign controlled*.

Role of enterprise within enterprise group

5.13 *Purpose:* To identify the role of an enterprise within an enterprise group.

5.14 *Definitions:* The type options are *management/control unit*, *global group head (controlling unit)*, *global decision centre (managing unit)*, *highest level consolidation unit*, and *other*.

Identification number(s)

5.15 *Purpose:* To identify the unit and to enable it to be linked to other units in the SBR and in administrative and other statistical sources.

5.16 It is preferable that no information on the content of the unit is embedded in the identification number, as further discussed in Section 11.4.10.

Name(s)

5.17 For legal persons: legal name, plus trading name(s) and acronym(s).

5.18 For natural persons: family name(s), names normally used and possible pseudonyms, forenames, personal number (if authorized by national law), gender.

5.19 For statistical units: trading name(s) and acronym(s).

5.20 For administrative units: names as registered.

Address

5.21 Physical address, including postcode and official geographic code at the most detailed level.

Communication characteristics¹⁸

- Telephone and fax number(s).
- Electronic mail address(es).
- Information on sources of quick updates about the unit characteristics (such as web sites).
- Mailing address (if different from the legal one).

5.22 *Purpose:* These characteristics provide contact information for the unit. Telephone number and e-mail address are very important. In the event that units from different sources do not share a common identification

system, their names and addresses can be used for matching units across sources.

5.3 Demographic characteristics

Date of incorporation of unit (for units that are legal persons)

Date of official recognition as an economic operator (for units that are natural persons)

5.23 *Purpose:* One or other of these characteristics should be recorded at the time of inclusion of a new unit, whether this is the result of real birth or of another demographic event that results in a new unit, for example the incorporation of an unincorporated enterprise.

5.24 *Definition:* The date of official recognition may be the date on which an identification number is assigned, or the date in which the legal existence is accepted, be it through a trade register number, the assignment of a VAT number, or other form of administrative registration.

Date of commencement of economic activity

5.25 *Purpose:* The characteristic is used in deciding if a new unit is economically active.

5.26 *Definition:* The date of commencement of economic activity should be the date on which the unit actually starts its economic activity.

5.27 As soon as a unit invests it is deemed to have economic activity even though production may not have started. If this were not the case, then investments, in particular gross fixed capital formation, could be heavily underestimated.

5.28 The *actual date* of commencement of economic activity is often difficult to know. A proxy for this date can be the date declared in advance by the unit at the time it is officially registered and an identification number is assigned. Another proxy is the date when its legal existence is accepted.

Date of final cessation of economic activity

Date on which a legal unit ceased to exist

5.29 *Purpose:* These characteristics are needed to record the permanent inactivity and/or death of a unit. Death is a difficult status to establish with precision as liquidation can last a long time after economic activities have been stopped, particularly when lawsuits are in process.

Date of merger, take-over, split or break

Identifier of unit (if any) that is continuing the economic activity after the concerned unit has ceased to exist

5.30 *Purpose:* These demographic characteristics (further discussed in Sections 7.3 and 9.3) are needed to record the restructuring of units and to relate the

¹⁸ The communication characteristics of the unit may be different for different surveys. They may include the names and addresses of the corresponding contact persons. Also, as previously noted, the contact persons might be reporting units such as accounting or tax consultants hired by the unit.

resulting live units to the previous ones that have been ceased and might be considered dead.

5.4 Economic/stratification characteristics

5.31 *Purpose:* The legal form (also known as legal status) is a key stratification characteristic. The legal form of a legal unit is useful for:

Legal form Avoiding ambiguity and/or double counting in identification searches.

- Stratification for surveys.
- Classifying to the institutional sector.

5.32 *Definition:* The possible types of legal form differ across countries according to the particular legislation in each country. For unincorporated enterprises there are different types of legal forms, including sole proprietorship and partnership. A typical set of legal forms for EU countries is listed in Section 4.7.1.

5.33 While the range of legal forms varies from country to country, depending upon national legislation, there are some legal forms that can be found in most countries¹⁹.

5.34 The tax regime applicable to a legal unit depends on its legal form, which means that taxation data supplied to an SBR depends on legal form. Some legal forms may be exempted from certain regulations (VAT for example) in which case the corresponding legal units are not registered by the corresponding administrative sources, adversely affecting the coverage provided by these sources.

Institutional sector and sub-sector

5.35 *Purpose:* The institutional sector classification has at least five important functions:

- In national accounts, for compiling data for individual sectors.
- In business statistics and business demography, for separating market and non-market activities.
- In separating data for public enterprises from data for private enterprises.
- In finding the share of employment, or value added, in a country's economy of which the country itself is the ultimate controller.
- In distinguishing foreign controlled enterprises.

5.36 The set of institutional unit types is described in Chapter 3, and the institutional sector classification is presented in Annex B2.

Principal economic activity

5.37 *Purpose:* The principal economic activity code of a unit is a key stratification characteristic.

Secondary economic activity (activities)

5.38 Practical guidance in assigning and maintaining principal and secondary economic activity codes is provided in Chapter 7.

Ancillary unit

5.39 *Purpose:* Some units perform activities exclusively for other units without autonomy. As a consequence, they have no economic significance per se. They should be seen as ancillary activities of the parent legal unit that they serve, to which they belong, and to which they must be attached to form a unit significant for economic analysis.

Market orientation (market, non-market)

5.40 *Purpose:* Both the market/non-market characteristic of a unit and its legal form are needed to classify a statistical unit to the appropriate institutional sector.

Turnover

Flag indicating consolidated turnover

5.41 *Purpose:* The SBR should record an estimate of economic size for every unit. For production statistics, value added is considered the most appropriate characteristic, but it is difficult to measure and is often replaced by proxy measures. Because it is relatively easy to collect, the most commonly used monetary proxy is turnover (revenue or sales). A commonly used physical proxy is number of persons employed.

5.42 There are a number of drawbacks to using turnover due to the need for consolidation of internal flows between the statistical or reporting units.

- Turnover is not additive when changing the level of observation units, for example from establishment to enterprise, or from enterprise to enterprise group, or from the usual observation unit (which is typically a legal unit) to enterprise or enterprise group.
- Turnover is not additive when changing the geographical level; it is different at global enterprise group level than at truncated national enterprise group level.

5.43 There are different definitions of turnover according to the economic activity of the unit being classified. For example, there are differing definitions

¹⁹ As indicated in the Eurostat - OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics - 2007 Edition-glossary.

for agriculture, forestry and fishing, manufacturing, finance and insurance, and economic activities of households as employers.

5.44 If the consolidated turnover of a statistical unit is not available it is better to use as proxy the sum of the turnovers of its constituent units than to have no measurement at all. As turnover of legal units is used in most administrative sources, it should be recorded for consistency purposes.

Number of persons employed

Number of employees

5.45 For all units the SBR should record the actual *number of persons employed*, and *number of employees*, both as head counts and, in the latter case, also in *full-time equivalents* (FTEs). FTE employment is defined as total hours worked divided by average annual hours worked in full-time jobs (2008 SNA: 19.43).

5.46 *Purpose:* The main uses of these characteristics are in stratification for sampling, analysis and dissemination purposes.

- Number of persons employed is preferable for stratifying survey samples in the case of very small units.
- Depending on the source and quality of the information, employment data directly from the SBR may be used in compiling employment statistics. They are especially useful for small area statistics, where the SBR may be the only comprehensive source.

5.47 *Number of persons employed* is defined as the total number of persons who work in the unit, including wage-earners and self-employed persons (i.e., working proprietors, partners working regularly in the unit and unpaid family workers) as well as persons who work outside the unit but who belong to it and are paid by it (e.g., sales representatives, delivery personnel, repair and maintenance teams). It excludes manpower supplied to the unit by other enterprises, persons carrying out repair and maintenance work in the unit on behalf of other enterprises, as well as those on compulsory military service.

5.48 *Number of employees* is defined as those persons who work for an employer and who have a contract of employment and receive compensation in the form of wages, salaries, fees, gratuities, piecework pay or remuneration in kind. A worker from an employment agency is considered to be an employee of that employment agency and not of the units in which he/she (temporarily) work.

5.49 For stratification purposes the *number of employees at year end* and/or the *annual average number of employees* may be used. An annual average can also be calculated over a specified period within a year for seasonally active units.

5.50 The number of employees in FTEs may be calculated for the period during which the unit is active

and/or for a full year. For stratification purposes the active period should be used while for annual economic statistics the whole year is more appropriate.

5.51 *Proxies:* In some countries all these data can be obtained directly from administrative sources while in other countries administrative sources may provide only number of paid employees. In the latter case, the number of persons employed can be estimated according to legal form and activity. For example:

- For sole proprietors, number of persons employed = number of employees+1.
- For two person partnerships, number of persons employed = number of employees+2.

5.52 *Sources:* Administrative sources, surveys, and SBR calculations.

5.53 *Comments:* The reference period used for the measurement of employment in business demography is a calendar year. Thus, in principle, a labour force estimate should be an annual average. If a unit operates only during a part of the year (as in the case of a seasonal enterprise or a new enterprise), the average for size measurement should be based on that period. However, for annual employment data the average should be calculated for the whole calendar year. How the annual average is calculated in practice depends on the updating frequency of the SBR and on the sources used²⁰. For example, the value may be approximated by using the number of persons employed at a specified moment during the year if this is all that is available.

5.54 Head counts and FTEs each have certain advantages, so both should be recorded if possible. Head count is the number of physical persons, full-time and part-time, employed by a unit. FTE is a more accurate measure of labour input but depending upon the origin of the data, it may not be possible to calculate. Also, as the concept of *full-time* may vary from one country to another, the FTE data may not be fully comparable across countries. Another possibility is to use hours worked directly as a measure of work input. This measurement is gaining favour in employment statistics, but data are not often readily available.

5.5 Relationships and links between units in the SBR

5.55 There are two main reasons for registering relationships between the various types of units in the SBR:

- For management and the direct use in the SBR itself and by surveys using frames derived from the SBR, relationships are required to link together units that belong to the same enterprise or to the same

²⁰ Fiscal sources are related to the country fiscal year which can be different from the calendar year. Their average employment then refers to a different period.

enterprise group, and to ensure correct transformation of data collected from administrative units, or about observation units, to data for the corresponding statistical units.

- For potential uses of the SBR, relationships assist in statistical and economic studies that depend upon bringing data from different sources together.

5.56 The most evident need concerns links between statistical units and administrative units required for creation and management of the SBR, and between statistical units and observation units. Depending on the sources used in building the SBR, and on its main uses, there may also be a need to register links between administrative units and legal units, and between observation units and reporting units.

5.57 Each link should include the date when the relationship started and (if applicable) the date when it stopped.

5.58 In its simplest form a relationship is a link including only two identification numbers (one for each unit linked) and the date. In some situations more complex relationships are recorded. (For example, a single unit of one type of unit may be linked to *n* units of another type, and the relationship may indicate the percentages to be applied in splitting data for the one unit across the *n* units.) This depends on how the SBR is organized. In general it is best to keep the relationships as simple as possible.

5.59 It is important to recognise the difference in the treatment of administrative registers and the treatment of the SBR. In an administrative register, units and their values may be changed without notice to the NSI and without continuity from a statistical perspective. It is thus essential to keep copies of the administrative registers used as sources by the SBR, and, where possible and relevant, to record the relationships between the units in these registers and legal units and statistical units.

5.60 Links should also be kept between the observation units and the corresponding reporting units if this is practical for survey purposes. For example, in some cases a single lawyer or accountant may report on behalf of several enterprises. These links can be maintained in the SBR or in survey specific data collection systems.

5.6 Relationships and links with other registers

5.61 Whether the SBR contains data for all the different unit types in a single database, or in separate

satellite registers, such links are very important given the emerging role of the SBR in connecting various data sources and thus integrating statistics.

5.62 Links are expressed in terms of identification numbers for the external sources and the identification numbers of the corresponding units in the SBR.

5.63 Ideally, the links should be organized in such a way that all administrative units are linked to the legal unit to which they belong. For example a legal unit may have several administrative units for pay-as-you-earn (PAYE) purposes, and several more for social security contributions, as well as having one or more VAT accounts and an account for payment of income tax.

5.64 Depending on national legislation, it is conceivable that a single administrative unit is linked to more than one legal unit.

5.65 The sorts of relationships that exist and links that are possible depend upon country legislation and regulations. Examples are:

- Links from legal unit to value added tax (VAT).
- Links from legal unit to trade register.
- Links from legal unit to social security.
- Links to balance sheet data (for units required to publish accounts).
- Links to balance of payments register or foreign direct investment register.
- Links to the farm register.
- Links to other satellite registers, for example, shop registers, tourist establishment registers, transport registers, educational services registers, and health services registers.

5.7 Characteristics by unit type

5.66 Figure 5.1 summarises how the characteristics described in general terms in the previous sections are applied to each of the types of statistical units defined in Chapter 4. In the table a tick-off (✓) indicates which characteristics should be recorded for the different types of units listed in the columns. A blank cell indicates that the characteristic is not applicable for logical or conceptual reasons. For instance, the characteristic "type of enterprise group" is only applicable for the statistical unit enterprise group, but not for the other units.

5.67 Annex A provides comprehensive details about the characteristics of the units by type of unit.

Figure 5.1 Summary of characteristics by unit type

Characteristics of the unit	Enterprise group / truncated enterprise group.	Enterprise	Establishment	Local unit (of enterprise)	Legal unit	Other observation unit (VAT, Social security units, etc.)
Identification and contact						
Type of unit	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Type of enterprise group	✓					
ID number	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Name, address	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Communication characteristics, contact details	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Administrative identification numbers (tax number...)					✓	
Geographical code (zip code...)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Country code	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Demographic						
Birth date	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Status of unit (active/inactive...)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Restructuring code (merger, split...)	✓	✓			✓	
Restructuring date	✓	✓			✓	
Death date	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Economic/stratification						
Legal form					✓	
Institutional sector		✓			✓	
Principal activity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Secondary activity (if any)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Market oriented		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Ancillary unit		✓	✓	✓	✓	
Employment	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Consolidated turnover	✓	✓	✓			
Links and external references						
Link between unit and enterprise group		✓			✓	✓
Percentage control					✓	
Percentage share (ownership)					✓	
Type of management/control unit (within group)					✓	✓
Link between unit and enterprise			✓	✓	✓	✓
Link between unit and establishment		✓		✓	✓	✓
Link between unit and local unit (of enterprise)		✓	✓		✓	
Link between unit and legal unit	✓	✓				✓
Links between units involved in mergers, splits, etc.	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
External register - name of register, identification number(s)			✓		✓	✓

Chapter 6

Data sources for the SBR

6.1 Introduction

Context

6.1 This chapter provides guidance on the sources of data that can be used to construct an SBR and how they are used in combination. The main focus is on administrative data, but statistical sources and new potential sources are also discussed. The chapter defines what is meant by *administrative data* and describes main administrative sources that are used in many countries. The advantages and disadvantages of these sources are considered, also the legal aspects pertinent to their use.

6.2 Different data sources may be used in combination to construct and maintain an SBR with good coverage and content. The data sources must also provide information about changes in units to keep coverage and content up-to-date, as further discussed in Chapter 7. Unless the SBR is maintained on a regular basis, it quickly loses its value by becoming outdated and ceasing to adequately reflect economic activity in the real world.

6.3 Data sources may be grouped into three categories:

- Administrative sources.
- Statistical sources, including feedback from economic surveys, profiling and SBR improvement surveys.
- Other sources, for example data from private data suppliers, telephone directories and the Internet.

6.4 The Guidelines recommend that SBRs be created and maintained primarily using administrative sources. Typically they enable good coverage and stability. This approach is in line with Principle 5 of the United Nations Fundamental Principles of Official Statistics, which states *"Data for statistical purposes may be drawn from all types of sources, be they statistical surveys or administrative records. Statistical agencies are to choose the source with regard to quality, timeliness, costs and the burden on respondents"*.

6.5 However, the best choice of data sources depends on the specific situation in any given country, including the availability of administrative data and the scope and complexity of the national statistical system itself.

Administrative sources

6.6 A commonly applied definition in Europe is: *"Administrative sources are sources containing information that is not primarily collected for statistical purposes"*. Another EU definition²¹ defines administrative data as: *"data derived from an administrative source, before any processing or validation by the NSI."* These definitions allow for the wide interpretation of the data that might be included under the heading *administrative data* in these Guidelines. A more traditional and narrower definition requires administrative data *to be collected by government bodies for the purpose of administering taxes, public pension funds and other regulations*.

6.7 Eurostat collects information on administrative and other data sources used for SBRs in its annual business registers questionnaire. The same questionnaire is also used by the UNECE and the OECD and so covers a wide range of countries. The most commonly used sources relate to taxation systems, such as value added tax (VAT) and personal income tax, and to compulsory business registration systems, often administered by chambers of commerce or government bodies and departments.

Statistical sources and survey feedback

6.8 Statistical sources refer to data collected by statistical processes carried out by the NSI and, in principle, by other producers of statistics within the national statistical system. The two survey groups of sources are, first, the economic surveys that draw their frames from the SBR and that can provide updates and, second, improvement surveys conducted by the SBR itself. Another very important source is profiling, a method to analyse the legal, operational and accounting structure of large and complex enterprise groups, in order to establish the statistical units, their links, and the most efficient structures for the collection of statistical data.

Commercial and other data sources

6.9 The Guidelines consider that commercial data available from private companies that manage utilities, for example, telephone companies, water or power supply, may be considered in the same way as administrative data. Use of such data can be a cost-

²¹ From ESSnet on Administrative data, an EU funded project.

effective way of improving the SBR since these databases are extensively researched and managed for commercial benefit by their owners.

6.10 Other sources include data collected by companies for their own commercial purposes, for example data owned by market information companies and companies that collect data and maintain directories and databases that they provide to their customers for commercial purposes.

6.11 New data sources are emerging and current discussion of *big data* may well highlight additional sources. Such sources may be used in SBRs, for example in helping to create enterprise groups.

Content of chapter

6.12 In the following sections each of the various types of sources is discussed in more detail and the final section describes the record linkage procedures that are required to combine data from them, in case common unique identifiers are not given. Influential reference documents include Eurostat's *Business Registers Recommendations Manual* and the African Development Bank's *Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Register in Africa*.

6.2 General methods, procedures and issues

6.2.1 Cooperation with data providers

6.13 Establishing and maintaining good relations with the owners of data sources, especially administrative sources, is vital, and can be complex and challenging. From an SBR perspective the purposes of cooperation are to understand the concepts, to ensure continuity of supply, and to ensure easy linkage of data from the various sources to the SBR, preferably through a common identifier. In other words, the aim is to promote the interests of the SBR and, more generally, of the economic statistics program. The purposes are the same whether the SBR is dealing with an administrative, statistical or commercial data source.

6.14 Although cooperation can take on many forms, it is recommended that it includes regular face-to-face contact and mutual visits. Contact should involve both management level staff and operational staff who are working with the data on a daily basis.

6.15 Through effective cooperation it is possible to be proactive regarding changes in data sources that might be detrimental to the SBR, and to limit undesirable changes, or at least to have early warning of upcoming changes that could disrupt, jeopardise or otherwise challenge statistical production or accuracy. Cooperation should also be used to promote the benefits of using statistical concepts in administrative sources, for example, standard economic activity codes and standard definitions of business units.

6.16 To provide clear responsibility and working arrangements it is good practice to set up a memorandum of understanding (MOU) or service level agreement (SLA) with an administrative source. While not often legally binding, an MOU or SLA provides an agreed framework and gives reassurance about the services to be received. Typically an SLA sets out the agreed data coverage and content to be supplied, delivery timetables, data security provisions, checking mechanisms and quality provisions, and response times within which to answer validation questions by the SBR.

6.2.2 Common identification systems

6.17 A common identification system eases the work in combining data from administrative sources. If there is no common administrative identification system, the NSI should use any opportunity to promote one and to draw attention to the advantages of linking data in terms of more accurate and less costly statistics.

6.18 Linking different data sources is not only a means of improving the quality of statistics but also of reducing administration costs and burden. If a common administrative identification system does not exist, the NSI should construct an internal linkage table (containing links between units in the various sources) in order to manage the SBR and to reduce duplication or omission problems.

6.2.3 Identifying and using external data sources

6.19 The first step in using administrative data is to identify the most useful data source(s). Potential sources have to be evaluated in terms of their coverage, content and the costs to the SBR of acquiring the data. For evaluation purposes it is important to obtain all available information about each source, for example, the definitions that are used, the coverage, the updating methods, the frequency of updates, the time lag, and how frequently it is possible to get information from the source.

6.20 Data obtained from external sources should be stored in the SBR without change of content. Retaining the original data ensures there is a record of what was received, regardless of changes made during subsequent administrative source processing or by SBR updating processes. This is important for audit purposes and for communication with the administrative sources should there be any issues or concerns about changes that have been made. It also enables the SBR to be rebuilt if any system or processing issues occur during production and updating processes. Administrative data are often extracted from live databases, and cannot be replicated for the same reference period at a later date. So keeping the administrative data in its original state is good practice.

6.21 Storing metadata about changes in data values is essential. For example, if a unit changes address in an administrative register, the old address should be retained in the SBR but with a termination date

indicating it is no longer current, and the new address should be stored with the commencement date and a blank termination date.

6.22 Following receipt and storage of administrative data, statistical units in the SBR are created or updated through a set of conversion rules and procedures, as further described below.

6.2.4 Combined administrative and statistical register

6.23 Some countries have developed a single administrative business register with multiple functions, including that of an SBR. This has significant advantages in that statistical data requirements are within the core of the administrative systems. The Danish SBR (as further described in Annex C1) provides a good example. Other countries have similar systems.

6.2.5 Linking and matching

6.24 The SBR is more resilient with lower risk of error, if multiple reliable data sources are used. Some sources, such as VAT, provide extensive (but never complete) coverage of the economy, whereas others may only cover one sector, e.g. financial, but more completely. Thus there are significant advantages to using data from several sources. However using two or more data sources presents two types of linking and matching challenges:

- First, where the sources have a similar (and thus duplicated) coverage of the economy, the challenge is avoiding duplication without incurring omission.
- Second, where each source covers only a limited sector of the economy, such as finance and public administration, the challenge is dealing with the sector boundaries associated with each source.

6.25 If there is no common identification code, a probabilistic approach to linking can be adopted, based on similarities in the name and address or other characteristics, such as legal form and economic activity code, of the units in the different sources. This process is generally referred to as *matching*. However, it can lead to units being linked in error, i.e. *mismatches* (also called *false* or *incorrect matches*), as well as units not being linked, i.e., *missed matches*, which result in duplication. Experience over the years in several NSIs suggests that linking large datasets in the absence of a common identification code is difficult and requires substantial investment in software and systems. Matching is further discussed in Section 6.8.

6.2.6 Integration of the administrative units into the SBR

6.26 After administrative data have been acquired, the next step is to match them with the administrative units that are already covered in the SBR. This is relatively easy if a common identification number is available, and there are no errors in this number in either the administrative sources or the SBR. However,

there are occasions where an administrative unit is different over the various administrative sources.

6.27 The matching results should be quality checked. Checking may involve comparison of the values of characteristics such as economic activity code, size or legal form across the linked units. If these values are consistent, it is more likely that the link is correct. If not, further clerical checks may be needed, particularly where larger units are concerned. Also if additional data, such as turnover and imports/exports, are available from other administrative sources, these can also be used in the checking procedure.

6.28 It is also useful to periodically check administrative units that have not been matched and attempt to establish further links or to determine why they do not match. If the non-matched units do represent active economic units, the failure to match may be due to timing or scope differences between the administrative source and the SBR.

6.2.7 Transforming administrative units to statistical units

6.29 The final step is to build the statistical units, mainly the enterprise, on the basis of the administrative/legal units. In the normal case an enterprise coincides with a legal unit. This is the case when the legal unit is not controlled by another legal unit and thus has autonomy. Most enterprises belong to this category.

6.30 However, in cases where a legal unit is controlled by another legal unit, this unit may be viewed as an enterprise only if it has autonomy. Thus, legal units that belong to an enterprise group may not necessarily be considered as an enterprise and may need to be combined with another legal unit of that group to form an enterprise. Such cases are normally quite complex to handle and need usually some investigation, either using published information of that group or direct contact with the group head or decision centre in the country. The whole task of delineating of the statistical units based on legal units is called "profiling" and is further described in 6.6.4 (for the definition of the statistical units see chapter 4).

6.3 Administrative data sources

6.3.1 Typical administrative sources

6.31 Some of the commonly used data sources are listed below. The list is not complete; other data sources may be available.

- *Business registration/license register.* In some countries it is compulsory to register/license a business before trading. If available, this register can provide basic information on identification number, name, address and other contact information. This sort of register may be run by the tax authority, Chamber of Commerce, licensing office, or another public authority.

- *Tax registers.* Typically relating to VAT or employee income tax, tax registers may be a source of data on economic activity, turnover, and activity status.
- *Company/trade associations and chambers of commerce registers.* They can provide information on economic activity, legal form, and births and deaths.
- *Social security registers.* For businesses employing paid staff and making social contributions for employees, a social security register can provide identifying characteristics and stratification characteristics, such as legal form and number of employees.
- *Labour and employment registers.* Such registers can provide additional economic and social information about employees.
- *Government units registers.* Such registers are maintained by government finance departments for financial management of the public sector.
- *Non-profit unit registers.* Such registers are maintained by regulators, for example of charities, and typically contain name, address, other contact information, legal status and possibly economic activity code.
- *Industry association registers.* Such registers may contain name, address, other contact information and economic activity code. They are likely to be up to date, but only contain members of the association, so completeness may be an issue.
- *Agricultural administrative registers.* Such registers may cover agricultural holdings as distinct from businesses. They typically contain name, address, other contact information and indicators of economic activity and possibly size.
- *Water supply and electric association registers.* Such registers are maintained by public or private utility bodies. They typically contain name, address, other contact information and indicators of economic activity and possibly size.
- *Sector specific sources.* Sources include lists of schools from the education ministry, lists of hospitals from the health ministry, and lists of charities from regulators. While coverage is limited to a specific sector, within that sector it can be very comprehensive.
- *Central banks.* Central banks often have information for the financial sector, and on units engaged in foreign direct investments, from supervisory authorities.
- *Published business accounts.* Data from financial reports are particularly valuable as they contain information on shareholders and subsidiaries that is essential in delineating enterprise groups. NSIs are encouraged to explore the possibilities of

automatically extracting data from internal financial or management accounting systems of businesses, for example, using XBRL.

6.32 Besides providing names and contact information, these sources may also contain data that indicate whether or not a unit is active, its principal economic activity, its size and some other variables relevant for the SBR, such as employment and turnover.

6.3.2 Advantages of using administrative data

6.33 The advantages of using administrative data to supplement or replace survey data wherever possible are well known. They are particularly pertinent to SBR construction and maintenance, as outlined in the following paragraphs.

Coverage

6.34 Use of administrative data in place of survey data eliminates sampling error, removes or significantly reduces non-response and provides more accurate and detailed estimates for various sub-populations, e.g. small geographic areas. This is because administrative sources often give complete, or almost complete, coverage of a target population, whereas sample surveys often cover only a relatively small proportion directly.

6.35 Coverage is of great significance from an SBR viewpoint, given its aim of including all economically active units. Thus, the main advantage of using an administrative source is the level of coverage it provides, which is either complete, or, if not complete, at least well defined, so that it can be assessed against the target population.

Costs

6.36 Another advantage administrative data offer over survey data is comparatively lower cost. Surveys are expensive, particularly if they are conducted as censuses or involve the use of personal interviews. Administrative data are often available free of charge, or for the marginal cost of extraction, particularly if they originate from the public sector. Even if there is a charge, it is often cheaper to use administrative data than collect the same information by survey. Fewer staff are usually needed to process the data and there is no need for non-response follow-up.

6.37 The size and scope of an SBR makes it very difficult and expensive to populate and maintain solely by statistical data. A periodic economic census would be required to build an SBR, which would be very expensive, as would be the complementary intercensal maintenance procedures.

Response burden

6.38 Using data from administrative sources involves no additional response burden. While businesses usually understand the reasons for supplying data for registration and taxation purposes, even if they do not like doing so, they may see statistical data requests as an

extra, less necessary, burden. If they have already provided details to other government departments, they may become annoyed at receiving requests for similar information from the NSI.

6.39 An associated advantage is that the use of administrative data may, in some cases, allow statistics to be produced more frequently, with no extra cost to businesses.

Content and timeliness

6.40 The use of administrative sources may increase the quality of the SBR by providing access to more up-to-date information on key characteristics, such as:

- Name and address.
- Births and deaths of units, and the dates of these events.
- Economic activity code.
- Location.
- Size, in terms of number of employees and/or turnover.

6.41 As well as improving the timeliness of SBR data in the context of their use for survey frames, administrative data can improve the timeliness of statistics that are derived from the SBR. This is because surveys take time to plan, to design, to pilot questionnaires, to analyse the population and optimise the sample, to collect and process the data, etc. Access to a suitable administrative source via the SBR may provide a quicker and more efficient solution.

6.3.3 Disadvantages of using administrative data

6.42 The following paragraphs outline some of the problems encountered in using administrative data for the SBR and methods that may be used to address them.

Administrative and statistical definitions differ

6.43 Administrative data are collected for a specific administrative purpose, and the corresponding needs and priorities are likely to be different from those of the statistical system. Thus administrative units may not coincide with statistical units, and their characteristics may be differently defined. For example, the tax authorities may permit a single enterprise to have multiple value added tax (VAT) accounts. Turnover collected for VAT purposes may not include turnover related to the sales of VAT exempt goods and services, whereas the statistical system wants total turnover.

6.44 Similarly, the classification systems used within administrative sources may be different to those used by the NSI. For instance, a register within a food safety authority might classify a department store according to its food department. Even if the classification systems are the same, they may be applied differently, depending on the primary purpose of the administrative source.

6.45 Where classification systems are different, it is necessary to construct conversion matrices to map the codes in the administrative classification onto those required for the SBR. Such mappings may be one-to-one, one-to-many, or many-to-many. In the latter two cases, a probabilistic allocation can be used, but this is not desirable as it does not give accurate codes for the individual units, which is needed for the SBR in its primary role of providing survey frames.

Timeliness

6.46 Another common problem encountered when using data from administrative sources relates to timeliness. Administrative data may not be available in time to meet statistical needs, or may relate to a period which does not coincide with that required for statistical purposes. For example, the income tax year may not coincide with the calendar year required for structural business statistics.

6.47 Furthermore, there is generally some sort of lag between an event happening in the real economic world and it being recorded by an administrative source. This is then followed by a further lag before the administrative data become available to the SBR. Lags in recording births and deaths of enterprises are a major source of SBR coverage errors. If these lags can be measured, allowance can be made for them in statistics based on SBR data.

Changes to administrative regulations or procedures

6.48 Public sector administrative sources are set up for the purposes of administering regulations, for example collecting taxes or for monitoring government policies. This means that they are susceptible to political changes. If a policy changes, administrative sources may be affected in terms of coverage, definitions, thresholds, etc. They may even be abolished completely. Such changes may happen quite suddenly, with little warning. Thus, reliance on administrative sources always carries a certain degree of risk in terms of continuity of supply.

6.49 These risks can be mitigated by legal or contractual provisions, by obtaining early warning of impending changes through regular contact with those responsible for the sources, and by drawing up (and implementing where necessary) contingency plans.

6.3.4 Monitoring the quality of administrative data

Create knowledge of the administrative sources

6.50 Although administrative data have many advantages, it is important to invest time in understanding and monitoring their quality. It can be useful to compare sources in terms of coverage of their units and accuracy of their characteristics. The closeness of administrative units and characteristics to what are required for an SBR is an important factor in determining the quality of an administrative source. An SBR improvement survey may be required to determine

the values of certain characteristics for which values provided by administrative sources are not considered appropriate.

6.51 The starting point in assessing the quality of an administrative source is to build up a thorough knowledge of the source, including its primary purpose and the way the data are collected and processed. Thorough understanding of a source allows a more accurate assessment of its strengths and weaknesses. To help develop and document this knowledge, particularly for the benefit of future SBR staff, it is useful to develop some form of template to record information from the source on contacts, units, characteristics, quality and formats. As noted in Section 6.2.1, this information should be discussed with the administrative authorities and should be reviewed regularly.

Quality indicators

6.52 Regular monitoring of quality is important. A full range of quality indicators should be developed. Some examples of quality indicators are:

- The number and proportion of enterprises lacking a valid and complete economic activity code.
- The number and proportion of enterprises for which the activity status (active, dormant, dead, etc.) is unknown.
- The number and proportion of enterprises lacking a complete address.

6.53 More examples of good practice are provided in Annex D.

6.54 Such indicators may be compiled using feedback from surveys based on the SBR and/or from SBR improvement surveys.

Dealing with conflicts

6.55 Where an administrative source and the SBR do not agree, the reasons should be investigated with the aim of gaining a better understanding of SBR quality. Surveys may be used to investigate such discrepancies. They may be conducted, either specifically for this purpose or as part of some other data collection exercise. The investigations should help in determining the appropriate rules and priorities for updating from different sources.

6.56 There may also be conflict in data from different administrative sources, for example conflicting industry codes. Procedures and rules need to be developed to resolve these problems. This could involve verifying the data by contacting the enterprise, or undertaking analytical work to determine which source is most reliable. The goal is a set of general rules to deal with conflicts.

6.3.5 Legal issues and access to administrative sources

Access guaranteed through statistics act

6.57 The first step in use of administrative data is to ensure the NSI has access to the data. There are two aspects to gaining access: the first is the legal framework, the second is setting up and implementing the procedures for transfer of the data. While the legal framework for statistics varies from country to country, the preferred approach is for the NSI's right of access to administrative data to be enshrined in a general statistics act. Transfer of data is then simply a technical issue, with strict rules on security to be followed.

6.58 In many countries, the NSI does not have legislated access to data. There may even be confidentiality legislation preventing the transfer of administrative data to the NSI, even for statistical purposes. This can prove to be a major problem in establishing a good SBR, and one that may not be solved quickly. While the best approach is likely to vary according to the country, in any case the NSI should consider initiating and introducing changes to its statistical legislation to ensure access is guaranteed by law.

Formal agreements with administrative data suppliers

6.59 As previously noted in Section 6.2.1, whether or not the NSI has legislated access, the NSI should try to establish some form of formal agreement with administrative data providers. This can be a legally binding *contract* with a private sector supplier, or a *service level agreement* or a *memorandum of understanding* within a public sector provider. Such agreements should describe the rights and responsibilities of both parties, delivery flows, data confidentiality constraints, quality standards, frequency and format of data transfer, time frames for responding to queries and questions about the data, and procedures to follow in case of disputes.

Building relationships with administrative data suppliers

6.60 In addition to formal arrangements, good working relationships with administrative data providers should be developed. These can be achieved through regular contact, preferably face-to-face. It is usually worth devoting time to visiting suppliers to gain greater knowledge of their work, systems and constraints. This leads to a better appreciation of quality issues and can help to build goodwill and mutual understanding, which in turn helps to identify and resolve problems as they arise and before they escalate.

6.61 In some countries, administrative agencies may be willing to release data to the NSI. In other countries, there may be reluctance. It is very difficult to deal with such concerns, but possible approaches include the publication of clear limits and rules regarding the NSI's

use of data, thus ensuring businesses understand that sensitive data will not be fed back to other parts of government (particularly tax agencies).

6.62 It is advisable that the NSI should be coordinated when it approaches administrative sources: It should not be the case that different departments of the NSI approach the same source in order to receive more or less the same data. There should be coordination within the NSI. In this context the SBR, as the primary user of such data, has a specific role.

6.4 Using administrative sources in practice

6.63 This section provides guidelines on the steps to be taken when creating and maintaining an SBR primarily using administrative data. The precise sources used depend on what sources are available and on data access. The following basic principles apply whatever the sources.

6.4.1 Keeping administrative and statistical data separate

6.64 Data about administrative units received from administrative systems should be stored separately and not mixed with data for statistical units.

6.65 Even in the case of combined administrative and statistical registers (see Section 6.2.4) it is important to maintain clear procedures on data sources and updates to enable data received from administrative records and any statistical transformations to be auditable.

6.66 Experience shows that it is much easier to discuss unusual/anomalous SBR data either with the enterprises themselves (who should know what information has been given to the administrative sources) or with the administrative sources directly, rather than to try and solve the problems within the SBR. Keeping information separate allows specific problems to be discussed and concrete examples to be provided if investigation is required. The particular sources of data that should be used in the SBR, both administrative and statistical, depend upon the outcome of such investigations and the feedback received from the relevant sources.

6.67 Another possible reason for separating administrative and statistical data is where administrative data are being used for other statistical purposes. For example social security data may not only be used for SBR purposes, but also provide employment data for a variety of statistics.

6.4.2 Establishing unique identifiers

6.68 The establishment of unique identifiers (as further discussed in Section 11.4.10) is essential for the accurate maintenance of the SBR. Use of administrative numbers for statistical units may lead to added complexity in SBR systems, and introduce risks such as

duplication and omission of statistical units. Thus an identification numbering system should be created covering each type of statistical unit.

6.69 Where multiple administrative sources are used there may be several different identifiers, one for each source. In this case (as further discussed in Section 6.8) significant resources may be required to match and create unique enterprises using a combination of data from these sources. If the NSI has influence on the development of administrative data, it should promote use of a unique business number for all relevant administrative processes in the country. While this may not be easily achievable in practice, there are countries where it has happened.

6.70 Administrative units – if they are not already in one to one correspondence with legal units – should first be linked to the corresponding legal units. The most complex situation is the situation where a legal unit may have several administrative units within the same administrative source and hence have several identification numbers in that source. Furthermore, the legal unit may close one or more of these administrative units or ask for more to be created. It is important to handle these situations carefully. Usually, it is possible to identify the “main” unit in the administrative register as the one to be used to provide information about the legal unit.

6.71 It is important to see the difference between legal units that are economic producers and legal units that are non-productive but may own other legal units in an inter-corporate ownership structure. A legal unit is, by law, not legally responsible for another legal unit even though it may be part of the same enterprise group and control the other legal unit. Therefore it is vitally important to create all legal units within an enterprise group even though some of them may not be readily identified from administrative sources.

6.4.3 Using sector specific and additional sources

6.72 As previously noted, some trade associations, charity regulators and government ministries such as education and health may maintain data that are useful in providing coverage of certain sectors of the economy and/or additional content. However, care needs to be taken to ensure that coverage of the particular sector is complete, or if not, the gaps are understood, and that the possibilities of duplication and omission are carefully considered. Also, using multiple sources leads to challenges in maintenance and management. In some cases a source may be used to verify data from another source; in other cases a source may contribute directly to updating of statistical units.

6.73 Examples are:

- The characteristic *sales space* may be available from an industry association for retail trade enterprises.

- The characteristics *category/number of stars* and *number of beds* for hotels may be available from a tourism authority or bureau.
- Import/export data may be available from the customs authority.

6.74 Such administrative sources may be used in data confrontation as well as in validating statistical units. They can increase sampling efficiency (i.e., reduce the number of units sampled for the same level of accuracy of survey results) in two ways:

- The SBR includes links to units in these sources that can thus be consulted and that contain additional stratification characteristics.
- SBR data are of improved quality thanks to cross-checking with these sources.

6.75 Use of additional sources can also reduce the response burden on enterprises through increased sampling efficiency or by removing the need to conduct a survey altogether. The sources may even include additional units not present in the basic administrative sources, thus extending the coverage of the population of interest. However, the priority rules for determining the values of those characteristics which are available from more than one source need to be determined.

6.76 To ensure that a source is sufficiently well aligned with the SBR to be easily usable, it may be necessary to introduce additional criteria for its use, e.g., common unit identifiers, common definitions and classifications. The greater the coherence, the more useful the source is likely to be.

6.77 The rights and mechanics of access to administrative sources are also factors in facilitating their use. Many potentially useful sources are likely to exist, but they are of no actual use if the legal and technical means to link them to the SBR are not in place. Thus, where the data are deemed to be of considerable potential use, the NSI should invest resources to enable the appropriate links to the SBR to be made.

6.4.4 Thresholds

6.78 It is important for the SBR to have as complete coverage as possible, so care needs to be taken to understand the impact of thresholds. For example an enterprise may not be required to register for VAT if its turnover is below a certain threshold. If the threshold is low then the enterprises that are omitted because they are below the threshold have only a small impact on the overall estimates and their omission from the SBR is not an issue. However, if the threshold is quite high, as it is in some countries, then its impact on coverage and estimates is likely to be large. In this case additional sources and methods may be needed to supplement coverage provided by the source. This typically requires matching and linking the additional sources to the SBR to avoid duplication and minimise omission.

6.4.5 Handling changes in administrative sources

6.79 Changes in administrative sources, for example, changes in thresholds, definitions or computer systems, can lead to discontinuity in the data supply. Critical to managing this type of change is working very closely with the administrative source to gain a full understanding of the change in order to assess the impact on the SBR. If possible, it is good to measure the impact of the change, for example by processing the administrative data following the change in a copy of the SBR database so that the impact can be easily identified before regular processing takes place. Often there are unexpected consequences as a result of changes to administrative data, particularly when complex systems are involved.

6.80 Once an assessment of the impact has been made, the next step is to work actively with the survey staff who are the most important SBR users to assess the impact on their outputs.

6.81 Changes in tax thresholds are common and often just reflect the general inflationary environment in the country. This type of change may not have any real impact on coverage. Occasionally more radical changes in thresholds take place, reflecting a political decision, and the change may well be permanent. These types of changes have an impact on SBR coverage, particularly if a single source is used. It may be possible to estimate the impact on the population, for example by comparing unit birth trends before and after the change.

6.82 There are two possible methods of addressing changes so that they do not distort the statistics provided to users:

- Make an appropriate transformation in the SBR to minimise the discontinuity.
- Let the survey staff deal with the discontinuity through their own systems.

6.83 The method used must be clearly linked to the nature of the change. For example, a change in the classification systems in administrative data can best be handled by transforming data in the SBR, whereas an expansion of the SBR frame population caused by improved SBR coverage procedures may have to be handled by the survey staff.

6.5 Identifying statistical units

6.5.1 Identifying enterprises

6.84 In most countries with administrative registers, a legal unit of some sort is defined for SBR purposes. In many situations the legal unit is exactly, or a close approximation to, an enterprise. However, it is necessary, at least for the bigger units, especially for those being part of an enterprise group, to be able to create an enterprise in accordance with the enterprise definition, which does not require it to be in one to one correspondence with a legal unit.

6.85 Whatever the particular definition or profiling approach, the transformation from legal units to statistical units must follow well defined basic rules. The rules must make it clear how the administrative units from each source contribute to the updating of the statistical units, which source has data that may overrule or overwrite data from another source, and when the changes are deemed to have happened.

6.5.2 Identifying local units and/or establishments

6.86 Although in principle there is nothing to stop an SBR containing both local units and establishments, typically, for resource reasons, it contains one or the other. Local units/establishments enable regional economic analysis to be conducted.

6.87 Many of the usual administrative sources, such as VAT, refer to a legal unit as a whole or a specific part of it, but not necessarily at local unit/establishment level, so they cannot be used to populate local units/establishments in the SBR. In a few cases, local units are directly registered in administrative sources. Establishments never are. Therefore creating local units/establishment is a bigger problem than creating enterprises.

6.88 Some administrative sources are more useful than others. For example, employment tax systems, or social security databases, may hold information on the location of the employees – this information could be used to construct a local unit. Other sources may list business sites for business tax purposes. Whatever sources are used they have to be linked/matched to other data sources and/or the SBR.

6.89 As noted above, some administrative sources identify local units. If this is the situation, then it is important to establish whether these units are defined in the same way for all units covered by the administrative source and hence whether the data can be used as the basis for creating local units in the SBR.

6.90 In most countries there may be no suitable administrative data source and local units/establishments have to be established through a special SBR survey. As many small enterprises never have more than one site, it is best to stratify such a survey to ensure that all larger businesses are included whereas smaller businesses are sampled very lightly simply to estimate the probability of smaller businesses owning more than one site. The resulting data can be used to prepare a typical model for small businesses.

6.91 Even so, a survey is an expensive option and very burdensome for the enterprises, since a range of characteristics have to be collected for each local unit/establishment. To reduce burden and expense it may be possible to obtain the same information through an annual employment survey.

6.5.3 Converting from legal units to statistical units

6.92 The following paragraphs consider the processes that are necessary to transform data from administrative sources into creation and updating of statistical units and their characteristics in the SBR. The main processes are listed and explained briefly. They need to be adapted to fit the specific requirements of each country and source.

6.93 A principle adopted by several NSIs is that the SBR should serve as the gateway to administrative micro-data. This means that all administrative data at the level of individual enterprises (or local units) should be fed through, but not necessarily stored in, the SBR. This enables the units and characteristics in each administrative data source to be matched to those in statistical surveys based on the SBR.

6.94 Another approach is to use the administrative units as observation units and through the links in SBR to transform the administrative data into statistical data at the level of each individual enterprise or establishment.

6.95 The first step in processing generally involves checking the quality and coverage of the incoming administrative data to ensure some basic conditions are satisfied, for example that:

- The file is the expected size, i.e. it contains roughly the expected number of records and the required characteristics.
- The values of the characteristics are in valid formats and/or ranges, for example, dates are within a permissible range, text fields contain only text characters, numeric fields contain only numbers, and codes used are valid.
- There is good coverage of the main characteristics, for example, identity numbers, addresses and economic activity codes are present for all units.

6.96 If the preliminary analyses show that the incoming data are of sufficient quality, the next step is to transform them into updates to statistical units.

6.5.4 Transformation rules

6.97 An administrative source is unlikely to use exactly the same definitions of units and characteristics as the SBR, especially in the case of complex businesses. The *transformation* of administrative unit data into statistical unit data may therefore involve several steps, including, first, the creation of the corresponding statistical units (typically enterprise groups, enterprises, and establishments), followed by the derivation of their characteristics. Most enterprises have a one to one relationship with the corresponding administrative units. For large, complex enterprises the relationships are likely to be more complicated and based on the results of profiling by means of which related legal, administrative and operational units are identified and appropriate

statistical units are created. Derivation of the characteristics of statistical units usually involves creation and use of algorithms and/or look-up tables to convert values of classifications and other characteristics obtained from administrative units to those appropriate for statistical units. An example is the conversion of economic activity codes that are peculiar to a particular administrative source to the standard codes used in the SBR (ideally ISIC Rev. 4, or equivalent). The resulting *transformation rules* are dependent on the circumstances in each country.

6.98 As already mentioned, it is important to determine whether it is necessary to put in place an intermediate step in the transformation from administrative to statistical data, by creating legal units to which both administrative units and statistical units are linked. Even if this is done, it might be difficult to automate the transformation from legal unit to enterprise as, in certain cases, there may not be a one to one relationship.

6.5.5 On line delivery

6.99 In an ideal situation the SBR is updated with information on line, unit by unit. In this situation there is no validation of a file as such. However, individual units and characteristics still have to be validated and the same rules for creating and updating statistical units are still appropriate. Methods for identifying anomalies are dependent upon specific country processes and requirements and on SBR resources.

6.6 Statistical sources

6.6.1 Economic census

6.100 As discussed in Chapter 2 and Annex E1, an economic census can be conducted entirely independently of the SBR, or it can be SBR assisted. It can involve the use of some administrative data, or it can involve only administrative data. The description in this section refers to traditional economic census where trained field enumerators seek out each physically recognizable place of business and collect the necessary information by direct interview and observation.

6.101 Economic censuses are used in many developing countries and some developed countries, including the USA. An economic census is undoubtedly a very useful instrument when a country is initiating an economic statistics programme. It provides benchmark data. Also, in the past, especially in developing countries, it was a well-established method for the initial construction of an SBR. However, in this latter respect it has a number of drawbacks.

- In particular, it is a very resource intensive exercise and requires large inputs of manpower and time. Censuses, therefore, tend to be carried out infrequently, for example, once every five years.
- Intercensal updating of the SBR is thus required, which is itself costly. Once the census population of

enterprises and establishments has been identified, additional data sources have to be utilised to maintain it. As some units have been found by enumeration and are not registered, administrative sources are not sufficient. There has to be continued enumeration in selected areas. This is particularly resource intensive in developing countries where high levels of births and deaths of companies may occur.

6.102 In addition to its high cost, the enumeration approach has the disadvantage of not being able to identify and document non-recognizable places of business, or enterprises without a fixed location, for example, web-based businesses, or individual entrepreneurs such as electricians and plumbers, providing services at locations other than their homes.

6.103 In summary, economic censuses are not recommended as a means of establishing an SBR. Rather the converse is true; an economic census should draw its basic frame from the SBR, possibly supplementing this by an area sample. However, if there is no reliable administrative source whatever, a periodic economic census is appropriate.

6.6.2 Feedback from enterprise and establishment surveys

6.104 Feedback from enterprise surveys is a vital mechanism for updating the SBR as it provides information on changes in contact address, changes in the economic stratification characteristics, deaths, etc. Feedback from enterprise surveys has the advantage that it is available at statistical unit level, that is, for establishments or enterprises. Therefore, there should be close contact between survey staff and SBR staff to ensure the SBR is updated with survey results. Survey staff should play an active role in SBR data quality management.

6.105 Survey feedback has its limitations. An SBR updated exclusively by feedback from a traditional sample survey would have serious deficiencies. First, it would lack new units as surveys are not designed to find births. Second, the population of enterprises would not be fully maintained as feedback would be coming only from the sampled units.

6.106 Furthermore, even for the sampled units, use of survey feedback from sample surveys introduces the possibility of feedback bias as SBR updates are provided only for the selected enterprises. There are no technical problems with using data for enterprises that have been sampled with certainty – typically the large ones. However, for medium-size and small enterprises that are sampled with probability less than one in repeating surveys, there is a potential for causing bias in future survey samples. In this situation, updates have to be very carefully applied.

6.107 For example, suppose that when a particular quarterly survey is first conducted, the sample is found

to contain 30% dead enterprises (this is not an improbable figure). Furthermore, suppose that, based on this sample information, the dead enterprises are removed from the SBR, and that the survey sample for the next quarter comprises the 70% live units from the previous sample plus a replacement of the 30% drawn afresh from the SBR. This new sample will contain about 9% (30% of 30%) dead units. Thus, it will no longer be representative of the population of dead enterprises on the SBR, which is still nearly 30%, assuming that the survey sample is a relatively small proportion of the population. There are proportionally too many live enterprises in the sample. If the survey weighting procedures do not take this into account (by making allowance for the dead enterprises that were originally found in the sample), the result will be an upward bias in the estimates. Furthermore, the bias will increasingly worsen with each survey repetition.²²

6.6.3 SBR improvement surveys

6.108 SBR updating information that cannot be obtained from surveys, or from the administrative sources on which the SBR is based, can be obtained by specific *SBR improvement surveys* (also termed *nature-of-business surveys* or *proving surveys* or *SBR control surveys*) conducted by SBR staff.

6.109 Given limitations in resources it is unlikely that all units in the SBR can be maintained equally. It is usually necessary to focus improvement surveys on specific strata to measure and improve coverage and quality.

6.110 One possible strategy for keeping the SBR up to date is to conduct SBR sample surveys every year in which the biggest, the medium sized and the smallest units are sampled 100%, 50%, and 10% respectively. This practice helps keep values of the characteristics of the units up to date in an efficient way. Such surveys may also be specially designed to measure SBR accuracy, for example, to measure errors in classification by economic activity, or by size, or to estimate the proportion of falsely active units, as further discussed in Chapter 10.

6.6.4 Profiling

6.111 *Profiling* is the practice of using company accounts, often accompanied by interviews with senior enterprise officials, to build and define the structure of enterprises, mainly those involved in large complex enterprise groups. The resulting *profiles* are used to produce a reporting structure appropriate for the surveys conducted by the NSI. Profiling usually involves establishing contact with the enterprise being profiled to develop a good understanding of its structure. It is possible, however, to complete smaller profiles simply using published accounts.

6.112 While profiling is not a primary source of data, it does provide valuable information on the larger and more complex enterprises that individually make a significant contribution to the country's GDP. It is especially important in identifying enterprise groups, as discussed in Chapter 4.3.

6.113 Profiling is often organized so that each individual SBR profiler has an assignment of large, complex enterprise groups for which he/she is responsible for reviewing and updating. When profilers react to signals from various sources on enterprise that may need updating this is referred to as *reactive profiling*. Profilers also periodically perform *proactive profiling* to augment reactive profiling. For example, they may routinely arrange to re-profile every large enterprise once every three years. Since large enterprises can grow and change dynamically, considerable resources may be needed to maintain the accuracy and relevance of the SBR in this respect.

6.114 The first step in profiling is to determine the criteria by which to identify the enterprises to be profiled. Profiling is usually focussed on large complex enterprise groups with multiple activities for which survey reporting is difficult. After determining the profiling criteria, a programme of regular updates over, say, a three to four year period, should also be established. There is a balance to be struck between the resources available and the amount of profiling that can be conducted, and this needs to be considered when determining the criteria. Resources should also be planned to deal with emerging issues that occur outside the routine reviews, i.e., reactive profiling. For example, a major merger might require a profile to be conducted ahead of the scheduled regular review.

6.115 The next step is to gather preparatory material. This should include records on all legal units within the enterprise group, the reporting history for surveys, and SBR data such as employment, turnover and classification, etc., for the enterprise group as currently defined. These data should be examined for consistency and to help identify reporting issues. As this process is labour intensive, it is best to create a standard template for the data required and to automate the extraction of this information from the SBR.

6.116 Further background information should be gathered by searching enterprise websites and examining annual accounts and reports. In simpler cases it may be possible to conduct a profile simply on the basis of this material, but for complex cases it is invariably necessary to meet with representatives from the enterprise.

6.117 Following this preparation, contact is made with the controlling enterprise in the enterprise group (the *global group head* or *global decision centre*) and a visit arranged if necessary. Through discussion it will be possible to identify the main trading (i.e., active) enterprises within the enterprise group and to agree a

²² Example drawn from Section 9.4, Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa.

mutually acceptable reporting structure covering these enterprises. The aim is to settle on a structure with enough detail for the statistical surveys while minimising the respondent burden for the enterprise group. Specially trained staff are required to negotiate with the enterprise as they will typically be talking to top management in the enterprise – the chief accountant and/or the company secretary. Ideally, these staff will have a good understanding of the business processes and accounting practices, as well as the collection of economic data.

6.7 Combining administrative and statistical sources

6.118 To build a comprehensive SBR, a combination of administrative and statistical sources is recommended. Administrative sources identify enterprises, but may not include all of the required characteristics. Statistical sources do not identify new units but provide additional or more accurate characteristics. A strategy of using administrative and statistical sources in combination should be developed and employed. For example, administrative sources can be used to identify legal units and transform their data to form enterprises, while local units or establishments can be identified by a survey of the enterprises, as can characteristics missing from administrative sources.

6.119 Using administrative and statistical data in combination is illustrated by the following examples.

- Suppose that an enterprise is thought to have only one establishment but employee data from an administrative source indicate that half of the workforce lives in an area far away from the identified establishment. This may be a signal that there is a second establishment, or that the employee data have been linked to the wrong enterprise.
- Suppose turnover from a VAT source does not correspond to the turnover for the same enterprise from an import/export administrative source. This may be a signal that some part of the enterprise is missing, or the links to one or other of the administrative sources are wrong.
- Suppose there is feedback from a survey indicating that the responding (legal) unit no longer has any economic activity. This may be a signal that the activity has taken over by another legal unit.

6.120 Statistical sources can also be used to estimate missing characteristics. For example if an administrative source only contains employee numbers and industry code, it may be possible to estimate turnover using turnover/employee value for similar units.

6.8 Record linkage in creation and maintenance of the SBR

6.121 Usually, the main sources for the maintenance of the SBR are administrative data, such as data from taxation, social security or other administrative sources depending on their availability and adequacy. If these administrative sources have separate identification systems and if no identifier known to the SBR is provided, then record linkage methods have to be applied in order to be able to use the administrative data in the SBR.

6.122 This section provides a guide to the theory and practice of record linkage. It is also important to note that there are commercial software products for record linkage. While these can be expensive, their use may be cost effective compared to the investment required to build sufficient functionality in the NSI.

6.123 Before any record linkage method is applied it is necessary to analyse the administrative source to determine the quality of the source and whether it is useful for SBR purposes.

6.8.1 Basic approach

6.124 *Record linkage* is the linking of a data record in one data source with one or more data records in another data source. In the case of the maintenance of the SBR it is the linking of one data record in the SBR with one or more records in the administrative data/registers, or vice versa. The challenge is to link records belonging to the same unit (whether this is a legal unit, enterprise, local unit, etc.) in different sources. If two records for the same unit are brought together this is called a *match*²³.

6.125 Where a common identifier is not available, identification of a match has to be based on a *similarity measure* that is computed using characteristics that are available both in the SBR and in the administrative source. The characteristics used are those that help identify a unit uniquely, typically name and address, and possibly other characteristics like legal form. The choice of characteristics may be different for different sources. Only a limited number of characteristics should be selected, namely those that most help in identifying units and that are least likely to be in error.

6.126 It has to be taken into account that there may be errors in the data for units in either or both the administrative source and the SBR. For example, names may be misspelled or addresses may be out of date.

²³ An alternative is known as a *statistical match* and is defined as the linkage of records for similar units rather than for the same units. Statistical matching is ordinarily employed when the files being matched are probability samples with few or no units in common; thus, linkage for the same unit is not possible for most units. For more information see Thomas N. Herzog, Fritz J. Scheuren, William E. Winkler: *Data Quality and Record Linkage Techniques*, Springer 2007, page 81.

Prior to matching, the quality of the characteristics of potential use for matching should be analysed in both sources.

6.127 Another problem stems from the fact that the data in the administrative source may not be recorded in a format that is standardized and comparable with that used in the SBR. The length of the fields in the data records may be different, abbreviations may be used or one characteristic may be combined with another one, e.g. the legal form of a unit may be part of the name or in a separate field. Therefore, parsing the format in the administrative source has to be done first and is a very crucial step before matching methods can be applied. If not, the quality of the matching results will be lower than it could be.

6.128 It should also be mentioned that data linkage is quite computationally intensive: each data record in one data source needs to be compared with all the data records in the other source. Even in case of only a few hundreds of data records in each source this results in tens of thousands of comparisons. Therefore a matching run may need hours of processing time. This can be drastically reduced if *blocking methods* are applied (as further described below).

6.8.2 Types of matching

6.129 There are two basic types of matching: *deterministic* and *probabilistic*. The methods are very similar and are based on the computation of numerical values expressing the similarity of a record pair.

- In case of deterministic matching, a *similarity measure* (or *distance function*) is defined. A unit of an SBR and a record of an administrative source is said to be a match if the two records have a high similarity for each element within the collection of identifying characteristics called the *match key*.
- In probabilistic record linkage (formalized by Fellegi and Sunter²⁴) a so-called *likelihood ratio* is computed. The value obtained is compared with two thresholds: a *lower threshold*, below which all values are defined as *non-match*, and an *upper threshold*, above which all values are defined as *match*. The *grey area* between lower and upper thresholds defines *potential matches*.

6.130 Although probabilistic record linkage is mathematically elegant and has been successfully applied, its use in practice is limited by the fact that there is no implementation with a broad field of application in the standard statistical software packages. Deterministic record linkage is easier to implement and can result in equal or even better quality than probabilistic linkage.

6.8.3 Standardizing

6.131 Matching should be an automated process as far as possible because of the large number of comparisons to be made. To achieve satisfying results with an automated matching algorithm the values of the characteristics being compared should not be formatted differently in the two sources. Before text characteristics are compared they must be standardised and parsed. Without standardization, many true matches would be erroneously designated as non-matches because the common identifying attributes would not have sufficient similarity due to differences in formatting. Standardization involves consistency of spelling, consistency of coding and elimination of obscure values.

6.132 Standardization of text is essentially a statistical process. It is usually done by computing the frequency of all words in sources. If the frequency of a string (like 'corp', 'inc', 'Ltd') is very different in both registers, the string can be deleted from both sources, or abbreviated identically in both sources, or replaced by a synonym in at least in one source. An example of parsing is to ensure that all parts of a name are in the same order (e.g. family name, first name, title).

6.133 Before starting automated matching, the contents of each text field must be analysed and the following questions must be answered:

- Are different languages used in the different sources? Are there combinations of letters that have a special phonetic value?
- Does the name field contain personal names, company names or both?
- Does the address field contain street names, city names or both?
- Are there any other peculiarities in a text field, e.g., the string 'comp' precede every company name?

6.134 It is pertinent to consider how the data in the sources were obtained. Phonetic variations are likely to be found in data collected by phone, whereas typographical mistakes are probable in manually completed questionnaires. For standardizing purposes the following operations may be useful:

- Deleting blanks at the beginning or the end of a text field.
- Converting lowercase characters to uppercase.
- Deleting village name from the field for street name.
- Converting special characters.
- Converting Latin numerals to Arabic numerals.
- Moving the most crucial word to the beginning of the text field.

²⁴ Fellegi, I.P. & A.B. Sunter, "A theory for record linkage" in Journal of the American Statistical Association, 64, pp. 1183-1210, 1969.

- If corresponding text fields (e.g. company name) have different lengths, truncating the longer to the shorter length.

6.8.4 Matching of text strings

6.135 Given the aim is to match two records (that do in fact refer to the same unit) by comparing text fields like name and address, if one or both of the two text fields has a typographical mistake, then the matching process will fail unless account is taken of the possibility of typographical errors. Thus, records and their textual characteristics (such as name and address) are considered as strings of alphanumeric characters and *string comparator metrics* are used to compare the two strings and to determine how much alike they are to each other. Usually the values of the metrics lie in the interval from zero to one, with one indicating perfect agreement and zero indicating high dissimilarity.

6.136 There are many different possible string comparator metrics. Jaro²⁵ introduced a metric that accounts for the lengths of the two strings and for the types of errors that human beings typically make when writing or typing alphanumeric strings, like insertions, omissions and transpositions. (By *transposition* is meant that a character from one string is in a different position on the other string. For example, in comparing "company" to "copmany", the "m" and "p" are transposed.) Winkler²⁶ augmented Jaro's metric by giving more influence to the characters in the beginning of a string. An extension of the Jaro metric is the Edit or Levenstein metric. It is computed as the minimal number of edit operations (substitutions, imputations and deletions) which are necessary to convert one string to another string divided by the maximum of the two string lengths.

6.137 Another important and widely used family of measures is based on N-grams. In this case the characters themselves are not compared but the sets of all N-grams of the strings. Usually either sets of all substrings of two (bigrams) or three (trigrams) successive characters are compared. The similarity measure is the total number of bigrams or trigrams that are in common divided by the average number of bigrams or trigrams in the two strings.

- For example: The bigrams of the string "Welcome" are "_W", "We", "el", "lc", "co", "om", "me" and "e_", for "Welcome" the 4th and 5th bigrams are different, being "lk" and "ko". Thus the measure is 6/8=0.75. As an option, the first and last bigrams containing

the blank can also be left out, giving a measure of 4/6=0.67.

6.8.5 Blocking

6.138 If in matching the SBR with an administrative source the numbers of record pairs is so high that it is not feasible to compute string comparator metrics for all possible pairs, then consideration should be given to blocking. *Blocking* is a method that reduces the number of pairs of records that are examined. In blocking, the files from the two sources are partitioned into mutually exclusive and exhaustive blocks. Comparisons are restricted to record pairs within the same blocks. Blocking is generally implemented by partitioning the two files based on the values of one or more characteristics. For example, if both files have a postal code field, the pairs to be compared might be restricted to those records whose postal codes agree. This would be an example of regional blocking. The advantage of blocking is that the number of comparisons may be greatly reduced. The disadvantage is that record pairs disagreeing on postal code are automatically classified as non-matches. Thus, if a record in one of the files has an erroneous postal code then it will never be matched even if there is a record for the same unit in the other file.

6.139 This situation can be mitigated by iterating the matching process with a different blocking scheme, or even a sequence of blocking schemes. Suppose the first iteration used postal code as the sole blocking item and the second iteration used company name. Then failure to match due to an erroneous postal code would be somewhat offset by the possibility of matching during the second iteration. Further iterations could be made until the analyst felt that it was unlikely that matches would be missed because of errors in the blocking fields. In addition to sub sequential blocking and multiple blocking there are other techniques that may be used, such as *sorted neighbourhood method*, *filtering*, *clustering and bigram indexing*, all of which aim to reduce the search space of candidate record pairs.

6.8.6 Computing overall similarity measure

6.140 The calculation of a string comparator metrics for all compared pairs of records is usually done by a computer program. The metrics are computed separately and are combined afterwards, typically using a weighted sum, where the weights are defined according to the quality of the fields. The analyst has to define a lower and upper threshold for this overall similarity measure. Pairs of records with a value above the upper threshold are considered as matches, whereas pairs of records with a similarity measure below the lower threshold are considered as non-matches. When the metric lies between the lower and upper limit that pair has to be clerically reviewed to determine if it is a match or non-match.

- The higher the upper threshold the smaller the number of false matches.

²⁵ Jaro, M.A., "UNIMATCH –a computer system for generalized record linkage under conditions of uncertainty" Spring Joint Computer Conference, 1972, AFIPSL-Conference Proceedings, 40, pp.523-530, 1972.

²⁶ Winkler, W:E, "String comparator metrics and enhanced decision rules in the Fellegi-Sunter model of record linkage" Proceedings of the Section on Survey Research Methods, American Statistical Association, pp. 354-359, 1990.

- The lower the lower threshold the smaller the number of missed matches.
- On the other hand the further apart the thresholds the more manual work is required.

6.141 As manual work is time consuming and therefore expensive the choice of thresholds depends on balancing the impacts of false matches and of missed matches with the SBR resources available.

6.9 Other data sources

6.142 In addition to the data sources discussed in previous sections, there are commercial sources. Furthermore new sources are emerging associated with increased computer power and on-line form filling, or filing, of data to administrative systems, as outlined in the following paragraphs.

Telephone directories

6.143 Telephone directories or special listings prepared by telephone companies can be useful in adding or confirming SBR data. They should not be used as sources of new enterprises.

Payroll, taxation and accounting service providers

6.144 Payroll, taxation and accounting service providers provide enterprises with services that involve paying an enterprise's staff and/or making returns to the taxation authorities on its behalf and/or managing its accounts. It may be possible for the NSI to build agreements with such service providers and their client enterprises that allow the service providers to provide data for the enterprises directly to the NSI. This saves the enterprises from the burden of survey questionnaires and provides faster and more efficient data flow to the NSI. Identification of the relevant enterprises is required. However, it may still be necessary to contact the enterprises directly to obtain information that the service providers cannot provide, for example economic activity classification.

Internet search

6.145 The Internet may be useful as a supplementary source of data, but cannot currently be reliably used for identifying new enterprises. However, it can provide information on the economic activity, on the production profile, on up-to-date addresses, etc., so is becoming an important source.

Commercial data providers

6.146 There are a number of commercial enterprises that provide global, regional and domestic company information. These organisations serve businesses, allowing them to make informed decisions, e.g. credit decisions, marketing etc. Their data are also valuable for maintaining an SBR, in particular by providing information on enterprise group structures.

6.147 Data from commercial data providers are, by definition, based on publicly accessible information and could also be obtained directly by the NSI. However, the equivalent collection, matching and processing within the NSI would require significant resources and may well prove to be more expensive than purchasing these tailor made data.

Big data

6.148 *Big data* are defined as large, possibly unstructured datasets that are potentially available in real time. The opportunities for using big data are still being developed. So far no practical experience in their use in the SBR has been identified. In the future, however, big data may reveal opportunities for developing additional sources for the SBR. Accessing big datasets, which are often owned by private businesses such as mobile telephone operators or internet providers, might be a challenge. Structuring and editing the data might also require substantial investment but be worthwhile if accompanied by significant benefits in terms of coverage and timeliness.

Chapter 7

Maintenance of the SBR

7.1 Introduction

7.1 Whereas Chapter 6 describes the data sources used in SBR *construction*, this chapter discusses *maintenance* of the various types of statistical units and their characteristics. The key objective of maintenance is to update the coverage and content of the SBR, taking into account continuity and stability rules, according to a well-defined calendar, and in as timely a fashion as the information sources allow. The basic aim is to provide economic surveys with sampling frames that are accurate and as up to date as possible.

7.2 Section 7.2 presents key aspects of the SBR maintenance strategy. It discusses the data sources, in particular administrative sources, and how to deal with conflicting information. It describes the practice of allocating enterprises to *maintenance groups* for maintenance purposes, with different procedures for each group according to the size and complexity of the enterprises it contains. It discusses the timing of maintenance in relation to the production of survey frames.

7.3 The various types of changes that can occur to statistical units in the live register, and how they are handled, are described in Sections 7.3 and 7.4. The former section deals with *births*, *deaths* and *changes in linkages* of statistical units. The discussion is presented in terms of a typology of *demographic events*. The latter section discusses all other changes, i.e., changes in the *characteristics* of statistical units.

7.4 *Continuity rules* for determining whether a statistical unit is deemed to have *continued* despite significant changes (for example, of ownership, size, economic activity and/or location), or to have died and been replaced by another unit, are discussed in Section 7.5, as are *stability rules* (sometimes called *resistance rules*) that restrict the speed with which changes of characteristics are applied in order to inhibit unwanted oscillations in values.

7.5 The final section introduces the distinction between *changes* that actually occur in the real economic world and *corrections of errors* caused by inadequacies in SBR procedures, and it discusses the sources and treatment of errors.

7.6 The primary references used in developing this chapter are the Eurostat (2010) *Business Registers Recommendations Manual* (Chapters 12-18), the AfDB *Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in*

Africa (Chapter 10), and the Eurostat/OECD (2007) *Manual on Business Demography Statistics* (Chapter 4).

7.2 SBR maintenance strategy

7.7 “A country’s economy is constantly changing – new businesses are formed, existing businesses merge, change production activities or location, go bankrupt, etc. To ensure that enterprises (and other standard statistical units) in the SBR remain aligned with and representative of legal units and their productive activities, these changes have to be detected and the SBR has to be correspondingly updated. This process is referred to as *SBR maintenance*”²⁷.

7.8 Maintenance implies constant updating of the SBR in terms of coverage and content. New statistical units have to be identified and recorded without over-coverage, under-coverage, or duplication. Changes in the values of the characteristics of existing statistical units have to be identified and recorded. The dates of changes should be known and recorded. Ideally, the information should be collected just once.

7.9 The maintenance strategy should take into account the following aspects:

- The sources of information - administrative sources, feedback from surveys and SBR improvement surveys - and rules for dealing with conflicting information.
- The maintenance groups into which statistical units in the SBR are divided for efficiency and cost effectiveness of maintenance procedures.
- The time dimension - timing of the updates, the need for continuity and stability rules, and use of the historical register.

7.2.1 Use of administrative sources

7.10 In terms of number of updates to statistical units, administrative sources are the major contributors to SBR maintenance. It is recommended that one administrative source is identified as the primary source for construction and maintenance purposes. The source chosen should be the one that provides the best possible balance of coverage, content, timeliness and accuracy. In using additional (secondary) administrative source(s), care must be taken that no duplication of

²⁷ African Development Bank, 2012, Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa, Chapter 5.7.

units arises. Duplication can most easily be avoided if the secondary sources use the same unit identification scheme as the primary source, or have no overlap with the primary source. An example of the latter case is where the primary source is a tax register and the secondary source is a list of government departments. In the absence of common identification scheme, or coverage that is known to be complementary, records in a secondary source must be matched to those in the primary source and links established between records referring to the same unit, thus avoiding creating duplicates of that unit.

7.2.2 Use of feedback from surveys

7.11 Feedback of changes in frame data from previously conducted economic surveys is a valuable source of updates to statistical units. By design, the first few questions asked by any economic survey should constitute a check of the values of basic characteristics (such as name, address, contact information, and activity status) of the unit recorded in the survey frame. Inactive or dead units should be identified. Subsequent questions may collect updated versions of economic activity codes and size measures.

7.12 There are no conceptual problems in updating the SBR with data for any statistical unit that has been sampled with certainty. However, for medium-size and small enterprises that have been sampled with probability less than one, there is potential for causing bias in future survey samples, as described in Section 6.6.2. Thus, it is recommended that feedback from surveys about characteristics (such as economic activity and size) that are used for sampling statistical units should not be used to update units in the SBR that were not selected with certainty. Instead, the information can be used trigger further maintenance operations and/or can be taken into account in future repetitions of the survey, for example by not trying to contact units that are known to be dead.

7.2.3 Use of SBR improvement surveys

7.13 The objectives of *SBR improvement surveys* (also called *nature of business surveys*, *SBR proving surveys* and *SBR control surveys*) are to verify the current values of key characteristics and to obtain missing values. Such surveys are conducted by the SBR on a continually repeated basis, with sample sizes matching the SBR resources available. The aim in selecting the samples is to have maximum beneficial impact in terms of SBR quality improvement. There is no focus on estimation. The total sample size over a year is determined by taking into account the frequency with

which changes occur in the economic world, the quality of data received from the administrative sources, the quality of data currently in the SBR, and the resources available.

7.2.4 Profiling

7.14 As discussed in Section 6.6.4, the aim of profiling is to produce an appropriate statistical and reporting structure for large and complex enterprises. Profiling can be *reactive*, i.e., in response to a signal from any of the various sources that there has been a change. It can also be *proactive*, typically involving a re-profiling program in which every large enterprise is re-profiled every so many years.

7.2.5 Dealing with conflicting information

7.15 As evidenced in the previous paragraphs, the SBR is updated from a range of sources, several of which may provide values for the same unit and characteristic. When this happens there may be a conflict in the values. This raises the question of which source and value to use. The answer requires a thorough understanding of each source - the methods of data collection and validation, the time of collection, and the relative importance assigned to that characteristic by the source. This understanding then allows the sources to be prioritized, either with respect to all units, or differently for various categories of units.

7.16 Once priorities have been determined for each characteristic, the next step is to apply them to SBR updating procedures. This can be done in several ways. The most reliable method is to record the source and date of recording of the value of a characteristic and to ensure that the updating algorithms specify what combinations of source and date can result in the value being overwritten subsequently. Date is important because it allows for the possibility that a new value from a lower priority source can overwrite the existing value from a higher priority source if the information is significantly more recent.

7.2.6 Maintenance groups

7.17 The amount of maintenance effort devoted to a statistical unit should be in accordance with its size and potential impact upon published statistics, and should take into account its propensity to change, and the sources of updating information. Thus, statistical units should be divided by size and potential impact and propensity to change into maintenance groups, each of which is subject to a particular set of updating procedures. Three examples follow.

Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) Business Register: maintenance groups

- *ABS maintained enterprises.* These enterprises are maintained by the SBR staff by profiling, SBR survey, business survey feedback and ad hoc investigations, as appropriate according to their size.
- *Australian Tax Office (ATO) maintained enterprises.* These enterprises are currently maintained entirely by taxation data from the ATO. However, the capability to include ABS sourced information has recently been introduced into the SBR with a view to exercising this option to improve data quality in the future.

Swiss Business Register: maintenance groups

- *Enterprises subject to profiling.* All enterprises with more than 10 local units, or more than 100 employees, are included in the *profiling group*. The profiling staff contact them directly every quarter to gather structural information and employment data.
- *Enterprises with only one local unit, including small businesses.* These are maintained using updating information from administrative sources and economic survey feedback.
- *Enterprises subject to light profiling.* All other enterprises are included in the *light profiling group*. The profiling staff contact them annually by internet survey to gather structural information and employment data.

This maintenance strategy is dictated by the need to determine employment for all local units as regional distribution of employment is an essential component of Swiss business statistics. All enterprises with only one local unit are included in the SBR improvement survey, which also enables quality control of activity code for the whole SBR.

Statistics South Africa Business Register: maintenance groups

- *Enterprises subject to profiling.* This set of enterprises is maintained by profiling operations. Indications of changes from administrative sources or from business surveys are used as signals indicating the need for re-profiling. The enterprises are not included in SBR improvement surveys, nor are they subject to ad hoc investigations.
- *All other enterprises.* All other enterprises are maintained using updating information from administrative sources and economic survey feedback, which is supplemented as needed by information gathered by SBR improvement surveys and ad hoc investigations.

7.2.7 Updating schedule

7.18 The SBR is updated from several sources of information, each having a given periodicity, coverage and content. This must be taken into account in building a coherent maintenance system. The schedule for maintenance of the SBR and production of frozen frames should be coordinated with the supplies of data from administrative and statistical sources, with the production of frames for the surveys using the SBR, and with the publication (if any) of data directly from the SBR. The schedule indicates to users the likely variations in SBR coverage and content over time.

7.19 The SBR should be updated on a daily basis. Potential updates cannot be allowed to backlog. It is for this reason often referred to as the *live register*. The timing of the supplies of updating data should be discussed and coordinated with the sources. The

production of frozen frames can then be undertaken in a systematic and controlled way, taking into account the whole economic statistics program, and, in particular, the conflicting demands from structural surveys (that want the most up to date information available for the reference period for which the survey is being conducted) and sub-annual surveys (which want stability across reference periods so that the effects of maintenance do not appear as artefacts in survey estimates of change).

7.20 A frozen frame is never directly updated. A preliminary version of a new frozen frame is compared with the previous version. Unexpected changes are analysed. If they turn out to be due to errors in the SBR, then these errors are corrected and the production of the frozen frame is repeated.

Statistics Canada

Statistics Canada produces SBR reports and also allows survey staff to see preliminary versions of their survey frames after key update processes have been completed each month.

Swiss Federal Statistical Office

A working group on economic classifications produces reports for the users on important updates in economic activity classification.

Statistics Canada's Business Register Journal

In order to keep track of the reasons for the changes, the *Business Register Journal* is used to store the reason for the change when a profiler, SBR user or updater performs an update. The Journal entry is created automatically with a link to the unit(s) being updated when the update is performed. The entry contains auto-generated scripts of the event or update, and allows for the profiler or updater to complement this information with additional information. All of the information in the Journal is in addition to the update log in which the following information is kept: previous information/value, new information/value, date and source of update, and for some events, the *effective date*, i.e., the date the event actually occurred in the real world.

7.21 Staff of surveys using the SBR as the source of their survey frames should be aware of the SBR production calendar and they should be informed about any particularly significant updates in SBR coverage or content occurring since production of the previous frozen frame that may significantly affect their survey frames.

7.2.8 Historical register

7.22 As described in Chapter 2, the historical register is an SBR output that enables the reconstruction of the history of the units. It supports:

- Obtaining information about births, deaths and continuity of units.
- Obtaining information about size development (how fast a unit or group of units is growing, through what kind of economic activity).
- Analysing changes in the characteristics of units, for example, in location, judicial and financial links, and economic activity.
- Reconstructing the state of the SBR as of a past date or reference period.

7.23 As a prerequisite, the dates of all demographic events and changes in values of characteristics should be recorded. If this is not possible, dates for core changes should be recorded.

7.24 In principle, a historical register can be derived and maintained in three different ways:

1. The SBR is considered to be established afresh at the beginning of each year. During the year, all changes that each unit undergoes and the dates and reasons for those changes are recorded. At the end of the year, the SBR is copied and stored. Together with the change records this copy becomes a historical register.

2. The snapshots of the SBR taken at regular intervals (typically quarterly or annually) provide a series of pictures of the structure of the register. From each of these snapshots, the numbers of units and their characteristics at a specific point in time can be obtained.
3. The SBR records and maintains complete information about changes as they occur on a continuous basis. Each change is date stamped with the date it was recorded in the SBR and the date it occurred in the real world. This allows populations of units and their characteristics to be constructed for any point in time. It also provides information about delays in registering changes. Storing the *reasons* for the changes is also useful but is much more difficult. As a compromise, some changes can be automatically identified and categorised on the basis of a set of automated rules and procedures.

7.3 Handling births, deaths and linkage changes of statistical units²⁸**7.3.1 Demographic events**

7.25 A *demographic event* is defined as an event that has an impact on the existence of a statistical unit, or on links between statistical units.

7.26 A demographic event is based on changes in the existence of *production factors*, or in their distribution, within and among statistical units. It may involve the continuity (survival) of a unit over time or its discontinuity (death). It may also be accompanied by changes to the values of certain characteristics, such as size or type of economic activity.

²⁸ This Section is based on the Chapters 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16 of the Business Registers Recommendations Manual (Eurostat, 2010) and on Chapter 4 of the Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Eurostat – OECD, 2007).

7.27 Figure 7.1 presents a general typology of demographic events relating to enterprises and enterprise groups, based on two distinct types of events:

- Events involving existential changes, i.e. the emergence or disappearance of combinations of production factors.
- Events involving distributional changes, i.e. changes in the distribution of production factors between enterprises.

7.28 The typology reflects the importance of the enterprise as the core statistical unit.

7.3.2 Demographic events, continuity and information sources for enterprises

Information sources

7.29 Most events are detected after reception of signals, typically changes in the administrative data that

are used to maintain the SBR. Additional information may be needed, either directly collected or from other sources, to decide what updates to enterprises should be made based on these signals. The updating procedures may well differentiate between micro, small, medium and large enterprises.

7.30 Creations and cessations of administrative units do not necessarily result in births and deaths, respectively, of enterprises. An enterprise may be born, or may die, without a change in the legal unit(s) that own(s) and/or control(s) it. Detection of enterprise deaths is more difficult than detection of enterprise births as administrative sources are quick to add new units but slow to indicate those that have ceased to have economic activity.

Figure 7.1 Typology of demographic events²⁹

1			Changes of existence of combinations of production factors
	1.1		Emergence of combinations of production factors (birth)
	1.2		Disappearance of combinations of production factors (death)
2			Changes in the distribution of production factors
	2.1		Redistribution of the production factors within one enterprise
		2.1.1	Redistribution of production factors across local units
	2.2		Redistribution of the production factors of more than one enterprise
		2.2.1	Merger, takeover (Concentration of enterprises)
		2.2.2	Split, break (De-concentration of enterprises)
		2.2.3	Transfer of production factors between enterprises
		2.2.4	Enterprise restructuring
	2.3		Redistribution of the production factors within one enterprise group
		2.3.1	Redistribution of production factors across local units of more than one enterprise
		2.3.2	Redistribution of production factors across enterprises
	2.4		Redistribution of the production factors of more than one enterprise group
		2.4.1	Concentration of enterprise groups
		2.4.2	De-concentration of enterprise groups
		2.4.3	Transfer of production factors between enterprise groups
		2.4.4	Enterprise group restructuring

²⁹This Section is based on Chapter 12 C of the Business Registers Recommendations Manual (Eurostat, 2010) and on Chapter 4 of the Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Eurostat – OECD, 2007).

Definition of continuity

7.31 An enterprise is considered to *continue* through a demographic event if its production factors continue. It is considered to *die* (*discontinue*) if its production factors discontinue. In practice, continuity is interpreted as meaning that of at least two of three following characteristics remain essentially the same: *controlling legal unit, economic activity and location*.

7.32 An enterprise is deemed to continue if it resumes its seasonal activities, or resumes its activities within a specified period after stopping them. Such a period needs on the one hand to be short enough so that the SBR is appropriately up-to-date, on the other hand appropriately long enough so that the empirical evidence that a unit stopped its activity not just temporary is verified considering also the time lag in the recording in the administrative registers. In Europe 24 months is assumed to be an adequate period.

Birth

7.33 The *birth* of an enterprise is the *creation* of a combination of production factors with the restriction that *no other enterprise is involved in the event*. Handling a birth in the SBR means creating a new enterprise unit, i.e. an enterprise unit with a new identification number. A birth is typically detected by a signal in the form of the appearance of a new unit in an administrative source. However, as noted above, not every new administrative unit results in the birth of an enterprise.

Death

7.34 The death of an enterprise is the dissolution of a combination of production factors. Handling a death in the SBR means giving the enterprise an activity status of *dead*, also described as *deathing* or *ceasing* the unit. Although this does not actually involve erasing the unit from the database, this is also sometimes referred to as *deleting* the unit. Deaths are typically detected through survey activities and through the disappearance of units from an administrative source.

Change of ownership

7.35 A change of ownership is where a new legal unit takes over the production activities of an existing enterprise. This event by itself does not affect the continuity of the enterprise and, therefore, should not cause the birth or death of an enterprise. However, a change in ownership typically results in the death of an administrative unit and birth of another one. Thus, in practice, for small enterprises that are maintained entirely by data from an administrative source, a change of ownership may well result in the death of an enterprise and the birth of another one (resulting from the birth and death of the corresponding administrative units). For a large enterprise, a change of ownership may be detected through profiling and thus the continuity of the enterprise can be detected and the enterprise maintained.

Restructuring within an enterprise

7.36 Restructuring within an enterprise, for example, creation of a local unit, does not affect the continuity of the enterprise, though it may be associated with changes in characteristics such as size or economic activity.

Concentration (merger, takeover)

7.37 In a *concentration* there is *more than one legal unit before the event and only one legal unit after the event*.

- If all the legal units before the event lose their identity, the event is a *merger*.
- If one of them retains its identity, the event is a *takeover*.

7.38 In principle, mergers and takeovers do not necessarily involve the deaths or births of enterprises as such, though some characteristics (such as size and economic activity) may change. However, quite often, an SBR is designed in such a way that enterprises are tightly linked to legal units. Thus, in the absence of additional information from profiling:

- In the case of a merger, all the enterprises corresponding to the legal units that existed before the event are ceased, and a new enterprise is created.
- In the case of a takeover, the enterprise corresponding to the legal unit that takes over the other legal units continues and the enterprises corresponding to the legal units that were taken over are ceased.

De-concentration (split-off, break-up)

7.39 A *de-concentration* is an event *involving one legal unit before and more than one legal unit after the event*.

- In a *break-up*, the original legal unit dies; all the legal units after the event are new.
- In a *split-off*, the original legal unit continues, the other legal units are new.

7.40 In principle, break-ups and split-offs do not necessarily involve the deaths or births of enterprises as such, though some characteristics (such as size and economic activity) may change. However, as noted above, quite often the SBR is designed in such a way that enterprises are tightly linked to legal units. Thus, in the absence of profiling information, the births and deaths of enterprises follow those of the legal units.

Reconstruction of demographic events from SBR information

7.41 The cause of a new enterprise record can be a birth, a merger, a break-up or a split-off. The cause of an enterprise being given the activity status of dead can be

a death, a merger, a takeover or a break-up. To reconstruct a demographic event more precisely, it is necessary to determine all the enterprises involved and to have recorded their links to one another over time and the dates of changes in those links.

7.3.3 Demographic events, continuity and information sources for local units

Definition of continuity

7.42 The *continuity* of a local unit is defined in terms of continuity of its location and production factors, with an emphasis on those production factors that can be readily identified at the level of the local unit, i.e. land, buildings, and employment.

- If the location remains the same, the criteria for local unit continuity are (1) the continuity of production factors, in particular of employment, and (2) the continuity of the enterprise to which the local unit belongs. A local unit that does not change location is deemed not to continue, i.e. to lose its identity, if at least two of the following three factors change: the enterprise identity, the principal activity, or at least 50% of the employment.
- If a local unit changes location within a region (defined at the local level), it is deemed to continue, i.e. to retain its identity, if none of the three factors mentioned above change. Otherwise, it is deemed to discontinue.
- If a local unit moves outside the region it is deemed to discontinue.

7.43 A local unit is deemed to continue if it resumes its seasonal activities or resumes its activities within a specified period after stopping them. In Europe 24 months is assumed to be an adequate period.

7.44 The birth of an enterprise that comprises only one local unit implies the birth of a local unit.

7.45 The death of such an enterprise implies the death of a local unit. However, a local unit belonging to an enterprise with only one local unit can discontinue and be followed by the creation of different local unit while the enterprise continues.

Birth or death

7.46 The birth of a local unit is the creation of a (partial) combination of production factors at a geographically identified place. A death is their dissolution.

7.47 Births and deaths are handled by creating new local unit records, and marking existing ones as dead, respectively.

Transfer

7.48 A local unit may be deemed to continue and be transferred from one enterprise to another. This may be handled by deletion of the link between the local unit and the enterprise to which it belonged before the event

and the creation of a link between the local unit and the enterprise to which it belongs after the event.

7.3.4 Demographic events, continuity, information sources - enterprise groups

Typology of demographic events for enterprise groups

7.49 In the context of enterprise groups the focus is on events reflecting concentrations (mergers, takeovers) and restructuring, and their impacts, notably on employment at both national and international levels. Births and deaths are far less frequent for enterprise groups than for enterprises.

7.50 There are certain differences in the recording of events and in the allocation of identity numbers according to type of enterprise group (multinational group, truncated group, and all-resident group). This is in order to ensure coherent handling of the continuity of multinational enterprise groups and their truncated parts.

7.51 The categories of the general typology of demographic events for enterprise groups differ from those for enterprises in two respects.

- In the event of the death of an enterprise group, it loses its identity, whereas redistribution of production factors does not necessarily involve identity loss. This is because the (real) death of an enterprise group is the cessation of all control links, direct or indirect, between the legal units of which the enterprise group consists. The legal units become independent again or cease to exist. No other enterprise group is involved. The death applies only to all-resident and multinational groups, not to truncated groups, which may cease to exist through other events.
- The numbers of enterprise groups both before and after the event are decisive. For instance, the birth of an enterprise group and the concentration of two existing enterprise groups differ, among other things, in the number of enterprise groups involved. This is because births and deaths of enterprise groups are not in one to one correspondence with the creation and deletion, respectively, of identity numbers. There are two reasons why not. Firstly, births and deaths are events (concerning the real, observable world) whereas the creation and deletion of identity numbers are SBR updates. Secondly, a birth or a death involves only one enterprise group whereas other events, such as mergers, that involve many enterprise groups may also result in the creation and deletion of identity numbers.

7.52 The EU *Business Registers Recommendations Manual (2010 edition)* restricts births and deaths to the involvement of *only one enterprise group*. This convention is chosen because it is in line with the terminology of users who are interested in questions

such as ‘What is the effect of enterprise group births on a certain economic activity?’ If the term ‘birth’ is used in the sense of these types of questions, enterprise groups emerging, for instance, from mergers or split-offs are *not* included, although their impact on concentration (or de-concentration) is relevant.

Existential changes (birth and death)

7.53 The birth of an enterprise group is the establishing of control link(s), direct or indirect, between two or more independent legal units, where no control link previously existed, and no other enterprise group is involved. Temporary links of less than one year are not taken into account. Birth applies only to all-resident and multinational groups, not to truncated groups, which are created through other events.

7.54 The death of an enterprise group is the cessation of all control links, direct or indirect, between the legal units of which the enterprise group consists. The legal units become independent again or cease to exist. No other enterprise group is involved. Death applies only to all-resident and multinational groups, not to truncated groups, which cease to exist through other events.

Changes within an enterprise group

7.55 Changes may be divided into three categories:

- Change of global group head (controlling unit).
- Creation/deletion of a truncated group.
- Restructuring within an enterprise group.

7.56 A change of global group head involves the controlling legal unit being replaced by another legal unit. Recording of the event should include the date when it takes place. This is very important for the statistics of foreign affiliates compiled according to the country of the ultimate controlling unit. Although the legal unit changes, this event should not in itself affect the continuity of the enterprise group. It does not result in the birth or death of an enterprise group. However, depending upon the sources used to create the enterprise group, the enterprise group may be defined according to the controlling legal unit and the source may issue a new identifier in the case of a change of controlling unit.

7.57 Creations and deletions of truncated enterprise groups are important special cases of restructuring within a multinational enterprise group. In general, they do not affect the continuity of the multinational group, but they change its structure and possibly its characteristics. An important case is when there are several control links crossing national borders leading to seemingly more than one truncated group within the same multinational group. There are two possible options for handling truncated groups and their heads. The different groups of legal units thus formed within a national territory can be combined into a single truncated group or each group can be defined as a

separate truncated group. As previously discussed in Section 4.3, the first option is recommended.

Concentration (merger, takeover)

7.58 As in the case of enterprises, if both enterprise groups lose their identity, the event is called a merger. If one of them retains its identity, it is called a takeover. It should also be emphasised that a takeover may lead to changes in some characteristics of the enterprise group that retains its identity. For instance, it may enter a different size class or have a different principal economic activity.

7.59 Mergers and takeovers only apply to all-resident and multinational groups. There are no similar types of events for truncated groups. If two seemingly separate parts of a truncated group that belong to the same multinational group become merged under a national group head, this is not a real merger. From a global viewpoint it is restructuring within the enterprise group. Whilst it is desirable to track and record such events, this can be difficult at national level and has to be coordinated at global level.

De-concentration (split-off, break-up)

7.60 A break-up is an event, where an enterprise group is divided in such a way that none of the resulting enterprises groups retains the identity of the original group. A split-off is an event where one of the resulting enterprise groups retains its identity.

7.61 As with mergers and takeovers, break-ups and split-offs apply only to all-resident and multinational groups. There are no similar types of events for truncated groups.

Complex restructuring

7.62 Complex restructuring involves more than one enterprise group before and afterwards. An example is the transfer of an enterprise, parts of enterprises, or a number of enterprises between two or more enterprise groups. If the continuity of employment within an enterprise group is used as a criterion for the continuity, this may lead to discontinuity of an enterprise group even if no change of global group head has been detected.

7.63 Restructuring may also affect the characteristics of the enterprise groups that retain their identities. For example, their principal economic activity or size class may change.

7.64 The phenomenon of complex restructuring has been prominent in the economic and financial press for many years, so there is certainly a high demand for such information.

Translation of events into SBR updates

Births and deaths

7.65 In the SBR, an enterprise group birth is represented by creating a new identity number; and a

death by marking the enterprise group as dead. The more difficult problem is determining the date of birth. In the case of all-resident groups, the date of birth is, in principle, the date when the control link is established between two or more legal units. In practice, as the smallest all-resident enterprise groups are not monitored, the date of birth is more likely to be the date when the enterprise group is created in the SBR. The same considerations apply to birth of a multinational enterprise group.

7.66 For a truncated enterprise group, the date of birth should, in principle, be the date on which the first unit is established in the national territory. In practice, the date is more likely the date of registration of a corresponding administrative unit with an administrative source.

Changes within an enterprise group

7.67 Changes may be divided into three categories:

- Change of global group head (controlling unit).
- Creation/deletion of a truncated group.
- Restructuring within an enterprise group.

7.68 Changes in group head or restructuring within an enterprise group are events that should not have a direct impact on the demographic characteristics of the group. They are, however, important signals that may trigger further investigation. In the case of a multinational enterprise group, they may have considerable impact at national level, even the creation or ceasing of a truncated group, and they may be reflected through changes in relationships or characteristics recorded in the SBR.

7.69 As previously noted, if there are several parts of a multinational enterprise group in the national territory, these should be combined and recorded as a single truncated group. This avoids creations and deletions of truncated groups when restructuring takes place within the multinational enterprise group. On the other hand, bringing together truncated groups that have several, seemingly independent parts makes SBR maintenance more complicated at national level.

Mergers and takeovers

7.70 In the case of a merger, all the identity numbers of the enterprise groups existing prior to the event are ceased and an identity number is created for the emerging enterprise group.

7.71 In the case of a takeover, the enterprise group that takes over the other group(s) retains its identity number, so no creation takes place. The enterprise groups that have been taken over are marked as ceased. The date on which the change is considered to have taken place is the date when both parties have accepted the merger or takeover or when it has been approved by the competition authorities (if this is required).

7.72 The creation and ceasing of identity numbers apply in the same way for all-resident and multinational enterprise groups. Truncated enterprise groups simply follow the events at multinational group level.

Break-ups and split-offs

7.73 In the event of a break-up, identity numbers are created for all the enterprise groups existing after the event and the identity number of the original group is marked as ceased. In the event of a split-off, a new identity number is assigned to the split-off enterprise group(s).

7.74 The creation and ceasing of identity numbers apply in the same way for all-resident and multinational groups. The truncated groups simply follow the events at multinational group level.

Restructuring involving more than one enterprise group

7.75 Complex restructuring may entail any number of SBR creations and deletions of different statistical units and, in practice, is very difficult to manage. For example in the European Union, restructuring of multinational groups should be coordinated by the EuroGroups Register whereas restructuring of all-resident groups takes place at national level.

Information sources

7.76 In practice, most events are detected as a result of signals from administrative or commercial sources (which may themselves depend upon public administrative sources) or from statistical sources. In some cases, additional data are needed, either collected directly or obtained from other sources.

7.77 In all cases, cost-efficiency must be considered. Thus, the SBR updating policy may differentiate between small and large enterprise groups. Small enterprise groups may be updated based on administrative sources, while for large enterprise groups, profiling is usually necessary.

7.78 Although administrative sources differ widely from country to country, it is generally the case that creations and cessations in administrative sources, or (especially) in commercial, sources, do not necessarily result in SBR updates as they tend to follow entirely different continuity rules. Nevertheless, administrative information about new enterprise groups can be a good start for determining appropriate statistical updates.

Reconstruction of demographic events from SBR information

7.79 The cause of an SBR creation of a new enterprise group can be birth, merger, break-up, split-off, or restructuring. The cause of an SBR ceasing of an enterprise group can be death, merger, takeover, break-up, or restructuring. Therefore, mere registration of creations and cessations in the SBR does not enable derivation of precise data on the underlying demographic events. More information is needed.

7.80 To reconstruct a demographic event, the enterprise groups involved have to be identified. In the cases of concentration, de-concentration and restructuring it is necessary to have links over time between the enterprise groups involved. For example, in the case of a merger, the original enterprise groups must be linked to the emerging group, and in the case of a takeover the enterprise group that is taken over must be linked to the continuing group. If such links are recorded with dates, all events can be reconstructed. This implies the need for a historical register as discussed previously.

Continuity in relation to the definition and use of the enterprise group

Continuity in theory

7.81 A general definition of enterprise group continuity based on its definition, uses and central strategic role concerning the units it comprises may be phrased like this:

- If the enterprise group has continuity in its decision-making on its overall policy for production, sales and profits, financial management and taxation, and has a centralised strategy concerning the units it comprises, it is considered continuing.

7.82 Production factors are important for enterprise groups, although less so than for enterprises. An enterprise group may often use subcontracting for much of its production, thus the physical production factors play a much smaller role, while the roles of strategic planning, research and development and intangibles are very important. This adds to the complexity as the physical production factors are generally much easier to take into account than intangibles.

Continuity in practice: basic rules

7.83 The discussion on continuity rules here concerns both multinational groups and all-resident groups, although the rules may need to be applied differently due to availability of information. The continuity of truncated groups in the SBR should follow the continuity of the multinational enterprise group to which they belong, in addition to the events discussed above. When information on the continuity of the multinational group is available, the continuity of the truncated group can be decided accordingly. Only other events (creation, deletion, etc.) concerning the truncated groups themselves need to be handled separately.

7.84 Continuity of multinational groups should be coordinated at international level. For example a procedure in the EuroGroups Register allocates an identity number in a unique format to each multinational group. (An NSI can of course also assign an additional national identity number.) In the case of discontinuity, this identity number is changed. An indication of a discontinuity should come from the country of the group's decision centre when this is in Europe (which is the case for the majority of groups

operating in Europe), or when there is a European group head. When the decision centre is outside Europe, a decision regarding continuity has to be based on the available information from (i) the country (if any) where a European group head is located, (ii) the commercial sources, and (iii) published information, for instance in the EU Industrial R&D Investment Scoreboard. The identity numbers and their changes are communicated to the NSIs where the enterprise group operates.

7.85 Continuity of all-resident groups can be decided according to cost-efficiency on the basis of different methods but according to agreed rules. For large groups, profiling may be used for the decision. For small groups automated procedures based on administrative and SBR information can be applied.

7.86 Only annual substantial changes are taken into account, not long-term developments. Changes are found by comparing the situation at a certain time in the year to the same time in the previous year. As in the case of large enterprises, sudden substantial changes in large groups are rare. One such event could be a possible change of group head. On the other hand, smaller changes within the group, or restructuring between groups, are very frequent. They may also occur sub-annually in which case they may not necessarily be taken into account in the annual monitoring of the group.

7.87 A key factor to take into account is how the enterprise group itself sees its continuity. There must be strong reasons to go against the group's own opinion, especially because discontinuity among the largest groups is rare.

7.88 In determining continuity the following factors are taken into account.

1. *Global group head, composition and location(s):*

- a) Global group head.
- b) Enterprises which belong to the group.
- c) Main location(s).

2. *Economic activity:*

- a) Principal activity according to ISIC.
- b) Employment.
- c) Intangible assets.

Use of the continuity components

7.89 If all these factors change, discontinuity is obvious. In other cases, the changes need to be identified and weighted in order to make a decision. An important case, especially for smaller groups, is when a new group head appears and changes the whole profile of the group, both principal activity and employment, and possibly intangible assets. This event should be considered as the creation of a new group, even if the group head remains the same.

7.90 The main factors, namely 1a, 1b, 2a and 2b, may provide a suitable basis for the creation of an algorithm on which an automated decision about continuity can be based.

Change of global group head

7.91 The convention is that if there are no changes other than a change of global group head, there is deemed to be continuity of the enterprise group. Thus, change in group head is in itself not sufficient for discontinuity. However, it is an important indication of the need to check if there are changes in the other continuity factors.

Change of principal economic activity

7.92 The principal activity may be assumed to be positively correlated with the continuity of the production factors. However, this criterion is probably not relevant for multi-activity enterprise groups, where, relatively small changes to one part of the group may cause a major change to the economic activity code of the group as a whole. Also a gradual shift in activities may (after respecting an appropriate stability rule) eventually cause a change in economic activity code, resulting in a reclassification of the enterprise group. In such cases, there is continuity and the change of activity can be disregarded.

7.93 To use the principal economic activity in determining the continuity requires following the mix of economic activities of the group members in terms of value added, if available, otherwise turnover. Employment may also be used, especially in cases where no reliable turnover is available for each enterprise, only consolidated turnover for a VAT group. It has also been found that employment is also generally more stable over time than turnover.³⁰

7.94 For multi-activity groups, use of principal economic activity in determining continuity is very sensitive to the definition of the principal activity (especially at 4-digit level) and also to whether some pre-defined threshold (e.g. 50 %) is used. Thus, principal activity as a single criterion is not a good approach. However, especially for all-resident groups, a sudden change of principal economic activity when combined with some other changes, for example of group head or employment, is a strong indication of discontinuity. At global level, principal economic activity as a criterion is more difficult to apply.

Change of employment³¹

7.95 If the employment of the legal units in the group remains much the same from one year to the next, the group may be considered as continuing.

7.96 Continuity of the national group head is strongly correlated with continuity of employment, but as it may change more easily, employment is a better suitable measure.

7.97 Using employment is a very practical continuity measure as it can even be totally automated, but it has weaknesses. One weakness is that changes may occur in the legal units due to restructuring within the group. The main weakness is that it is not clear how the approach can work in a global framework due to the lack of availability of the necessary data and their timing.

Change of main location(s)

7.98 The locations of the global group head and head office have a strong impact on the enterprises in a group, on the continuity of locations where the research and development are carried out, and on where the actual production takes place. However, unlike the case for enterprises, practical rules on how to use main locations as a criterion for enterprise group level continuity are difficult to define, and have not been used.

7.4 Handling changes in characteristics of statistical units

7.4.1 Changes in identification and contact characteristics

7.99 Identification characteristics enable identification of units and their linkage to other units in the SBR and in other sources. They enable tracking of units over time, which is particularly important when there is conflicting information about the dates when changes occurred.

7.100 As previously noted, changes in contact characteristics should normally be reflected in SBRs as soon as they are detected as these data are used for mailing survey forms and for geographical analyses of SBR data. Changes to a unit do not necessarily imply changes to linked units.

7.4.2 Changes in economic/stratification characteristics

7.101 Economic/stratification characteristics are used in determining the probabilities of units being included in survey samples. It is therefore important to consider whether:

³⁰ See the French document presented at 1997 Roundtable: http://circa.europa.eu/Public/irc/dsis/businesssurvey/library?l=/1997_tokyo&vm=detailed&sb=Title

³¹ Change of employment is based on French document presented at 2005 Roundtable session 4: http://circa.europa.eu/Public/irc/dsis/businesssurvey/library?l=/2005_cardiff/enterprise_measurement&vm=detailed&sb=Title

- to update these characteristics as soon as new information is received and risk increased volatility in survey populations, samples and the resulting estimates, or
- to hold the updates back until the point in the annual cycle of surveys when the impact of changes on the consistency of results is minimal, or
- to subject the updates to *stability rules* (also termed *resistance rules*) that inhibit changes, as further discussed in Section 7.5.

7.102 Changes in legal form, for example from unincorporated enterprise to a limited corporation, may affect the consistency of survey populations and samples over time. Cross-checking name and legal form can help in identifying potential problems.

7.103 Guidance on coding, and changes of coding, of the institutional sector of legal units and enterprises is provided in Annex B2.

7.104 When the SBR is used to coordinate surveys, for example through the use of permanent random numbers, the impact of updates on coordination should also be assessed.

7.105 Changes to size characteristics (persons employed, number of employees, number of employees in full-time equivalent, and turnover) have significant effects on survey samples.

7.106 Large and complex units require more attention because changes to such units have more impact on statistics and there is an increased incentive to ensure the changes are correct. Potential updates should be checked by comparing data from a range of sources to see there is consistency, or by contacting the units concerned directly. As large units are often included in surveys with certainty (i.e. with probability 1), survey feedback is the most common source of updates. Also users of the SBR in particular managers of economic surveys and the national accounts should be consulted and/or informed about updates of large and complex units. Contributions to production are typically the basis for the procedures/algorithms used to derive principle economic activity when an enterprise is involved in more than one economic activity, and legal form when the enterprise involves more than one legal unit.

7.107 Potential updates to small units have less impact on the resulting statistics and for that reason the procedures for their maintenance can be largely based on automatic updating from administrative sources, without need to contact units to confirm changes.

7.108 Changes to geographical location codes for enterprises and local units have to be consistent with the corresponding continuity rules for these units.

7.109 Information received on changes in the various activities of a particular unit may prompt a change to the principal or secondary activity code for that unit.

These changes may be sudden, e.g. due to a change in management policy for the business concerned, or gradual, where the balance of activities has shifted over time. In all cases, use of *stability rules* is recommended in order to suppress movements that are no more than temporary phenomena or statistical artefacts.

- For large units, the stability rule may involve a case to case decision by a group of experts.
- For small units, automated rules may be used, for example, a change in principal activity may be made only after evidence for it has been sustained for two years.

7.110 For businesses engaged in certain activities, e.g. tourism, there is likely to be a seasonal pattern to the monthly or quarterly numbers of persons employed and turnover. Data for monthly or quarterly reference periods are useful for detecting short-term trends and turning points; however they may give a misleading view of the sizes of units from an annual perspective. It is therefore recommended that *averages over an annual period* are also held for such characteristics and used for sampling purposes.

7.111 When stratification characteristics are updated, it is useful to record at least the date of the change, the source of the new value, and the previous value. These are valuable in helping assess the quality of the values of the characteristics and in auditing change processes.

7.5 SBR maintenance procedures

Legal and operational units

7.112 Updating information about legal and operational units linked to large enterprises is obtained through profiling.

Administrative units

7.113 Information about administrative units is obtained from the corresponding administrative sources. The data received should be stored without change in the SBR. Thus in the case of:

- A new administrative unit appearing in incoming administrative data, a corresponding new administrative unit is recorded in the SBR.
- Changes in values of the characteristics of administrative units appearing in the incoming administrative data, the values in the corresponding administrative units in the SBR are updated.
- An administrative unit being marked as cancelled, or simply not appearing in the incoming administrative data, the activity status of corresponding administrative unit in the SBR is changed to *dead*.

Statistical units

7.114 The maintenance procedures for statistical units depend on the relationships associating legal,

operational, and administrative units with statistical units. Specification of updating procedures can be expressed in terms of a matrix with:

- One axis containing all possible types of legal and administrative *signals*, i.e. informative changes, that can be detected in incoming administrative files.
- The second axis containing all the types of statistical unit change that can occur.
- The cell entries defining the rules for how each signal is to be reflected as an appropriate update to statistical units, taking into account continuity rules, stability rules, and rules for dealing with conflicting information.

Statistical unit birth, death, and continuity rules

7.115 Maintenance procedures must incorporate continuity rules identifying the types of legal and administrative signals that result in the births, deaths, or continuations of statistical units, as discussed earlier. These rules determine under what circumstances a unit is deemed to be born, under what circumstances it is deemed to have died and possibly replaced by the birth of a new unit, and under what circumstances it is deemed to continue but possibly in some new form, or under new ownership.

7.116 The rules have to cover every possible type of birth, death, or continuation of a unit that can occur, taking into account the source of the signal of a change, and the maintenance group to which the unit belongs. In order to be practically applicable, the rules have to take into account the ways in which changes can actually be detected.

Stability rules (resistance rules)

7.117 As previously noted, changes to the enterprise characteristics used for sampling must be subjected to *stability rules* (sometimes called *resistance rules*) that inhibit short-term changes thereby ensuring that changes are permanent before updates are made. These rules have to cover every possible type of change that can occur, and the characteristics involved. They must take into account how the changes can be detected, the types of change (permanent, temporary, seasonal), and the possible impacts on frames and published statistics.

Quality management considerations

7.118 When the values of a group of characteristics of statistical units are updated it is important to know how downstream statistical processes will be affected. The impacts of changes on survey frames, and on the statistics produced by surveys that use those frames, have to be considered. In some cases it may be desirable to hold back updates until a certain point in the annual cycle of surveys so that their impact on the consistency of survey estimates is minimised. For large units, such decisions should be made on a case by case basis, involving profilers and users. For small units, rules can be automated.

7.6 Treatment of errors³²

7.119 An error may be defined as "*a difference in the information presented in the SBR and the information as it should be, according to a chosen image of the real world produced and maintained by an accepted instrument and documented procedures*".³³

7.120 It is impossible to avoid errors in the SBR. Indeed, as discussed in connection with stability rules, it may not even be desirable for the SBR to be perfectly up to date at a particular point in time.

7.121 Changes to statistical units and their characteristics may be either a reflection of real world events, in which case they are regarded as *updates*, or an amendment of information that was previously wrong, in which case they are regarded as *corrections of errors*.

7.122 This section deals with correction of errors and discusses how they should be applied using established and documented procedures.

7.123 In essence, there are three steps in handling errors:

- Determine whether errors have occurred.
- Decide whether they should be corrected; and if so
- Decide how and when to correct them.

7.6.1 Taking account of different user needs

7.124 The handling of errors should take into consideration the different types of surveys based on the SBR. Procedures appropriate for structural surveys may be different than those appropriate for short-term surveys.

7.125 Special provisions for the handling of errors in large and economically significant units may need to be negotiated with users, in particular with the managers of economic surveys and the national accounts. Errors in such units may have a considerable impact on statistics. If a special procedure is implemented to take account of the effects on estimates of corrections to these units, it should be fully documented. Special procedures can be applied by a dedicated profiling team or by appointing an authority (e.g., the SBR manager) who has the final say in making corrections.

7.6.2 Data about errors and corrections

7.126 As different surveys demand different approaches, it is desirable to record details of each error including source, type and dates of detection, occurrence and correction. This enables SBR users to access both corrected and uncorrected data according to their needs. In practice, depending on the information and resources available, it may be possible to record

³² This Section is based on Chapter 18 of the Business Registers Recommendations Manual (Eurostat, 2010).

³³ Ibid. p. 158.

only some types of error and some dates, or to record these metadata only for core characteristics.

7.127 A database may be set up specifically to record the details of errors and associated corrections. The structure and functionality of such a database depends on the procedures agreed for handling errors. The database should be closely linked to the SBR or an integral part of it. Ideally the following metadata should be recorded:

- Type of error
- Original value (the wrong one)
- New value (the correct one)
- Date of occurrence
- Date of detection
- Date of correction
- Source of corrected value
- Mode of correction (interactive or automatic)
- Name of person making correction (if interactive)

7.128 It is also useful to record a *date of confirmation* for characteristic values that were thought to be in error because they looked unusual or out of date, but that have been investigated and confirmed as correct.

7.129 Although the inclusion of all this metadata makes SBR maintenance more complex, and results in even more opportunities to make errors, the benefits outweigh the disadvantages. The information enables re-creation of the SBR at any given past moment in time, thus allowing users to ignore corrections if they need to do so.

7.6.3 The time dimension

7.130 The timing of corrections is important. Corrections of errors in characteristics not subject to stability rules, in particular identification characteristics such as names, addresses, and telephone numbers, should normally be carried out immediately. If not, data collection may be hindered and respondents upset because information they have provided is apparently not being taken into account.

7.131 Corrections of errors in economic/stratification characteristics such as economic activity and size are a different matter. If these corrections are made the moment the errors are detected, they may affect the consistency between statistics with different periodicities and they may be indistinguishable from genuine changes in the economic world. To avoid these potential problems, corrections can be stored until an agreed moment, for example once per year, when allowance can be made for them.

7.132 Whilst it would be useful to know the moment at which each error occurred, in practice, the date of occurrence is often not known. The date of correction, assuming a correction is made, may be considerably

later than the moment of occurrence. If the dates of occurrence and of correction date are in fact recorded, it is possible to construct a population of units for a point in time in the past that is more accurate than was the actual situation in the SBR at that past time point.

7.133 Another question is "How far back in time should corrections be applied?" The answer depends on the correction strategy, not only for the SBR but also for statistics based on the SBR. If, for example, there is a revision policy that requires all statistics to be revised after a period of five years, then corrections should be made as far back as the moment of the previous revision. If such a revision procedure that applies only to the national accounts and not to the individual statistical series on which the accounts are based, then the period for which corrections should be carried out depends on the periodicity of the statistical series.

7.6.4 Error correction policy

7.134 A systematic policy for the handling of errors should take into account the following.

- There should be an inventory of SBR users and uses and the consequences of the various types of errors for the various groups of users.
- The SBR should be structured and maintained in such a way that the correction of errors has a minimal impact on statistical surveys.
- SBR inputs, processes and outputs should be systematically monitored to detect potential errors.
- SBR processes should be fully documented so that the handling of changes or errors in the values of characteristics is clear to all concerned. This helps in detecting errors and avoiding discussions on the quality of individual records.
- The policies regarding handling of errors in the SBR should also be fully documented and audited periodically to make sure they are still appropriate.
- Responsibilities regarding handling of errors should be clear and documented. It is advisable to appoint an authority (e.g. the head of the SBR) who has the final say in difficult cases.
- The handling of corrected values in statistics based on the SBR should be fully coordinated and documented.
- The different types of errors detected should be analysed periodically to monitor changes in the pattern of errors over time and thus to inform future development of policies and procedures for handling errors.
- Recording the history of errors facilitates error handling in complex situations.
- If the SBR is used for administrative or commercial purposes, it is advisable to take legal precautions to avoid damage claims arising from errors.

7.135 The source from which a potential correction originates is an important factor in deciding whether and how to correct the error to which it refers. Care must be taken to ensure that the SBR remains a known reflection of reality and that corrections do not lead to distortions. As previously noted, if the source is a sample survey based on the SBR, there is a danger that

corrections of stratification characteristics may lead to bias in future survey samples. Corrections from sources that are not in any way related to surveys can be processed without such a problem.

7.136 There is further discussion of frame errors and their treatment in Section 8.4.

Chapter 8

Survey frame methodology

8.1 Introduction

8.1 The SBR is the backbone for economic surveys, being a major part of the infrastructure for practical implementation of processes for compiling economic statistics. This chapter presents a framework that describes the underlying concepts in a systematic way so as to provide the context for elaboration of survey frame methodology. The starting point is the Generic Statistical Business Process Model (GSBPM)³⁴ which clarifies the needs for inputs, processes and outputs and provides a framework for their documentation in terms of eight different phases of a statistical production process, as indicated in Figure 8.1.

8.2 Each phase is subdivided into a number of sub-processes as shown in Figure 8.1. The first phase of the GSBPM is to specify the needs and the output objectives and to identify the concepts needed to design a survey. A survey aims to provide information that fulfils the needs and the demands explored in advance with its users. In this phase an inventory of requirements articulated by stakeholders is translated into a framework that enforces coherence in the subsequent statistical processes and provides practical guidance for the implementation phases. The second phase is to design the complete methodology of a survey in terms of the inputs, processing and outputs including the appropriate statistical unit, the variables to be collected, the data collection method, and the indicators to be produced as output.

8.3 This chapter describes survey frame methodology in terms of three sub-processes within these first two phases of the model, namely:

- Identify concepts (1.4)
- Design outputs (2.1)
- Design frame and sample (2.4)
- Design collection (2.3)

8.4 The other phases and sub-processes are not within the scope of the Guidelines, although it is worth noting that data from the SBR should be available during the third phase when the data collection

instrument is being built and the production systems are being finalised.

8.2 Identify concepts

8.5 It is important to use common definitions in all statistical processes that lead to the planned statistical outputs. For example, it may be desirable to use the changes (by comparison with last year) in the values of a short time indicator (e.g. quarterly production) as a predictor of the overall change in the corresponding annual indicator. Thus, there needs to be coherence between short time and annual indicators and hence between the underlying frames.

A. Let $N(P_1)$, $N(P_2)$ represent specific frame populations of statistical units extracted from the live register for reference periods P_1 and P_2 respectively, with P_1 being before P_2 . Let the operator \setminus between two sets, $A \setminus B$, indicate the set of all elements in A which are not members of B , and the operator \cup between two sets the union of all elements in the sets. If N_{entries} and N_{exits} represent the number of entries or exits of statistical units, respectively, the following identities hold:

$$N_{\text{entries}}(P_2) = N(P_2) \setminus N(P_1)$$

$$N_{\text{exits}}(P_1) = N(P_1) \setminus N(P_2)$$

$$N(P_2) = (N(P_1) \setminus N_{\text{exits}}(P_1)) \cup N_{\text{entries}}(P_2)$$

B. Let $Y(P_1)$ represent the sum of a variable (e.g. turnover) based on a frame population $N(P_1)$ for reference period P_1 and $Y(P_2)$ represent the sum of a variable based on a frame population $N(P_2)$ for reference period P_2 , then for the variables based on frame population $N(P)$, where $P = P_1 + P_2$:

$$Y(P) = Y(P_1) + Y(P_2)$$

$$Y(P_2) = Y(P_1) + [(Y(P_2) - Y(P_1)) / Y(P_1)] * Y(P_1)$$

8.6 The above statistical identities are obvious conceptually, but are not usually satisfied in practice. It is quite likely that the sum of the values of a flow variable such as turnover observed monthly (using possibly a sequence of monthly frames) differs from the annual value of the same variable (observed using an annual frame). There are many reasons for such inconsistency, for example, differences between the monthly data and the annual data as regards concepts, reporting periods, sources and frames.

³⁴ The GSBPM distinguishes eight high level phases of the process and notes that they are guided by quality and metadata management. See <http://www1.unece.org/stat/platform/display/GSBPM/GSBPM+v5.0>

Figure 8.1 Generic Statistical Business Process Model

Specify needs	Design	Build	Collect	Process	Analyse	Disseminate	Evaluate
1.1 Identify needs	2.1 Design outputs	3.1 Build collection instrument	4.1 Select frame and sample	5.1 Integrate data	6.1 Prepare draft outputs	7.1 Update output systems	8.1 Gather evaluation inputs
1.2 Consult and confirm needs	2.2 Design variable descriptions	3.2 Build or enhance process components	4.2 Set up collection	5.2 Classify and code	6.2 Variable outputs	7.2 Produce dissemination products	8.2 Conduct evaluation
1.3 Establish output objectives	2.3 Design collection	3.3 Configure work flows	4.3 Run collection	5.3 Review and validate	6.3 Scrutinise and explain outputs	7.3 Manage release of dissemination products	8.3 Agree on action plan
1.4 Identify concepts	2.4 Design frame and sample	3.4 Test production system	4.4 Finalise collection	5.4 Edit and impute	6.4 Apply disclosure control	7.4 Promote dissemination products	
1.5 Check data availability	2.5 Design processing and analysis	3.5 Test statistical business process		5.5 Derive new variables and statistical units	6.5 Finalise outputs	7.5 Manage user support	
1.6 Prepare business case	2.6 Design production systems and workflow	3.6 Finalise production system		5.6 Calculate weights			
				5.7 Calculate aggregates			
				5.8 Finalise data files			

8.7 Differences that can be attributed to the frame populations should be controlled and minimised by the SBR. There should be an established relationship between the monthly survey frames and the corresponding annual frame. This is straightforward for an NSI that renews its frozen frames only annually; more complex where the NSI generates quarterly or monthly frames.

8.8 To ensure coherence between the outputs of different surveys (for example, production and employment) for the *same reference period*, a single frozen frame should be used by all the surveys.

8.3 Design outputs

8.9 The outputs of a survey may be specified in terms of a population of interest (e.g. manufacturing establishments, or enterprises with employees) and a set of variables (e.g. turnover, employment, value added) and a reference period. The survey population is of direct interest to the SBR as it should be derivable from the frozen frames generated from the live register. The choice of variables is also relevant to the SBR insofar as the variables coincide with or relate to characteristics maintained in the SBR. The SBR itself may be a source of statistics as further discussed in Chapter 9.

8.4 Design frame and sample

Choice of statistical unit

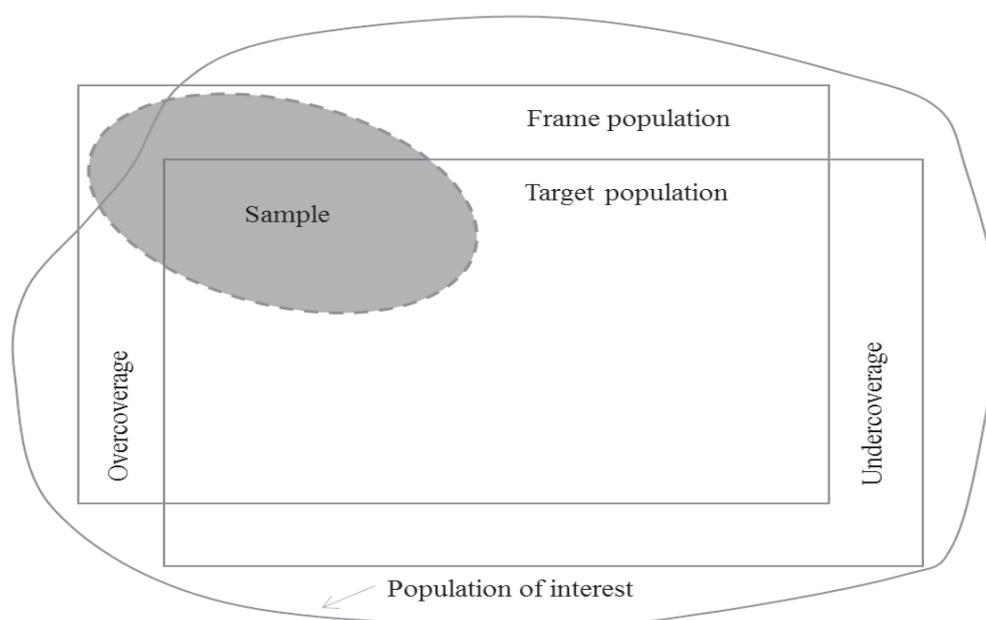
8.10 The target population is the representation of the domain of interest in terms of statistical units in

space and time. Statistical units are the building blocks for aggregation of micro-data up to industries, institutional sectors or geographic areas. The type of statistical unit that should be used depends on the economic indicators within the domain of interest. The *enterprise group* is particularly useful for financial analyses and for studying company strategies, but it is too varied in nature and unstable to be adopted as a standard unit for observation and analysis. The *enterprise* is used for financial data and the *kind-of-activity unit (KAU)* is used for production data. *Local unit* or *establishment* is used if indicators are required at regional level. Information on the definitions, derivations and characteristics of statistical units is provided in Chapters 4 and 5.

Target populations, frames and coverage

8.11 The population that would exactly meet user needs is termed the *(survey) population of interest*. The interpretation of this population in statistical terms is the *(survey) target population*. The *(survey) frame population* is the best approximation to the target population that can be provided by the NSI. As described in Chapter 2 the survey frame is derived as a subset of a *frozen frame* generated from the *live register*, using unit selection criterion based on characteristics such as economic activity and size class. The *sample* is a subset of the survey frame. Figure 8.2 describes the relationships between these various populations of statistical units, indicating over- and under- coverage.

Figure 8.2 Observed, target, and frame populations and sample



Design frame methodology

8.12 Figure 8.3 indicates the basic steps and data elements involved in creating a survey frame.

8.13 The process may be summarised as follows

- The live register contains various types of statistical units - enterprise group, enterprise, establishment, etc. The units have been derived and are maintained based on information obtained largely from administrative sources.
- At specified moments in time (month, quarter, or year) a snapshot of the live register is extracted containing all units and their characteristics.
- The frozen frame containing all statistical units that are active, or have been active, within the past 12 months is created by extraction from the snapshot.
- For each type of statistical unit available in the frozen frame, the corresponding set of units may be referred to as the *frame population* for that unit type.
- A survey frame is typically selected from a single frame population and thus consists of a set of one type of statistical units, e.g. enterprises for a financial survey or establishments for a production survey. Occasionally a survey frame may be designed using two types of unit.

- It is possible to derive data for each type of statistical unit using different types of observation units (e.g. by primary observation of the statistical unit, or aggregation of information from the tax office linked to legal units).
- The frames for annual indicators are based on an annual frame population. The frames for monthly (quarterly) surveys of short term indicators are ideally based on monthly (quarterly) frame populations. Use of monthly (or quarterly) frames and annual frames derived from the same set of monthly (or quarterly) frozen frames is sometimes referred to as a multiple frame approach.

8.14 The survey strategy determines at what moment in time a survey frame should be created during the production process. The proposed timeframe for delivery of the output indicators should be specified in the business case. (For example, in Europe the regulations on Short Time Statistics and Structural Business Statistics prescribe the indicators and timeframe for their delivery.) Given the delivery date, the indicators and their quality, the production processes, and the resources available, the moment in time when the survey frame should be available can be computed.

Figure 8.3 Creation of a survey frame

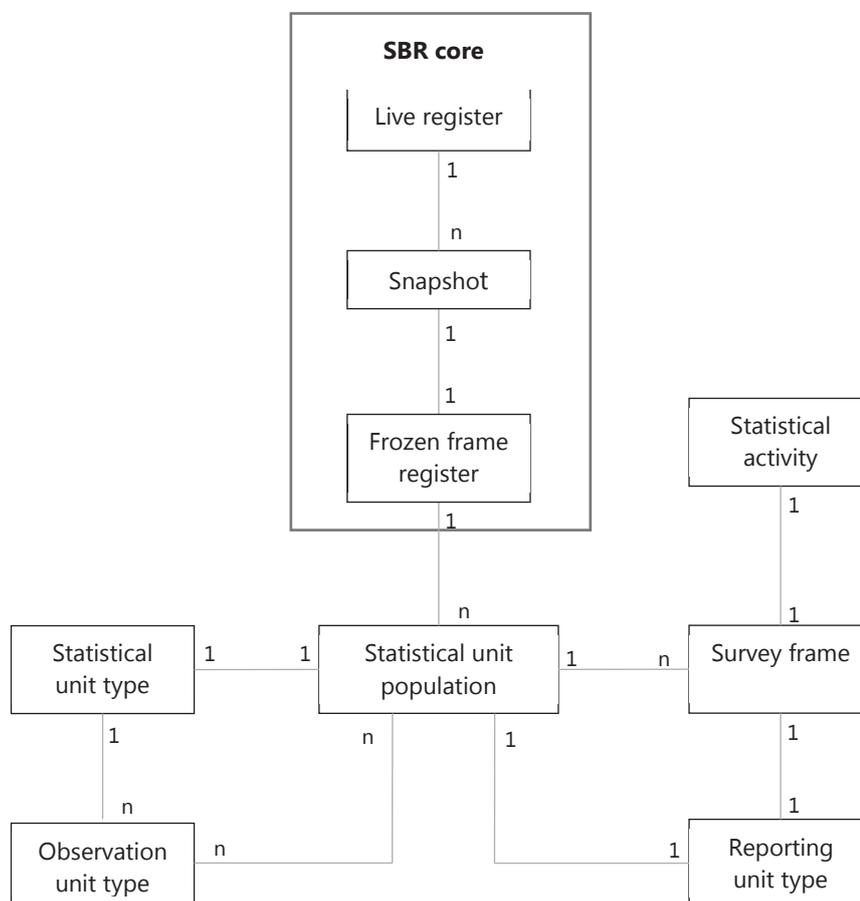
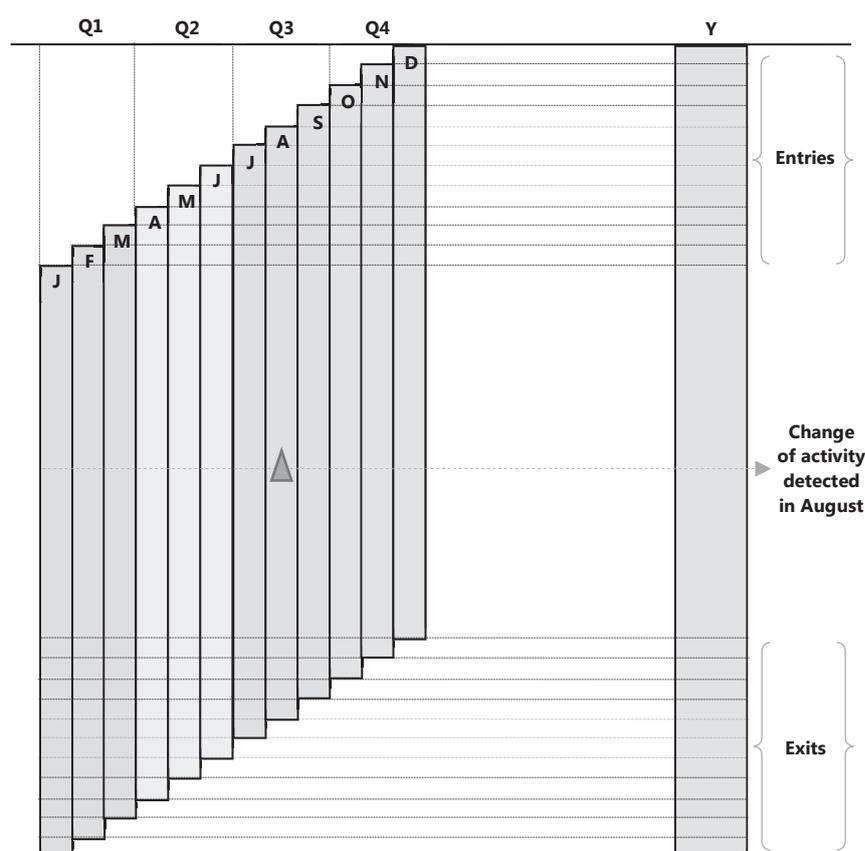


Figure 8.4 Evolution of frame populations



8.15 If the frame population for an annual survey about reference period t is also used to observe the short time indicators in year $t+1$, it will not include the information on newly active units for reference year $t+1$. Therefore it may be considered appropriate to create a new version of the frame population at a later point in time for the short term survey. It depends on the availability of sources whether the live register is maintained in such a way that a frozen frame can be extracted more frequently than annually. Some NSIs produce frame populations only annually, some quarterly, and some monthly.

8.16 Figure 8.4 illustrates the evolution of monthly frame populations during the course of a year as a result of adding and deactivating units resulting from demographic events.

8.17 The annual population may be defined as all units that are or were an element of one of the monthly frame populations during the reference year. In this respect it is important to guarantee consistency among the frame populations by appropriate frame error correction procedures (as further discussed below).

8.18 A useful addition to SBR functionality is the possibility of creating improved quality versions of a certain frame population by storing and using a separate list of all frame errors in the live register, including the reference periods to which the errors refer. Based on

such a list it is possible to carry corrected values over to the frame population at the time it is needed.

8.19 The best way to manage frame errors in a frame population is to avoid their occurrence. This suggests trying to detect anomalies in a frame population in advance before it is used. A good approach is to undertake advance validation based on a set of tables extracted directly from the live register. Units that will appear in the next frame population are compared with the units in the current frame population. Apparent anomalies in the next frame population that could lead to major distortions in the indicators can then be checked (manually) and corrected as appropriate before the new frozen frame is extracted.

8.20 Given that it is impossible to eliminate all frame errors it is important to identify and analyse the impacts of the various types of frame errors and to use SBR resources in addressing those that are likely to have the more significant impact on survey processing and estimates.

Over-coverage and under-coverage errors and their correction

8.21 As indicated in Figure 8.2 some statistical units in the target population may not be included in the frame population (under-coverage) and some units in the frame population may not be in the target population (over-coverage).

8.22 Possible reasons for under-coverage are as follows:

- Sources used to maintain the live register do not include units without employees.
- Sources used to maintain the live register have size thresholds that exclude smaller unit.
- Sources used to maintain the live register exclude units which are not obliged to register by law or did not register because of other reasons.
- Active units which have been accidentally marked as inactive in the live register or otherwise excluded from the frozen frame.
- Recently created units are not yet included in the live register due to the time lag in obtaining and processing information about them.
- Recently created units are included in the live register but not in the frozen frame from which the survey frame has been derived.

8.23 Possible reasons for over-coverage are as follows:

- Inactive units are classified as active in the live register and included in the frozen frame and survey frame. This is a particularly common type of error as a statistical unit may be linked to an administrative unit that is active for administrative purposes but has never started economic production, or has ceased economic production. In this situation the statistical unit may be marked as active (in accordance with the administrative unit) when it is actually inactive.
- Some units are duplicates of the same economic entity, which can happen when several administrative sources are used to create statistical units in the live register.

8.24 Under-coverage is a difficult problem to address because it causes a negative bias in the estimates that cannot be readily estimated from the survey sample. Over-coverage due to the presence of inactive units can be more easily detected during the survey process and allowed for during estimation.

8.25 Two ways to deal with over- and under-coverage are:

- To accept their existence in advance (which is reasonable provided they have a minimal effect on the estimation of the indicators); or
- To reduce them by using information from other sources when deriving the survey frame (although ideally this information should be used to update the live register).

8.26 If the coverage issues are too large to ignore and cannot be reduced by using other sources of information, then they must be addressed later in the survey process chain by some form of compensation.

Known under-coverage should be compensated for by statistical weighting and grossing up procedures or by extrapolation from census results. Over-coverage may be estimated and corrected by conducting a separate survey with the specific aim of estimating the number of units in the population.

Misclassification by principal economic activity

8.27 Misclassification of principal activity of units in a frozen frame leads to under- or over-coverage in the subsets of the frame corresponding to specific industries. Special efforts should be made to correct for this kind of error as it leads to increase in variance (due to over-coverage) and bias (due to under-coverage) in the following way. After a frozen frame is produced, a survey frame derived, and a survey sample is drawn, the resulting observation units complete a questionnaire.

- It may turn out that a respondent reports that the registered activity code of the observation unit is not correct. In this case this frame error should be corrected in the survey dataset, because otherwise the observation will be attributed to the wrong industry. This does not cause bias but increases the variance of estimates.
- Alternatively, it may be that units were not included in the survey frame because of being misclassified to out of scope industries. This introduces negative bias in the estimates.

Dealing with frame errors

8.28 Frame errors may cause errors in estimates of *levels* of indicators, also, and sometimes more substantially, in estimates of *changes* in indicators over time. When indicator values are compared for different quarters of the same reference year, or for the same quarters of different reference years, it is important to be able to assume that the changes observed correspond to changes in the real economic world and are not just artefacts resulting from the effects of frame errors or corrections of frame errors. Also, if a change (by comparison with last year) in a short time indicator (e.g. quarterly production) is to be used as a predictor for the overall change in the corresponding annual indicator, then it is equally important that the change represents a *real change* in the population and not the result of an error or correction an error.

8.29 The way errors in the frame are to be treated should be specified in advance in an official *frame error procedure*. The aim of a frame error procedure is:

- To support industry based statistics in providing frame populations that closely approximate the industries in the real economic world.
- To support coordination of data collection and processing in different industries and in different surveys.

8.30 Although it is impossible to monitor all the changes that occur in the economic world in real time, it

is possible to correct for those frame errors that are likely to cause major distortions in economic indicators, preferably well before publication. These errors can be categorised as follows:

- Errors that have been present for a rather long time in the live register and are detected more or less by accident, for example during data collection and/or when a respondent makes contact. These kinds of errors tend to affect the estimates of indicator levels. They do not occur often as (i) large or otherwise important enterprises are typically included in survey samples and thus updated the SBR using survey feedback, and (ii) the impact of errors in small enterprises is usually insignificant.
- New errors that distort the relationships between, monthly, quarterly and annual indicators. These kinds of errors affect estimates of changes in indicators.

8.31 An extra complication is that, on occasion, correction of a frame error may result in an apparently anomalous change in the value of an indicator, which itself then have to be corrected.

Sample design

8.32 The sample is selected in accordance with a predefined sample design, which can be quite different from one survey to another. Appropriate stratification characteristics help in selecting a sample that minimises the sampling error for a particular indicator. All the stratification characteristics required for sampling should be available in the survey frame.

8.33 Inclusion of inactive units in the sample leads to difficulties in obtaining responses during the observation phase and loss of effective sample size. The sample size should be chosen with this in mind.

8.5 Design collection

8.34 The data collection methodology should be designed to optimise survey results in terms of costs, efficiency and accuracy of the indicators. The availability of one or more sources that have the required information influences the data collection process and the composition of the statistical indicators. It is

important to decide in advance whether to collect information directly from statistical units or to use data from linked administrative units. In the latter case administrative data may be used in place of direct survey data collection or may be used to impute values that are not obtained during a survey.

Observation and reporting units

8.35 Besides representing the transactors in an economy in terms of statistical units it is useful to introduce the concepts of an *observation unit*, about which data are obtained, and on the basis of which data about a statistical unit can be derived, and a *reporting unit*, from which data about the observation unit are obtained. Thus a *survey frame* consists not only of a set of statistical units, but also corresponding *observation units* and *reporting units* together with appropriate contact information.

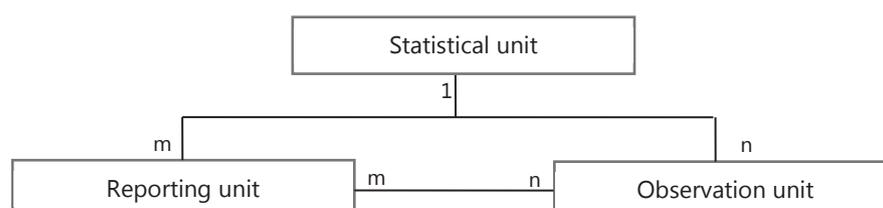
8.36 In most cases the statistical unit, the observation unit and the reporting unit are the same, but there are some cases where they may be different:

- Because of book-keeping practices no data is available from the target unit, only at another level of the organisation.
- Another organisation (e.g. accountancy firms) is responsible for reporting.
- The partial autonomy of the unit.
- Data are collected from a group of the units to save costs.
- There is no frame information about the target unit, only about the unit to which it belongs.
- The unit of analysis may be a transaction rather than an enterprise, for example *freight carried* rather than *freight carrier*.

8.37 The relationships between these types of units are illustrated in Figure 8.5.

8.38 The creation of different observation and reporting units to obtain data is based on discussion with the respondent about how best to obtain the requested information.

Figure 8.5 Statistical, observation and reporting units



Use of administrative data in place of directly collected data

8.39 The main problems that arise in using administrative data in place of direct data collection as illustrated in Figure 8.6 are:

- The differences between statistical concepts and the concepts defined by administrative rules and laws, which results in the need to identify the correspondences in terms of a metadata translator.
- The need to transform administrative data into statistical data using an appropriate statistical methodology, i.e., micro-data translator.

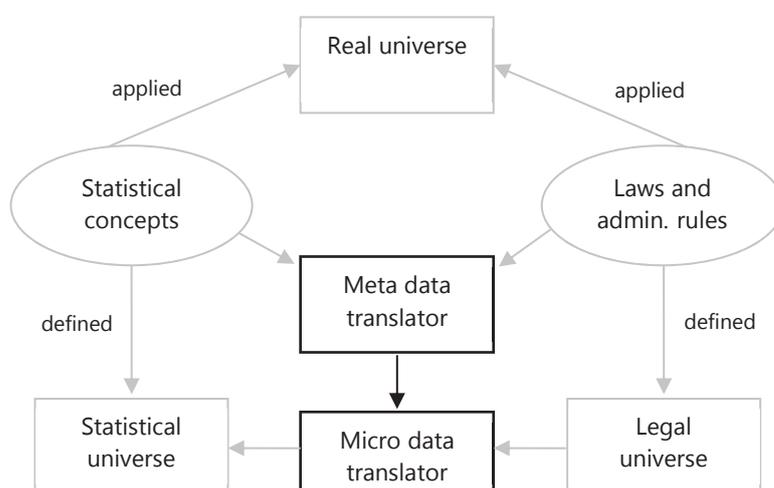
8.40 An example is the desire to disseminate statistics on turnover. The total amount of turnover

could be derived from the administration of VAT revenues. However, this derivation might lead to serious inconsistencies for very large enterprises because of:

- The legal organisation of the enterprise.
- Consolidation effects.
- Global influences that distinguish them from small and medium enterprises in their way to pay taxes.

8.41 In this case the metadata-translator should make an appropriate adjustment for large enterprises, or the conclusion drawn that such translation is not feasible and that VAT data cannot be used to derive total turnover for large enterprises.

Figure 8.6 Relationship between statistical and administrative universes



Chapter 9

Dissemination

9.1 Introduction

9.1 This chapter deals with dissemination of SBR data to the general public. It covers two roles of the SBR as defined in Chapter 2, namely the role of the SBR to produce statistics directly based on the SRB (Role 5), and the role of the SRB as an information source providing data on enterprises, their locations and possibly other characteristics (Role 6).

9.2 In the past SBR data were not usually disseminated directly; rather they contributed indirectly to published statistics that were produced by economic surveys for which the SBR provided the survey frames. However, due to increased use of administrative data and increased computing and storage capacity, the SBR is now often a powerful database from which statistical data can be derived for dissemination purposes, or which can be used to supplement data collected by surveys, thereby replacing or reducing the amount of survey data collection. Using the SBR for dissemination purposes does not mean that the other roles of the SBR become less important, especially the backbone role for statistical surveys. The SBR will not be able to replace statistical surveys totally as the range of characteristics held in the SBR is quite limited.

9.3 The SBR may be characterized as comprising a lot of information of high value. In principle, it covers all enterprises, and related units such as establishments, in the formal sector. This includes government units and non-profit organisations. For all these units it contains the values of basic characteristics such as detailed economic activity classification, regional classification and measures of size in terms of turnover and employment. While this range of characteristics is not as extensive as can be obtained by survey, the SBR is nevertheless a unique, rich database as it provides coverage that, in the past, could only be achieved by an economic census. In fact, in several countries the SBR is replacing an economic census, or at least supporting by it by providing the frame.

9.4 In addition to directly publishing SBR data as economic statistics, the second form of dissemination is of business demographic data showing the creation, continuation (survival) and cessation of enterprises and/or establishments. Such data may be provided by industry, region, legal form, size class and other stratification variables. In this context, the specific unit and continuity definitions used in the SBR are of crucial importance.

9.5 A further form of dissemination, corresponding to the role of *SBR as an Information Source* referred to in Chapter 2, is when *individual data* (also termed *unit record level data* or *micro-data*) are made available outside the NSI. This is possible only in countries where it is lawful to disseminate selected data about individual units to other organisations and, possibly, to the general public. Such a release provision may not include all types of units and almost certainly will not extend to all characteristics. Typically it will apply to legal units, and the individual data items that can be released may include name, address, legal form, economic activity code and, possibly, size code. Restricted access to the SBR is discussed in Section 9.4.

9.6 Dissemination may be in the form of lists or directories of units, either in print or electronically, on-line or off-line, publicly available, or for the organisations specifically requesting them. Such dissemination may be available free of charge or for a fee.

9.7 Prior to contemplating this form of dissemination an NSI must establish if there is such an appropriate release provision, and if so, observe it. Otherwise the NSI will be in breach of confidentiality requirements.

9.2 Dissemination of economic statistics

9.2.1 Dissemination conditions

9.8 Statistical information is considered to be a public good. Thus, direct dissemination of economic statistics from the SBR should take place without discrimination regarding type of user and with simultaneous access to all users. Constant improvements in technology provide increasingly better tools for data communication, and these should be used.

9.9 Before SBR data are disseminated their quality needs to be assessed. The data should be sufficiently accurate, timely and coherent that they adequately represent the actual economic structure in the country in those aspects that are disseminated. They should provide good coverage of the economy, industrial structure, regional distribution, size structure, etc.

9.10 Given appropriate data quality, one way of disseminating SBR data aggregates is to release regular standard reports, each comprising a set of tables. The reports can be produced annually, quarterly or monthly,

depending on data quality, which in turn depends upon SBR creation and maintenance procedures.

9.2.2 Confidentiality considerations

9.11 As in all statistical data dissemination, the need for statistical confidentiality must be taken into account. The broad level requirement is that no data should be published that would allow a user to determine the value of a characteristic for a specific unit. The usual approach in ensuring confidentiality is to publish only data values that refer to more than a specified number of units, typically three or more units. In a table where a certain data cell refers to less than this number of units, the cell value is suppressed and replaced by a symbol indicating that the value is available but *confidential*. A stronger approach is to apply *dominance rules*. A cell in a table is confidential, if a specific number of the largest units, e.g. the three largest units, in this cell contribute more than a specified proportion, e.g. 90%.

9.12 Furthermore, suppression of confidential cells must be accompanied by further cell suppression to prevent the values in the suppressed cells being calculated from the values in other cells by a process referred to as *residual disclosure*. For example, consider a two dimensional table including row and column totals and suppose the one cell value has been suppressed because it is confidential. This value can readily be computed from the other cell values in the same row (or column) and the row (or column) total. Thus the values of other cells that are not themselves confidential have to be suppressed. This is referred to as *complementary suppression*. Complementary suppression will have to be applied not only within a single table but also between the tables to be published so that confidential information cannot be disclosed by combining different tables. There are typically many options for the choice of additional cells to suppress and there are algorithms to guide this choice. For example the aim may be to choose the data cells with lowest numbers of units for complementary suppression.³⁵

9.13 In summary, before publishing a set of tables, whether in print or in electronic form, confidential cells need to be identified and the values in these cells suppressed. Then the tables need to be reviewed and

³⁵ Such algorithms are readily available in software packages, namely in the R package *sdCTable* (Statistics Austria, <http://cran.r-project.org/package=sdCTable>) and the software *tauArgus* (Statistics Netherlands, <http://neon.vb.cbs.nl/casc/tau.htm>). For more information on statistical disclosure control see the two articles in the Handbook on Methodology of Modern Business Statistics: <http://www.cros-portal.eu/sites/default/files/Statistical%20Disclosure%20Control-01-T-Main%20Module%20v1.0.pdf> and <http://www.cros-portal.eu/content/statistical-disclosure-control-methods-quantitative-tables-theme>

further cell values suppressed to prevent residual disclosure. Computer applications that perform such operations are available.

9.3 Dissemination of business demographics statistics

9.3.1 Background

9.14 Business demographic statistics provide data on the numbers of births and deaths of enterprises (and/or establishments) in a specific period, and on the number of enterprises (or establishments) that were born in a previous period and continued in (i.e., survived to) the specific period. The development of newly born enterprises is usually followed for a period of five years, thus indicating how many enterprises born in t are still alive in $t+1$, $t+2$, ..., $t+5$.

9.15 Business demographic data are usually structured according to activity, legal form, size class, region and various other stratification characteristics. The main descriptive characteristics are employment and turnover. Thus, it can be shown how many jobs were created by the newly born enterprises as well as how many jobs were lost due to enterprise deaths.

9.16 Demographic data about enterprises should also be related to the appropriate total numbers of enterprises to produce birth rates or death rates. Also survival rates (percentage of enterprises born in t that have survived until $t+1$, $t+2$, etc. are useful indicators to calculate for analysis of entrepreneurship performance.

9.17 Business demographic statistics are sought by analysts and policy makers concerned with business dynamics and entrepreneurship, for example to assess the impact of policy initiatives on enterprise birth and survival rates.

9.18 Using the SBR to produce business demographics requires:

- A typology of demographic events that covers all the main demographic events affecting statistical units and takes account of the links between them. (See Chapter 7.3).
- Definitions of the main demographic events, specifying precisely their characteristics.
- Methodology and operational rules for computing the statistics.

Measuring entrepreneurship with the SBR: the OECD-Eurostat Entrepreneurship Indicators Programme

Even though the role of entrepreneurship as a driver of economic growth and job creation entered the policy debate some decades ago, there is a lack of sound international evidence on the entrepreneurial phenomenon and its determinants and impacts, and there is not much reliable data for performing comparative analysis. To respond to the need of internationally comparable official statistics the OECD-Eurostat Entrepreneurship Indicators Programme (EIP) was launched in 2007.

The EIP is aimed at the development of policy-relevant and internationally-comparable indicators of entrepreneurship and its determinants, in order to support the analysis of entrepreneurship. To that end, the programme has developed a conceptual framework and a methodology for the collection of harmonised entrepreneurship statistics. Two elements constitute the characterising features of the EIP. Firstly, the core set of entrepreneurship performance indicators collected by the programme consists of *business demography statistics on the birth, death, survival and growth of enterprises* (as distinct from other approaches to entrepreneurship measurement that focus, instead, on data on individuals). Secondly, *the SBR is used to compute business demographic statistics*, according to the methodology presented in the *Eurostat-OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics* (2007) – a manual developed by the EIP.

The EIP focuses on "*employer business demography*", where the relevant statistical unit is the enterprise with a least one employee. Employer indicators are found to be more relevant for international comparisons than indicators covering all enterprises, as the latter are more sensitive to the particular coverage of SBR, for example when employment or turnover thresholds are applied by the main sources used to compile SBR. (If there is an employment threshold, a basic criterion for comprehensive employer demographic statistics is not satisfied.)

The development of a database of comparable business demographic statistics was much welcomed by policy makers and the research community. The results are also disseminated through the publication *OECD Entrepreneurship at a Glance*.

9.3.2 Advantages of using the SBR

Coverage

9.19 In principle, business demographic statistics can be compiled from sources other than the SBR, in particular business censuses and surveys. However, there are limitations that make these other approaches less convenient or more expensive. With respect to censuses, the coverage of units is typically very comprehensive, but there is a major problem with census data periodicity (generally every five years or less frequently). Such infrequent data are a source of comparability issues.

9.20 While survey based approaches to the production of business demographic statistics may be useful, for example to capture the creation of informal enterprises, they suffer from the usual constraints of survey errors and of sample sizes, which limit detailed data breakdowns. Also, it is difficult to identify enterprise deaths by means of surveys, as dead units are not available to be surveyed. Moreover, in calculating business demographic rates that require an estimate of the total population of enterprises as the denominator, conceptual consistency between the denominator and numerator populations can be realistically achieved only by using the same source of information for both. Such demographic rates could be, for instance, the "birth rate", which is the share of the total births in period t in the total number of enterprises in the same period.

9.21 Finally, using data from an SBR is generally quicker and cheaper than conducting a survey and imposes no additional burden on businesses.

International comparability

9.22 Thanks to progressive harmonisation of the basic requirements of SBRs across countries, the SBR constitutes the most convenient source of business demographics from the perspective of international comparisons. However, it is important to acknowledge some potential limitations in this respect. Specifically, the various thresholds used in SBRs are perhaps the most important source of incomparability in business demographic statistics. Although SBRs aim for comprehensive coverage, in practice, they each have to use some sort of threshold that excludes small or difficult to find enterprises. Typically, thresholds are based on monetary values, using turnover as the indicator for example, or they are based on employment levels, or on registration with one or more administrative sources. They may be dependent on other criteria, for example they may exclude agriculture and/or unincorporated enterprises. These variations and differences across countries result in lack of international comparability. One of the aims of these Guidelines is to reduce the reasons for lack of comparability.

9.23 An additional source of incomparability is that the appearance of a business in administrative registers, and hence the appearance of an enterprise in the SBR, does not necessarily coincide with the date when the business became active. Furthermore, this can vary by country. For example, in some countries, a business may be required to register, or may voluntarily register, with an administrative source before any production occurs or turnover is recorded. In fact, registration does not necessarily mean that the businesses will ever be

economically active. It may instead remain permanently inactive. In other countries, administrative sources register a business only after it has already been active

for a while, and perhaps only after its production exceeds some threshold, commonly based on turnover or employment.

Typology of demographic events: example from the European Union

The Business Registers Recommendations Manual (2010 Edition) of the European Union provides a typology developed specifically for enterprises. It is based primarily on changes in the existence of production factors and their distribution within and among business organisations, while taking into account enterprise structure in terms of organisational units of production, economic activities, locations, and legal/financial links.

As described in Chapter 7, events are separated into two groups:

- Those involving existential changes, i.e. the emergence or disappearance of combinations of production factors.
- Those involving distribution changes, i.e. changes in the distribution of production factors between units.

As indicated in the following table (where n implies 2 or more) existential changes (births and deaths) involve a transition from no enterprise to one enterprise, or vice versa, whereas changes in the distribution of production factors require that at least one enterprise is present both before and after the event.

Event	Real, observable world		Business register	
	Number of enterprises before the event	Number of enterprises after the event	Number of creations	Number of deletions
Birth	-	1	1	-
Death	1	-	-	1
Change of ownership	1	1	-	-
Merger	n	1	1	n
Takeover	n	1	-	$n-1$
Break-up	1	n	n	1
Split-off	1	n	$n-1$	-
Creation of a joint venture	n	$n+1$	1	-
Cessation of a joint venture	n	$n-1$	-	1
Restructuring within an enterprise	1	1	-	-
Restructuring within an enterprise group	n	n	0 or more	0 or more
Change of group	1	1	-	-
Complex restructuring	n	n	0 or more	0 or more

9.4 Micro-data dissemination

9.24 Access to individual unit data in the SBR is restricted by confidentiality requirements. However, in recent years, some countries have been able to give access to such micro-data to academic institutions, researchers, and students, but always under a number of conditions to ensure appropriate confidentiality.

9.25 For some research purposes the SBR data alone may not be sufficient and other individual data may be linked to the SBR data, depending on the research goals. Here again, an adequate legal basis must be assured.

9.26 Restricted access to individual unit data is not equal to publication of these data. However, as previously noted, in some countries publication of such data from the SBR is allowed by law. The content of such a publication is typically restricted to identification code, name, address and legal form of the enterprise, economic activity code, and possibly other classification codes. Usually, no quantitative economic data, such as employment or turnover are included. The coverage of individual units may also be restricted to companies and government units or even to bigger units only. The intervals at which such data are updated may vary from daily to annually. Usually, such data are published online.

9.27 There are countries that provide public access to individual unit identification and location data because this information has been disseminated by the units themselves as part of their contact and

promoting information. These data can be used for public and private policy planning, as well as for economic research. They typically include identification characteristics, stratification by size, activity class and geographical location in the national territory. Typically they are made available under the general principle that statistical information should be considered a public good and should be made available to everyone in a simultaneous way and without detriment to the protection of personal data.

National Directory of Economic Units (DENUE) in Mexico

Although its main function is to serve as a sampling frame, the National Directory of Economic Units (DENUE) has made individual statistical unit data available to all, as a public good, and not only for decision makers at government or political level. With the benefit of modern technology, DENUE provides readily accessible information on the distribution of the economic activities and establishments by territory throughout the country.

In addition to the data that are openly shared, DENUE contains data for internal working purposes only, for example, to identify records of the establishments in more than one database or to solve errors among the databases used.

See:

<http://www3.inegi.org.mx/sistemas/mapa/denue/default.aspx>

Chapter 10

Quality

10.1 Introduction

10.1 Quality may be defined as *the degree to which a set of inherent characteristics fulfils requirements*³⁶, and thought of in general terms as *fitness for purpose*. The SBR purposes are to provide:

- Information that enables identification of statistical units.
- Populations of statistical units for survey frames and sampling.
- Statistics on the structure of the economy – in terms of units and their economic classifications.
- Data for business demography analysis.
- Tools for using administrative data for statistical purposes.

10.2 It achieves these purposes through the eight roles described in Chapter 2.

10.3 The standard *quality dimensions* used in assessing a survey can be used in assessing the SBR. For example, users want SBR data to be relevant, accurate and timely. *Relevant* means that the data meet current and potential needs of the users in terms of units and characteristics to support the production of statistics. *Accurate* means that the information recorded corresponds to the reality. *Timely* implies that the data provide a picture of the real world with the least possible time lag. However, there are significant differences between assessing the quality of a survey and assessing the quality of the SBR due to the wide range of inputs to the SBR, the multiple types of units it contains, the fact that the most important outputs are micro-data not statistical aggregates, and the importance of links to units in other databases. Thus, it is not possible to use exactly the same approach for measuring SBR quality as for measuring survey quality.

10.4 SBR data quality is closely related to how the data are used and to whether they satisfy the users' needs. However, the SBR has several different groups of users and each group has its own needs. The requirements with respect to frozen frames as regards timing and accuracy are different depending upon whether the frame is to be used for a short term survey or a structural business survey. For example, if value added is being estimated by a survey based on an SBR

frame or using administrative data, the accuracy of the values of key characteristics such as economic activity code and size code for large units will be paramount given the economic significance of these units. On the other hand, if business demographic indicators are based on the SBR, the quality of the smaller units will be very important due to their high rate of involvement in demographic events. In summary, as the SBR is complex and there are numerous and different groups of users of its products, the criteria for evaluating its quality are also complex. Thus the level of quality depends on the specific SBR sub-population and the strategy for its maintenance (e.g., by activity, size, maintenance group, profiling).

10.5 The differing requests from differing groups of users result in conflicting demands regarding the timing with which the SBR records changes and delivers frames. The solution, as already described, is to maintain a *live register* that reflects the latest available information and to produce a set of *frozen frames* each pertaining to a particular reference period. The frozen frames serve for sampling and coordinating the results and for business demographics. They can be extracted as frequently as needed (monthly, quarterly) in order to support surveys according their timetables, and include corrections of previous mistakes, new units, and recent updates to key characteristics. The live register is continuously updated and can be accessed for the very latest information when required.

10.2 SBR quality dimensions

10.6 Quality dimensions (sometimes called quality components) are *the concepts used to describe some part or facet of the overall concept of quality, when applied to statistical outputs*³⁷.

10.7 Although articulated primarily with censuses, surveys and administrative collections in mind this set of dimensions applies equally well to an SBR. The need for an SBR to be relevant, accurate and timely has already been discussed.

³⁶ ISO 9000: 2005 Para 3.1.1.

³⁷ United Nations Statistics Division: National Quality Assurance Frameworks.

Example from Europe

In Europe comparability over region is promoted at a European level through a regulation, so the quality of the SBR in an EU country in this respect can be measured in terms of level of adherence to the regulation.

10.8 As regards *punctuality*, SBR users certainly need to know when to expect the frozen frames and statistics based on the SBR.

10.9 As regards *accessibility*, the possibility of internal users obtaining individual data by directly connecting to the database, and external users obtaining aggregate tables directly from the NSI output database, should be considered.

10.10 In terms of *comparability*, there are two aspects to consider: region and time. Comparability requires that the concepts and methods underlying the maintenance of the units and their characteristics do not change across regions or over time.

10.11 *Coherence* includes both internal coherence of units and characteristics within the SBR and coherence with other registers. While internal coherence involves a consistent treatment of the SBR data, coherence with other registers is promoted by creating and maintaining links. The use of a common identification code across all official business registers (administrative and statistical) is an excellent way to obtain greater coherence.

10.12 Finally, even though it is not a quality criterion, consideration of *cost* must accompany measurement of quality. Cost is a *quality constraint* and must be considered when allocating resources to improve any quality dimension.

10.13 Cost includes burden on enterprises as well as cost to the NSI. It is important to ensure that enterprises are not routinely obliged to provide the same data to the SBR as they have already given to an administrative source. This does not preclude the possibility of conducting an SBR quality improvement survey to check or improve the characteristics of SBR units.

10.14 Although described separately, the various quality dimensions are inter-related in the sense that attempts to improve the SBR with respect to one dimension may lead to deterioration with respect to another.

10.15 Quality measurements, involve the availability of metadata necessary to correctly understand the information.

10.3 Difference between survey quality and SBR quality

10.16 In the context of an NSI, quality assurance can be defined as all the planned and systematic activities

implemented that can be demonstrated to provide confidence that the processes will fulfil the requirements for the statistical output³⁸. Quality assurance procedures have been intensely studied and developed in relation to the conduct of surveys. While many of the resulting concepts and methods may be applicable also to the SBR, the SBR has certain specific characteristics that distinguish it from standard surveys and that require different quality assurance procedures. An example is the heterogeneity of SBR users. Another example is that the primary SBR output is individual unit level data not statistical aggregates. The following paragraphs describe some of these specificities and their impact on the quality issues.

10.3.1 Use of administrative data

10.17 The use of administrative data for statistical purposes has increased over the last decades. The SBR depends much on information that is available from administrative sources. The quality of the SBR, therefore, is strongly linked to the quality of the administrative data it uses, but over the generation of which it may have limited or no control. This is different from a survey process that is entirely under NSI control. For example, the SBR have little or no influence on the definitions of the characteristics that an administrative source provides, whereas it determines the definitions of characteristics that it collects by SBR quality improvement survey.

10.3.2 Heterogeneity of inputs

10.18 SBR construction and maintenance require data from many sources (administrative and statistical) to be integrated. Each source provides only partial information with regard to the units and their characteristics, so no single source can meet all needs. Sub-populations of units are covered by different sources. For example, data about units in the agricultural sector may be derived from a quite different source than the sources that provide data about units in manufacturing or services. The values of different characteristics may be acquired from different sources, for example, turnover from VAT declarations, employment from the Social Security Register. Information on the large and complex units is typically obtained by surveys or profiling, whereas information on small units is obtained using (often exclusively) administrative data.

10.19 Thus, an approach to quality that is appropriate for a survey based essentially on data collection from a sample is not sufficient in assessing SBR quality. Rather the approach must cover the treatment and quality evaluation of data from a variety of sources. In this context, quality evaluation of the SBR as a whole may be difficult. In the first instance, it is necessary to split SBR data into subsets (for example, according to source, unit

38 United Nations Statistics Division: National Quality Assurance Frameworks.

type, and/or group of characteristics) and to develop a set of quality indicators applicable for each subset.

10.3.3 Variability of inputs over time

10.20 In the case of a repeating survey, the process and the data items collected do not usually vary much over time, and when there are changes to the process, these should be controlled and monitored. Many of the problems that arise when using administrative data can be related to changes in processing procedures that are made by the administrative source but without the knowledge of the SBR. There may be changes in registration and cancellation rules, in the units involved and/or their classifications, in the data collected, and in the control processes. Therefore, an important objective of the SBR is to verify the stability of the administrative process and data, and thus to avoid having changes that are purely administrative causing structural changes in SBR data that do not reflect changes in the real economic world.

10.3.4 Technological requirements

10.21 The processes for construction and maintenance of an SBR are characterized by:

- Quite large amounts of data from many different sources.
- Changes over time in administrative source contents.
- Complex procedures for data integration, processing and production of outputs.
- Changes over time in classifications and output data requirements.

10.22 Thus SBR procedures and systems must be adaptable over time. Control and evaluation of the technological aspects of SBR processes is a central task in SBR quality assurance and demands skilled information technology resources, which are often in short supply.

10.23 Given that all NSIs require much the same SBR fundamental components, the scope for industrialisation of SBRs based on international best practice is an important consideration. In particular development of a generic SBR system that could be readily adapted to the particular circumstances in a country might prove very useful for NSIs with limited resources to undertake SBR development.

10.3.5 Primary output is micro-data

10.24 The main objective of the SBR is to produce individual data – data about individual units - for use by surveys in constructing survey frames and samples. Whereas with statistical aggregates random errors tend to average out, with micro-data there is no such notion. Over-coverage and under-coverage errors do not balance out. The effects of both have to be evaluated.

10.3.6 Heterogeneity of users

10.25 The quality policy adopted by the SBR must take into account the wide range of users' needs. Given that the primary SBR role is producing sampling frames for surveys, the SBR update processes have to be as timely as possible, have to guarantee a stable reference population, and have to provide the most complete coverage possible. For surveys producing macro-economic variables such as value added, the coverage of large units and the accuracy of characteristics, such as economic activity code and size, are critical. On the other hand, coverage of smaller units is very important in producing business demographic indicators.

10.26 Another important aspect of quality is coherence. Whereas individual surveys might optimise satisfaction of their external user needs by using their own specially defined units and characteristics this is not the best approach. It is far more important to ensure all surveys use the same conceptual and physical set of frozen frames generated by the SBR as this leads to more coherent and cohesive economic statistics. It is much easier for national accounts staff to reconcile statistics coming from the various economic survey programs when all the surveys start from the same base.

10.27 Whereas for internal users accuracy at micro level is important (for example using a wrong address for a unit may result in legal repercussions), for external users accuracy and comparability of SBR derived aggregates are more important. This illustrates the need for trade-offs in setting SBR quality targets and allocating SBR maintenance resources.

10.3.7 Continuous updating of SBR data

10.28 Updating a unit in an SBR requires deciding how to identify and treat the actual changes in the characteristics that have occurred. Such changes can involve the unit's existence, its characteristics and the links between units. Events should be referenced to a specific time point or period. During a given time period, say $(t, t+1)$, the incoming/outgoing flows of units to the SBR, and to the survey frames generated from it, are determined, first, by births and deaths of enterprises, and, second, by changes in the classification characteristics.

10.29 The updating of the SBR over the period $(t, t+1)$ is determined not only by actual economic changes occurring in the real world, but also by correction and updating of characteristics of the units following from SBR maintenance processes. Thus, SBR data cannot be considered in the same way as survey data. A survey does not acquire any additional information once it is concluded, whilst the SBR may acquire data during the period $(t, t+1)$ that refer to a time even earlier than (t) .

10.30 More specifically, in the SBR it is possible to correct retroactively errors in the values at time (t) of characteristics like economic activity code, measure of size, or date at which a cessation or a birth is registered.

Changes are virtually always recorded at a later date than they actually occurred. For example, there can be a delay in recording births and deaths or in recording changes in characteristics in the administrative registers used for updating the SBR. Effective and timely updating of an SBR depends to a large extent on how the administrative sources register the information that they receive from the enterprises. There may be errors and delays, especially in connection with small enterprises. The efforts made to reduce or correct these errors and delays should be commensurate with their likely impact on survey frames, processing and estimates.

10.31 Continuous updating of SBR means there is a possibility of revising any dataset produced by the SBR that is stratified by activity status, or other key characteristics such as economic activity code or number of employees taking into account these two different kinds of changes - actual changes and error corrections. Distinguishing real economic changes from error corrections and delayed updates is a fundamental task in assessing and improving SBR quality.

10.4 Assessing the quality of administrative data for the SBR

10.32 SBR quality assessment involves taking into account the entire process of acquisition, loading and processing of administrative data. Administrative sources can be assessed in terms of the usual standard quality dimensions. Alternatively, or as well, the quality framework developed for registers by Daas et al (2009)³⁹ may prove useful. The quality dimensions are expressed in terms of *hyper dimensions* (Karr et al., 2006)⁴⁰, which are *source, metadata, and data*. Each hyper dimension is composed of several dimensions of quality and each dimension contains a number of quality indicators. The ESSnet on Administrative and Accounts Data⁴¹ also provides further information and examples relating to quality assurance are included in Annex D.

10.33 The *source hyper dimension* measures the extent to which information contained in a data source is exploited. The key associated quality dimensions concern the frequency of delivery (yearly, monthly, continuously), the relevance with respect to the information needed, the extent to which the information actually meets SBR needs, the relationship with the administrative authorities, and the procedures taken to mitigate the dependency risk on the source.

10.34 The *metadata hyper dimension* focuses on the conceptual and process related quality components of

the source metadata. Prior to use, it is essential that the SBR fully understands the metadata and their quality because any misunderstanding is likely to have a serious impact on quality of output based on data from the source. Metadata include the administrative regulations and the clarity with which changes in legal environment are described. The regulations determine the administrative units, the definitions of the data they are to provide, the reference time periods, and the forms used in data acquisition. Comparability is adversely impacted when administrative data for specific reference periods cannot be readily transformed to the reference periods/points required for SBR purposes (for example weekly data, or averages having to be transformed to point in time values). The identification numbering system is also important. If different systems are used by different sources, combining data from the sources is more difficult and error prone.

10.35 The *data hyper dimension* focuses on quality indicators that can describe, in a quantitative or qualitative manner, the quality of data that are input to the SBR. They refer to technical checks, accuracy, completeness, timeliness and integrability.

10.36 Source and metadata quality assessment is usually done by assigning scores to different key dimensions according to the sources used and related metadata.

10.5 Frame errors and their implications for surveys⁴²

10.5.1 Types of frame errors

10.37 As noted in Section 7.6, an error may be defined as "a difference in the information presented in the register and the information as it should be, according to a chosen image of the real world produced and maintained by an accepted instrument and documented procedures".

10.38 The following types of errors may be identified.

Errors in existence

10.39 This type of error is due to false information regarding the demographic characteristics (date of creation and date of cessation) of a particular unit. There are two categories of existence error.

- Units are recorded as economically active, but are not yet active, or no longer active, in the real world. This results in *over-coverage*, which may lead to response problems for statistical surveys based on the SBR.
- Units are economically active but are not present in the SBR. This type of error results in *under-coverage*,

³⁹ Checklist for the Quality Evaluation of Administrative Data Sources (2009), Piet Daas et al, Discussion paper (09042), Statistics Netherlands. More details are provided in Annex D3.

⁴⁰ Data quality: A statistical perspective. Karr, A.F., Sanil, A.P., Banks, D.L. (2006), Statistical Methodology, 3, pp. 137-173.

⁴¹ The Use Of Administrative And Accounts Data For Business Statistics : <http://essnet.admindata.eu/>

⁴² Eurostat – Business Register Recommendations Manual – Chapter 18 – The treatment of errors.

which will lead to under-estimation in survey outputs.

Errors in identification characteristics

10.40 Errors in names, addresses, telephone numbers, etc., can hamper data collection due to problems locating and contacting the units. Errors in names and addresses also impede the use of the SBR as a tool to link and coordinate data from different sources.

Errors in stratification characteristics

10.41 This error type includes errors in legal form, economic activity code, size class (based on number of persons employed, turnover and/or net assets) and geographic location. These errors may affect the inclusion of units in survey samples and certain strata, and in SBR statistics. They may result in inefficient sampling and sample allocation for surveys based on the SBR, and in inaccurate population estimates derived from the SBR.

10.5.2 Impact of errors on survey frames

10.42 SBR errors can have a big impact on the processes and results of surveys based on the SBR.

10.43 Non-response and coverage problems may result in significant non-sampling errors. These two problems are inter-related and can be attributed to SBR errors. For example it may be impossible to contact a unit included in the frame because the contact characteristics are wrong. Units wrongly included in the frame may be selected for the sample and then found to be out of scope, thus reducing the effective sample size. The impact of frame errors on survey estimates is a measure of the accuracy of the SBR.

10.44 Frame errors and their impact on overall survey error can be classified according to the following types.

- *Under-coverage.* The frame derived from the SBR does not include all units within scope for the survey. Reasons for under-coverage are: omissions (lags and leakage), errors in activity status (falsely inactive units), and errors in stratification characteristics (units miscoded so as to be out of scope). SBR under-coverage results in under-estimation.
- *Over-coverage.* The frame derived from the SBR includes units that are out of scope. Reasons for over-coverage are: duplication, errors in activity status (falsely active units), and errors in stratification characteristics (units miscoded so as to be in scope). If an out of scope unit is not identified as being out of scope, the result is over-estimation. If it is identified, its exclusion results in a reduction in effective sample size and hence an increase in the sampling error.
- *Errors in unit characteristics.* Errors in stratification characteristics such principal economic activity code, size code, and location cause inefficient

sampling and sample allocation. Errors in contact data result in increased non-response and non-response follow-up.

10.6 Classification of metadata

10.45 Comprehensive and accurate descriptions of the SBR inputs, processes and outputs are a vital aspect of SBR quality assurance. These SBR metadata may be classified using the following schema.

Source of data

10.46 A source code generally consists of an alphanumeric code that identifies exactly the source used in assigning the value of a characteristic of a unit. For example, it may indicate that the turnover value of a particular enterprise has been taken from VAT data, or that the number of employees' value has been obtained from a particular survey. Every value is assigned a source code.

Procedures used for attribution of unit characteristic values

10.47 These metadata include the procedures used in resolving conflicting information from different sources.

Production process

10.48 These metadata include descriptions of the processes for:

- Acquisition and processing of administrative and statistical data.
- SBR profiling and improvement surveys.
- Production of frozen frames and survey frames.
- Production of statistics.
- Integration of administrative registers.

Updating and error correction process

10.49 These metadata include descriptions of updating processes and determining whether changes occurring in a period reflect real world economic changes or corrections.

Reliability of data

10.50 These metadata include quality indicators and references to the production sources and processes.

Characteristic value updating history

10.51 These metadata include the date/period to which the value of a characteristic relates and the date on which the value was last updated in the live register.

Other documentation about sources and methods

10.52 These metadata may help users to assess the quality of SBR data. Documentation on sources and methods may be disseminated with SBR statistics or be made available through a database (web application) that can be consulted by users.

10.7 Quality assessment methods

10.53 The following paragraphs outline the methods that can be used to assess SBR quality. Some are generic in the sense that they are applicable to all statistical processes and products; others are specific to the SBR.

10.7.1 User survey

10.54 Given that quality is defined in terms of user needs, collecting users' views of the SBR is a first step in SBR quality assessment. The aim is to obtain the views of major groups of users regarding each of the quality dimensions. The views of survey staff that use SBR data are particularly important as they are the primary users. Often the assessment results differ from one type of survey to another one. For example, managers of structural surveys may have a different view of SBR relevance to those responsible for short term statistics. Complete satisfaction of all users is not a realistic goal. In interpreting the results, the relative importance of each of the types of users has to be taken into account.

10.7.2 SBR audit

10.55 *A quality audit is a systematic, independent and documented process for obtaining quality audit evidence (records, statements of fact or other information that are relevant to the quality audit criteria and verifiable) and evaluating it objectively to determine the extent to which the quality audit criteria (set of policies, procedures or requirements) are fulfilled.*⁴³

10.56 *Auditing is a "powerful tool ... by providing important information"*⁴⁴ to improve the quality of the SBR.

10.57 From time to time, an overall audit of the SBR processes and outputs should be undertaken. Since use of external audits can be expensive, it may be desirable to conduct an internal audit. Some NSIs have a unit within the organisation whose role is auditing, and in this case the unit should undertake the audit. In NSIs with no such organisational unit an ad hoc team of auditors should be assembled including both SBR users and other statisticians with limited (or no) exposure to the SBR.

10.7.3 SBR improvement surveys and quality measurement surveys

10.58 The primary purpose of SBR improvement surveys is usually to improve the quality of unit characteristics, by detecting and correcting errors and by filling in missing values. However, such surveys are also a means of measuring SBR accuracy. Indeed, some may be conducted with the primary goal not of correction but of measurement of the quality of characteristics such

as activity status, location, economic activity code and size.

10.59 Such surveys must be designed carefully because of the difficulty in determining the "real" values for comparison with the SBR values. Furthermore, to avoid self-referential findings, the survey results should preferably be analysed by statisticians from outside the SBR.

10.7.4 Auditing clerical work

10.60 Quality audits are a useful tool for monitoring the quality of clerical processing and of automatic updating. They may involve checks on representative samples of clerical update actions (described immediately below) or regular analyses of key characteristics at aggregate level (as described in Section 10.7.6), or, preferably, a combination of the two approaches.

10.61 The aim of auditing clerical processing is to monitor the quality of the clerical input to an SBR. It involves checking samples of clerical updates. The checks should be based on regular, random and representative samples.

10.62 Clerical audits are normally undertaken by experienced staff, who investigate the work of SBR staff to see if the actions that have been taken comply with the processing guidelines. They may also be done assigning the same update actions to different clerks and then comparing the resulting updates.

10.63 Clerical error rates can be monitored over time and reduced, for example by improving procedures and by informing and training staff. Regular summary reports should be produced to inform managers and users.

10.64 The quality auditing function should be closely linked to documentation and training functions, perhaps in a form of quality circle, so that issues are identified, resolved, documented and covered in future staff training. By this means it should be possible to ensure sustained improvement in quality over time.

10.7.5 Macro-editing

10.65 Another class of quality audits involves monitoring changes in the SBR at aggregate level. This should be done on a regular basis and linked to the production and dissemination of the frozen frames.

10.66 Frequency distributions for key characteristics are compared before and after periods of updating (automatic and/or manual) to assess the impact of the changes on various subsets of units and to ensure that all changes can be adequately explained. In performing the analyses priority is given to large units, and to units that are particularly relevant for specific surveys or under particular observation from users.

⁴³ United Nations Statistics Division: National Quality Assurance Frameworks.

⁴⁴ Eurostat – Data quality assessment and tools.

10.7.6 Defining and monitoring quality indicators

10.67 A system of quality indicators for the SBR is a very important means of assessing quality. The construction and use of quality indicators is discussed in the flowing section.

10.8 SBR quality indicators

10.68 The starting point in defining a set of quality indicators for the SBR is an appropriate conceptual framework. This is discussed in Section 10.8.2. As described in the following three sub-sections, SBR quality indicators may be divided into three groups corresponding to processing phases, dealing with:

- Quality of *input*.
- Quality of *processing* (or *throughput*).
- Quality of *output*.

10.8.1 Conceptual framework for quality indicators

Key factors

10.69 Key factors in defining indicators of SBR data quality are the following.

10.70 *Time*. The SBR is constantly evolving, thus quality indicators are characterised by a reference date (t) or period ($t-x$, t). In presence of a lag between the reference period ($t-x$) and the assessment period (t), the indicator describes quality at ($t-x$) measured at (t).

10.71 *Scope*. A quality indicator is applicable to a particular type of unit (say enterprise or local unit) and, within that type, to a subset of all possible units. The sub setting may be formally defined by a filter presented in the form of a logic formula operating on the relevant set of units and their characteristics, for example, *active enterprises born before ($t-x$)*.

10.72 *Sub-population*. A quality indicator must be defined and measured at the level of the sub-populations of interest. Having only global indicators may mask weaknesses in specific sub-populations. It is common to define sub-populations in terms of size (small/medium/big), region, and economic sector.

10.73 *Characteristic*. A quality indicator applies to a particular characteristic of a set of units.

10.74 *Criteria*. To construct a quality indicator it is necessary to have criteria for assessing the quality of the characteristic, unit by unit. For each unit, and for each characteristic, it must be possible to assess whether the value is right/wrong (true/false), or where it lies on a scale of quality between 0 and 1.

Quality assessment mechanisms and criteria

10.75 There are various mechanisms and criteria by which to assess quality as follows.

10.76 *Use of external information source*. A value of a unit in the SBR can be considered as *correct* if it is *sufficiently close* to a reference value from an external

source. This is the most commonly used criterion. It focuses on compliance (i.e., whether the value of a characteristic in the SBR complies with the value of the same characteristic in an external source). It is a proxy for accuracy (whether the value of a characteristic is correct or not) but is the only possible measure when the real value is not known. The *compliance rate* (% of units for which the characteristic assumes a sufficiently close value) is a practical substitute for *reliability rate* (% of units for which the characteristic is correct) when the latter cannot actually be measured.

10.77 *SBR improvement survey (quality survey)*. Quality is assessed by comparison with a reference value obtained by an SBR survey. This approach is expensive.

10.78 *Internal consistency*. A value is deemed *correct* if it is consistent with the other characteristics of the same unit (for example, turnover/employees, main activity/legal status). Definition of consistency edits is difficult. Often they are based on *plausibility criteria*, meaning most true values satisfy these criteria. Even if a characteristic value passes the edit there is no guarantee that it is correct.

10.79 *Temporal consistency*. The quality of a characteristic is defined on the basis of a comparison with its values in previous time periods. The aim is to identify impossible or implausible changes from one period to another.

10.80 *Quality without witness*. It is possible to make an assessment of quality without having a specific reference value or element of comparison. Examples of the basis for such an assessment are:

- The date on which the value was most recently checked or updated - with the underlying principle that the more recent, the better.
- The name of the information source – the likely accuracy of data from a source may be known.
- The methodology adopted – the appropriateness of the methodology may be known.

10.8.2 Quality of SBR inputs

10.81 The SBR typically has many input sources, mostly administrative. As the qualities of these sources affect SBR output quality they are very useful indicators in themselves. From the SBR perspective, though it may be possible to have an influence on the quality of an administrative source, it is not possible to control its quality ex-ante. Thus, the quality of each source should be assessed ex-post by means of suitable analyses to identify errors in the data supplied and to take these into account in using the data.

10.82 Quality assessment includes consideration of the accessibility and clarity of administrative data, meaning the ease with which the SBR updating process can access and interpret the data. Good metadata management requires that data format and content are

precisely reported and data are accompanied by metadata, examples and advice.

10.83 Other simple indicators of the quality of the source are:

- *Time lag*: difference between the date on which the data are supplied and the reference period to which they refer.
- *Completeness of characteristic*: number of missing values; and number of missing values as a proportion of the total number of values.

10.84 Many problems that arise from using administrative sources are caused by changes in the source that are not known to the SBR. Such changes may include changes in registration or cancellation rules, in classification criteria, or in the administrative control processes. Every effort should be made to learn about such changes in advance through agreements and regular communications with the administrative authorities responsible for the sources. However, despite all such efforts, some unanticipated changes may occur. In order to detect and handle such changes, *big changes* – meaning changes in data values that are impossible or implausible during a given period (for example a quarter or a year) – should be identified and reviewed to determine the underlying causes. The main objective is to check the *stability* of the sources and avoid the situation whereby changes that are merely administrative produce structural changes in the SBR that do not reflect economic reality.

10.85 Simple indicators based on the comparison of the values provided in two different years may be formulated along the following lines.

Percentage/proportion of variations (per characteristic)

10.86 For example a simple indicator is the percentage of units that have changed principal economic activity from year t to year $t+1$. This can be computed for the whole population or for a specific subset. Further analytical investigation can be initiated if the value in the reference year exceeds the average level of the indicator over time.

10.87 Comparison of data from a single source over time is also fundamental in analysing the completeness of enterprise births and deaths. Such analysis is essential in helping to detect and minimise under-coverage and over-coverage. Simple counts of the numbers of births or deaths during a reference period do not of themselves provide much information. Viewed as a time series, more complex and useful indicators may be defined.

Indicator for over/under coverage:

10.88 The effect of update delay associated with a source can be obtained by comparing, where available, two values of a characteristic at different points in time, for example:

- The number of cessations, $N_{cess}(T)$, occurring in year t as reported in data received during a period ending at time T ; and
- The number of cessations, $N_{cess}(T+1)$, occurring in year t as reported in data received between time T and $T+1$.

10.89 In this way the lag in the registration of the cessation dates in the input source can be estimated using a simple indicator such as $1 - N_{cess}(T+1)/N_{cess}(T)$. Analysis of this indicator can give an idea how long it is worth waiting to receive cessations before using the data to generate survey frames. The shorter the time the more cessations will be not have been received. The longer the time the fewer the cessations that will not have been received, but the later the frames will be generated relative to the survey reference year.

10.8.3 Quality of SBR processes

10.90 For the purpose of defining quality indicators, SBR processes can be divided into three phases, namely, integration of input data, assignment of values of characteristics, and editing, as described in the following paragraphs.

Phase 1: Integration of input data from administrative sources

10.91 The purpose of this phase is to integrate administrative data from various sources and to create *clusters* referring to the same unit (the enterprise). Two different sub-phases can be distinguished and quality indicators defined for each.

10.92 *First sub-phase: analyse within a source.* For each input source, records that pertain to the same legal unit (as identified, for example, by a common taxation identification number) are integrated. Possible quality indicators are:

- *Number of duplicates as a proportion of the total number of supplied records.* A decrease over time indicates an increase of quality of the source from the perspective of the SBR.
- *Number of new records during a given reference period.* This provides a measure of coverage in terms of unit creations. Comparisons over time and with a benchmark can be used to identify possible problems in supply.

10.93 *Second sub-phase: link between sources.* Records coming from different sources that pertain to the same legal unit (again, for example, as identified by a common taxation identification number) are integrated in order to build-up a *cluster of records* for the same enterprise. The taxation register is, typically, the base used to define the set of legal units and to integrate all the other sources. This phase has the particular aim of identifying the set of administrative data records relating to each individual legal unit. Errors in this phase, such as missing or wrong links, can greatly

affect the data produced in the following phases. Possible quality indicators are:

- (a) Number of clusters of records in period (t) linked to legal units.
- (b) Number of clusters of records in period (t) not linked to legal units.
- (c) Number of clusters of records in year ($t-1$) not linked to legal units.
- (d) Under-coverage indicator: $[(a) \cap (c)]/(a)$.

10.94 The indicator (d) measures the under-coverage due to time lag in the registration of units in the taxation register. It represents the percentage of units already provided in ($t-1$) by other administrative registers, not linked in time ($t-1$) and then linked in the succeeding time (t). They are units that could have been linked and would have been included in the SBR in time ($t-1$) if the base source (typically the taxation register) had successfully contained such units at that time.

Phase 2: Assignment of values of characteristics

10.95 The second phase of the SBR production process comprises the assignment of the values of the characteristics of each unit and the identification of active units in year t . The quality of the assignment procedure for each characteristic can be evaluated using indicators based on outputs produced at each step in implementation of the procedure.

10.96 The characteristic of a unit of which to check the quality first is its *activity status*. This is because the frozen frames and subsequent survey frames contain only active units (more precisely, active, recently active and potentially active units). Thus, other characteristics need only be checked for these units. Quality indicators for each source may be defined along the following lines.

- *Active status concordance rate* = number of units for which the unit has an active status in both the source and the SBR, as a proportion of the number of units in common to the source and the SBR.
- *Inactive status concordance rate* = number of units for which the unit has an inactive status in both the source and the SBR, as a proportion of the number of units in common to the source and the SBR.
- *Activity status discordance rate* = number of units for which the unit activity status differs between the source and the SBR, as a proportion of the number of units in common to source and SBR.

10.97 Sources that may be available for determining or checking activity status are:

- Small and medium size enterprise survey – checks for active and inactive units.
- Foreign trade survey – checks for active units.
- Bankruptcy database – checks for inactive units.

Phase 3: Editing procedures

10.98 The third phase of the SBR production process comprises implementation of the editing and imputation rules used in final identification of the frozen frame for a particular reference period t . In order to measure the quality of the rules, quality indicators can be defined to measure the errors produced by each rule.

10.99 The quality checking plan usually consists of a set of separate quality *project modules*, usually executed sequentially. The project modules may be changed in number and composition according to their results over time. Each project module comprises a set of rules having a similar structure and affecting data in a similar way. The main project modules are:

- *Cleaning* – using rules determining the exclusion of some units from further checks.
- *Deterministic* – using if/then clauses that cause the automatic changes in the values of the relevant characteristics whenever certain conditions occur.
- *Errors* – using rules that generate error warnings whenever certain conditions occur.

10.100 Since the number of edits can be very high, deterministic rules usually focus on peculiar subsets of units and on specific characteristics (for example, on the cross combination of economic activity code and size). The editing process produces error warnings for possible clerical follow-up. There is a need to limit the number of warnings in accordance with the resources available so that SBR staff can concentrate their efforts on economically significant units rather than smaller ones. This is sometimes referred to as *significance editing*.

10.101 The calculation of quality indicators based simply on the number of warnings or errors in a given time period may be misleading. More useful indicators can be built by looking at trends, i.e., measuring the increase or reduction in the number of units that fail each type of edit over time.

10.102 A synthesis of quality indicator values can be achieved along the following lines:

- Variation (in absolute terms and percentages) between t and $t+1$ of counts of units by type of error.
- Variation (in absolute terms and percentages) between t and $t+1$ of counts of units for which values of characteristics have been automatically changed by deterministic rules.
- Variation (in absolute terms and percentages) between t and $t+1$ of counts of units for which a warning is generated and/or that have been manually verified.

10.9 Quality policy and improvement

10.9.1 Quality policy

10.103 Elements of a quality policy can be (1) the decision to measure the quality of SBR, (2) the decision to communicate information about the quality of SBR to all users, and, based on the measurements and the feedback from users, (3) the decision to initiate a program of improving the quality of the SBR.

10.104 As discussed above, the measurement of quality is aligned with three principal groups of activities namely the *input*, *processing* and *output* phases. For each of these phases relevant quality dimensions and indicators are identified and defined, based on the specificity of the sources, infrastructure and resources available.

10.105 A by-product of measuring SBR quality is the generation of metadata and paradata that allow a better knowledge of the state, content, structure and processes of the SBR. Detailed examples from Italy, Columbia, and the Netherlands are provided in Annex D.

10.106 An example of communicating quality policy is an *SBR quality declaration* aimed at all users, internal and external, presenting the quality dimensions and associated indicators. Another example is informing users, in as timely a manner as possible, about significant events related to SBR maintenance, such as the availability of new administrative data, the next frozen frame, changes in important units, and changes in classification.

10.107 The decision to implement an SBR quality programme must be based on a careful analysis of costs and benefits. Benefits should be seen primarily in terms of results of improved quality from a perspective of users, in particular statisticians conducting economic surveys and the national accountants that use the resulting outputs. In addition, the SBR quality programme should be viewed within the broader envelope of an NSI wide program to improve economic statistics rather than being seen as end in itself.

10.9.2 General approach to improving quality

10.108 Quality improvement is an iterative process based on (1) construction of a set of *quality and performance indicators* for SBR inputs, processes and outputs, (2) setting *quality and performance targets*, and (3) defining *quality assessment tools*. These indicators, targets and tools enable monitoring of SBR quality as the basis for formulating, reviewing and implementing quality improvements. The results of monitoring quality should be summarised in quality reports that are made available to SBR staff and to users.

10.109 The following subsections contain examples of ways in which the quality of the SBR can be improved. The examples often concern more than one quality dimension as improvements cannot be made entirely

independently in each quality dimension. There are trade-offs that need to be considered.

10.9.3 Improving timeliness

10.110 In order to have the most representative picture possible of the population of enterprises, the SBR updating process should be as timely as possible whilst at the same time providing the as good coverage as possible. As discussed in Chapters 6 and 7, this is achieved by systematically applying updates available from relevant administrative sources, for example data from corporation registration systems, income tax, VAT and social security systems, chambers of commerce and other trade associations. The aim is to detect creation, structural change and cessation of units as quickly as possible. Administrative data such as sales tax remittances, income tax returns, and payroll deductions provide clear signals that an enterprise is active. Signals indicating when a business becomes inactive are less numerous and timely.

10.111 Another aspect of improving timeliness is reducing the time required to apply updates so that these changes can be quickly reflected in the survey frames. Often survey managers complain that changes they have detected via responses to survey questionnaire are not immediately used to update the SBR because staff spend time in processing the changes and deciding on the appropriate updates. One way of reducing processing time is to permit the survey staff themselves (after having received the appropriate training) to perform the updates. Another possibility is to let the businesses themselves update their own information directly via an appropriate external portal.

10.9.4 Improving completeness

10.112 There should be constant investigation of new ways to extend the SBR by collecting information about enterprises from additional sources. For example, it may be possible to link the SBR to registers like an employment database or industry specific database to obtain additional information on employment size or economic activity.

10.9.5 Improving coverage

10.113 Different strategies must be set up for reducing under-coverage and over-coverage, especially duplication of units. The risk of duplication depends almost entirely on the particular input sources and the matching procedures used in bringing together and un-duplicating data from these sources.

- When matching is based on a common identification system there is a risk of misinterpreting the identification codes, for example a fiscal code may be confused with the VAT code.
- In absence of a common identification, matching depends upon record linkage techniques, for which there are numerous high performance software

applications but still a significant risk of missed matches and mismatches.

10.114 Automated procedures must be adapted to the peculiarities of the situation in any given country.

10.9.6 Improving quality reports

10.115 Reporting on quality is a crucial aspect of a quality programme. The general aim should be to deliver short sub-annual (preferably monthly or quarterly) quality reports to alert users to significant, recent changes in the SBR - changes that affect the frozen frame and hence survey frames and ultimately published economic statistics. Within the report it should be possible to drill down by industry, region, legal status, and administrative source.

10.116 Sub-annual reports should be accompanied by more comprehensive annual quality reports that track smaller changes by month and that show trends over years. They may also report on the results of monitoring particular cases, for example holding companies, foreign controlled transport companies, and discrepancies between employment/turnover for big construction enterprise groups operating abroad.

10.9.7 Providing survey support

10.117 To assist surveys and to monitor the quality of the SBR as seen from a survey perspective, it is vital to provide functionality that:

- Allows a survey to monitor its population, since every survey needs to understand the significant changes that have occurred between survey cycles and wants to track births, deaths, and changes to large units.
- Provides a frame on the basis of which efficient sampling schemes can be designed and panels monitored, and the results from sample surveys can be grossed up to population estimates.
- Provides the information for assembling mailing lists, dispatch of questionnaires, monitoring responses, and contacting units in the event of non-response.

10.118 Such functionality enables SBR and survey staff to monitor their operations and to identify areas of weakness and potential quality improvements.

10.10 Examples of quality indicators by quality dimension

10.119 The particular choice of quality indicators for an SBR depends on an NSI's situation in terms of survey programme, statistical infrastructure and the available resources. Examples of possible quality indicators by quality dimension follow. A much more comprehensive set of indicators developed by the Italian NSI (Istat) for its SBR is detailed in Annex D1.

Input phases

Dimension	Indicators
Timeliness	Time lag for each administrative source (the time lag between registration/updating of data with the administrative source and the delivery of this administrative data to the SBR).
Accuracy	Coverage of each source (measuring under- and over- coverage). Completeness (of characteristics) for each source.

Processing phases

Dimension	Indicators
Punctuality	Time lag (whether survey frame available according to agreed schedule).
Accuracy	Coverage and completeness (measuring the extent to which administrative data are integrated into the SBR). Extent of missed matches and mismatches in linking administrative units and statistical units.
Accessibility	How readily available relevant data are to SBR staff.
Coherence	Internal coherence of units and characteristics within the SBR Coherence with other registers.

Output phases

Dimension	Indicators
Timeliness	Time lag for each survey (time lag in delivery of the survey frame relative to the survey reference period). The currency of the values of the characteristics.
Accuracy	Coverage (completeness of the survey frame for given reference period). Completeness (of values of characteristics). Error rates (for example, percentage of units with wrong address, percentage of units with wrong activity code). Non response rates (as indicator of errors in contact information).
Accessibility	How readily available relevant data are to the users
Coherence	Coherence with other registers

Chapter 11

Key considerations in establishing an SBR

11.1 Introduction

11.1 This chapter provides guidance on the planning, organizational, legal and technical (IT systems) factors that position an SBR for success. It is intended to offer practical suggestions without being overly prescriptive. The environmental circumstances and factors within which countries build their SBRs can be vastly different. The legal frameworks for acquiring data and the access to human, financial and technical resources ultimately greatly influence how an NSI can proceed.

11.2 Some key themes recur, including the following.

- Effective partnerships must be built with data suppliers, funding providers and SBR users, first, by ensuring recognition of the critical role of the SBR in delivering a coherent and reliable national economic statistics program, and, second, by setting up robust governance structures and partner engagement mechanisms.
- Implementing and operating the SBR must be managed in a manner that enables it to focus on and achieve its primary purpose, which is to identify the population of economically active units in a country so that it can be surveyed to acquire useful economic data. An SBR can fulfil other secondary yet highly desirable roles, such as acting as a data collection management and tracking tool, as described in Chapters 2 and 8. The SBR design and implementation plan should allow for adding the corresponding components, but only once the SBR has fully matured as a source of quality statistical frames.
- The approach should be to maintain simplicity to the extent possible. Conceptual and technical complexities should be added only when they serve a practical purpose; they should never divert the SBR from meeting its larger goals.

11.3 The purpose of Chapter 11 is to provide guidance to SBR developers and managers. Section 11.2 is about the key considerations in establishing an SBR. It recommends a modular approach to the development of the SBR. Section 11.3 is about governance and organizational structure, legislative framework, funding, human resources and relations with other registers. Section 11.4 offers recommendations on the IT infrastructure and programming requirements and,

finally, Section 11.5 is about data retention or *safekeeping* of the SBR historical information in order to satisfy operational and analytical purposes.

11.4 The primary reference for the chapter is the AfDB's *Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Registers in Africa (2014): Chapters 13-14, 16-17*.

11.2 Planning considerations

11.2.1 Initial versus longer term scoping: the importance of a modular approach

11.5 An SBR's primary function is as a central frame for economic surveys. This enables conceptual coherence and creates the foundation for an integrated economic statistics program. This fundamental purpose should be the focus at the outset of SBR development.

11.6 The longer term vision, however, should, from the beginning, also allow for addition of other features and components that will further enhance the SBR's value-added. The secondary outputs to be potentially developed after the SBR has become operational as a survey frame are described in Chapters 2 and 8 and are as follows.

- A *survey feedback mechanism* that facilitates the update of frame information based on the information pertaining to frame-based characteristics, such as economic activity classification.
- A *receptacle for tracking survey collection outcomes, response rates and other metrics*.
- A *module to track respondents and response burden*.
- A *source of register-based statistics*. It may be advisable for statistics derived from SBR data to ensure the coordination of the 'base population' as noted in Section 2.10.
- A source for national and *international data exchange*. This requires the usage of common concepts and methods to ensure the coherence in the units and statistics produced by the NSIs involved. This is important as SBR data are used in studies comparing (the structure of) different national economies and other international studies.

11.7 In particular the IT professionals who design the SBR data structures and the overall system benefit from having a longer term vision clearly defined in as much detail as possible. This simplifies addition of

Example from Statistics Canada of increasing SBR coverage

Statistics Canada has gradually expanded its SBR population coverage. Over the past five years, it has added businesses that are essentially constituted by self-employed individuals who pay income tax on their business income as persons not as corporations.

modules as the SBR evolves. Defining all the different modules right at the beginning enables their development to be prioritized and their implementation to be phased.

11.8 An important development task is to determine the characteristics that need to be included in the survey frames, and hence the characteristics that have to be reliably populated and maintained with data from either administrative or statistical sources.

11.2.2 Key considerations for establishing a survey frame

11.9 To reiterate, the SBR must first and foremost provide a reliable listing of enterprises (in the form of a frozen frame) on the basis of which surveys can accurately measure the economic trends of a country. Creating the SBR is challenging, as is keeping it up to date once it is in use. The challenges of creation and maintenance are greatly eased by adhering to the principles outlined below.

Do not over-extend resources in the early stages by trying to cover all types of enterprise

11.10 While a highly developed SBR may cover a vast portion of the economic population, a new SBR must focus on covering the part of the population that is most important economically and that can be most reliably captured and reflected. The need to manage with limited human and technological resources, and to use initial funding efficiently, should limit the scope of the initial SBR population.

11.11 Reflecting the informal economy, which is highly diversified and for which no administrative data exist, cannot be a focus of the SBR development project. However, in certain countries – particularly developing and emerging economies – the informal economy is important, and collecting economic data about it is a priority. Thus, as was discussed in Chapter 3, although the informal sector is not the main focus in setting up the SBR, in such countries it is vital to consider to what extent, if at all, the SBR will cover the informal sector and how the economic production of those enterprises not covered by the SBR can be measured or estimated.

11.12 It is essential to maximise the coverage in every sector of the economy to obtain reliable macroeconomic indicators. Since certain sectors are composed of numerous small enterprises, maximising coverage in these sectors implies the addition of a large volume of records to the SBR that result in very small contribution to overall macro-economic indicators (such as GDP) but significant contributions in certain sectors.

11.13 Including these small businesses is also useful as the data they provide support policy analysis pertaining to business formation strategies, small business financing and other micro-economic issues, and greatly assist in the economic analysis of entrepreneurship and the SME sector. Thus, a progressive approach is recommended whereby a country first focuses on developing an SBR system designed to maintain large units that are economically most relevant to its GDP, and subsequently aims to develop automated processes to include the smaller units. Completing the development of the SBR in terms of coverage is one of today's common concerns in developed countries. The initial development plan for the SBR system should incorporate the flexibility to accommodate a substantial increase in coverage due to the later inclusion of a (potentially very large) number of small units.

11.14 In determining appropriate coverage, the environment within which the NSI operates should be considered as well as the data that can be reliably acquired from administrative sources and the resources that are required to efficiently obtain, process, and load the administrative records.

Plan for a system that provides both live and frozen versions of the register

11.15 As initially discussed in Chapter 2, the SBR environment should include both the live register and the frozen frames:

- The live register receives updates that are instantly recorded and used for contacting the businesses.
- The sequence of frozen frames is produced from the live register monthly, quarterly or annually and is the source from which survey programs draw their sample files.

11.16 A frozen frame contains all the salient characteristics that are stored in the SBR for a particular unit, including its unique identifier and its size, geographic, sector and economic activity characteristics. Survey programs can use a frozen frame to identify and stratify their sub-population of interest and draw samples.

11.17 The set of frozen frames also provides a basis for period-to-period comparisons of frame quality. Point-in-time estimates can be calculated and compared with one another to examine the number of units being birthed, deathed, re-classified, etc. This greatly facilitates the identification of anomalies and problem records. Frozen frames are also used in research and analysis projects, for example, business demographics and longitudinal studies such as entrepreneurship analysis.

Example from Statistics Canada

In Canada, the SBR is a critical component of the economic statistics programs of the national statistical agency, Statistics Canada. The SBR is therefore held, managed and maintained within the agency. Statistics Canada is within the Minister of Industry's portfolio. It also has close ties to the Department of Finance, other federal departments, and provincial, territorial and local government organizations to ensure that the economic statistics are relevant.

Strategic direction of Statistics Canada's program' is governed by various committees and working groups across the different levels of government. The program's governance model provides clear direction, enables periodic review of results and enables identification and execution of adjustments to achieve expected outcomes. The governance framework also enables transparent, effective and efficient decision-making, and supports accountability and continuous improvement of the program.

11.3 Governance and organizational considerations

11.18 Organizational aspects of an SBR, such as relationships with administrative data providers (for example, the tax authority), stakeholders (for example, the central bank) and SBR users (especially survey statisticians) are discussed in this section.

11.19 In almost all NSIs, the SBR resides in an economic division/department or a statistical infrastructure division/department within the NSI.

11.20 The governance and organizational structure of the SBR within NSI are important — both in developing the SBR and, even more, in maintaining it and providing support for users. The SBR should be, if possible, a separate organisational unit with a dedicated manager within the NSI. The unit should assume the following responsibilities:

- Define and document all concepts, in line with international, national and local statistical standards.
- Plan and direct the development of SBR system processes and functionalities, including built in business rules and system edits to prevent significant errors and enhance system control.
- Plan and implement a quality assurance program for the SBR with the goals of assessing its quality and ensuring its continued integrity, and defining and producing SBR quality indicators.
- Identify system improvements and recommending adjustments to the training program or procedures where required.
- Profile businesses to delineate those that are larger and more complex, and thus to properly represent their production output.
- Ensure that businesses are classified according to the standard economic activity classification.

- Create statistical units, using data from administrative sources, profiling activities and other surveys, to create a complete and unduplicated SBR aligned with the needs of the system of national accounts (SNA) and other users.
- Validate new development strategies, specifications and procedures.
- Develop and deliver courses and material to educate the full range of SBR users and stakeholders, including profilers, frame specialists, analysts, coders, survey areas and collection areas.
- Develop a certification process so that those wishing to access the SBR must first achieve an appropriate level.
- Develop an online system for all internal users, enabling them to browse and update specific enterprise structures and specific units.
- Support those who use SBR data, which includes evaluating their needs as related to surveys or analysis.
- Provide direction and support on legal aspects related to SBR data, such as access and dissemination.
- Maintain a dedicated group tasked with producing data for users and processing all data related to SBR maintenance.

11.3.1 Relationships with users

11.21 To understand and gather users' needs the SBR should have a consultation mechanism. The most important users are the survey areas and ultimately, the SNA. The SBR staff should meet survey statisticians regularly to understand the changes in the economic world and corresponding requirements for SBR data. Every request from a user should be reviewed and prioritized based on its potential impact (benefits) and the availability of resources.

Example: Portion of the Statistics Act allowing Statistics Canada to access administrative data:

Statistics Act (Section 13): A person having the custody or charge of any documents or records that are maintained in any department or in any municipal office, corporation, business or organization, from which information sought in respect of the objects of this Act can be obtained or that would aid in the completion or correction of that information, shall grant access thereto for those purposes to a person authorized by the Chief Statistician to obtain that information or aid in the completion or correction of that information.

11.22 As the SBR is a single source serving multiple users, balancing requests within the limits of the resources available is challenging. The SBR manager must always be aware of the role of the SBR within the context of the larger statistical program.

11.3.2 Legislative framework

11.23 As stated earlier, access to administrative records, such as corporate tax returns, business registrations, payroll deductions and value added tax remittances, is fundamental in building a centralized SBR. Many countries legally require the provision of such administrative data to the NSI for the purpose of compiling official statistics, and this authority, where it exists, must be fully leveraged to build an SBR.

11.24 In implementing the legislation, or even in the absence of it, detailed agreements, usually formal *memoranda of understanding (MOU) or service level agreement (SLA)*, should be signed with the administrative agencies as discussed in Section 6.2.1. MOUs are crucial because they establish a framework of general rules and procedures for interdepartmental data exchanges, and they specify data protection measures. More specifically, an MOU should clearly spell out the terms for acquiring the administrative data, it should stipulate the types of data required, the likely treatment of the data and the pre-established acquisition schedule, and it should also specify the data security measures and the means of transmission to be used.

11.3.3 Funding and development phases

11.25 The funding model for the SBR is itself an important aspect of its governance and decision-making process, and should be carefully considered at the outset.

11.26 The costs of creating and maintaining the SBR are not likely to be recovered on a fee-for-service basis as the SBR is a *public-good* type of resource used by multiple programs for diverse purposes. Some individualized activities, such as preparation of special data requests for individual external users, may yield revenues to offset the incremental costs of serving those users. Benchmarking of cost structures may give useful information of the cost-efficiency. However, developing and maintaining the SBR are generalized expenses, the majority of which are likely funded from the public purse, e.g., as part of the NSI's budget.

11.27 The key questions are thus: who should make the budget requests? and who should control the budgeted funds once they are received?

11.28 The precise answers depend on the organizational governance structures in place, but the overall objectives should be the same, namely to ensure that funds are allocated (and guarantee an ongoing functional budget) so as to fulfil the larger objectives of the economic statistics program in an optimal fashion. The manager of the SBR should be able to make specific budget decisions within the framework of this larger governance structure.

11.29 Developing and implementing an SBR consists of three distinct phases from a funding perspective: *pre-build, development, and post-build operations*. It is important that the last mentioned is included the development funding plans.

Conceptual development (pre-build) phase

11.30 This phase requires initial funding and resources for the following pre-build tasks:

- Defining the purposes, uses and roles of the SBR, i.e., the data and services that should be produced to meet users' needs: to this end, consultations with users and stakeholders should occur from the start through all phases.
- Outlining a clear overall picture of the future SBR.
- Defining the initial scope of an SBR development project.
- Defining the initial coverage of the population of enterprises.
- Determining method(s) to derive the statistical units.
- Analysing and determining all the data inputs needed to populate the live register and to create a coherent, accurate and timely set of frozen frames.
- Obtaining access to the input data sources; this may require drafting MOUs between the NSI and other departments; and negotiating legal, ongoing data transfer agreements with organisations that will supply data, e.g., the authorities responsible for tax data.
- Determining the availability of, and analysing, the necessary stratification characteristics.
- Defining activation rules - what signal(s) or specific characteristics determine when an enterprise is to be considered active.
- Defining the most viable means of receiving business inactivation and cessation information.

- Identifying and determining the availability of administrative data from various sources; initial and ongoing cost is greatly influenced by the accessibility and usability of data input.
- Determining if there will (or should be) be an economic census as a source of input which itself depends on the availability and accessibility of administrative data.
- Outlining the processes that will assess the quality, validate and treat the data before they are loaded into the SBR.
- Defining components for future developments, using the modular approach as discussed earlier in the chapter, like a module to track respondents and response burden.

Development phase

11.31 Development phase funding depends on the decisions made during the pre-build phase. A modular development approach is advantageous because development can be phased in and compartmentalized, module by module. For a fully operational SBR, the following modules should be funded and fully functional for the initial SBR:

- Live register, covering targeted population.
- Batch load and update processes.
- Online tools supporting SBR maintenance.
- Frozen frames, outputs for surveys.
- Quality assurance.

Post-build operations phase

11.32 The SBR should be seen as a continuously evolving entity within the NSI. A long-term vision supported by senior management is needed. A senior steering committee should oversee the needs and usage of the SBR. This ensures that the SBR will evolve in accordance with the agency's general data requirements and functionalities/roles. A ten year investment plan should be outlined as input to preparation of the funding schedule. In addition to the funds reserved to support the ongoing production and system maintenance of the SBR, this long term plan should be reviewed annually and adjusted to new business requirements and the current NSI budget reality.

11.3.4 Human resources

11.33 The human resources allocated to the SBR depend on the financial support that the NSI is prepared to dedicate to developing and maintaining an SBR. Investing in a high quality SBR that is timely, accurate, coherent and user-friendly results in lower costs and/or better quality in other parts of the economic statistics

program, for example by facilitating more precise sampling methodology, lowering collection costs and respondent burden, improving response rates, and providing higher quality estimates. To the fullest extent possible, the human resources allocated to the SBR should be *dedicated to the SBR*, i.e., not have any other function.

11.34 Regarding the organizational structure of the SBR, there is no international standard, or even commonly used practice, amongst NSIs. Therefore, each NSI has to determine its own particular SBR structure and the SBR's place within the economic statistics infrastructure and program as a whole. Factors to consider in this determination are:

- Numbers of staff in the NSI and economic statistics program – evidently the SBR cannot expect to have more than its fair share of the human resources.
- Number of surveys that the SBR is servicing, or will service.
- Degree of centralization/regionalization of the NSI and scope/need for regional business registers.
- Sophistication of computer systems supporting SBR operations.

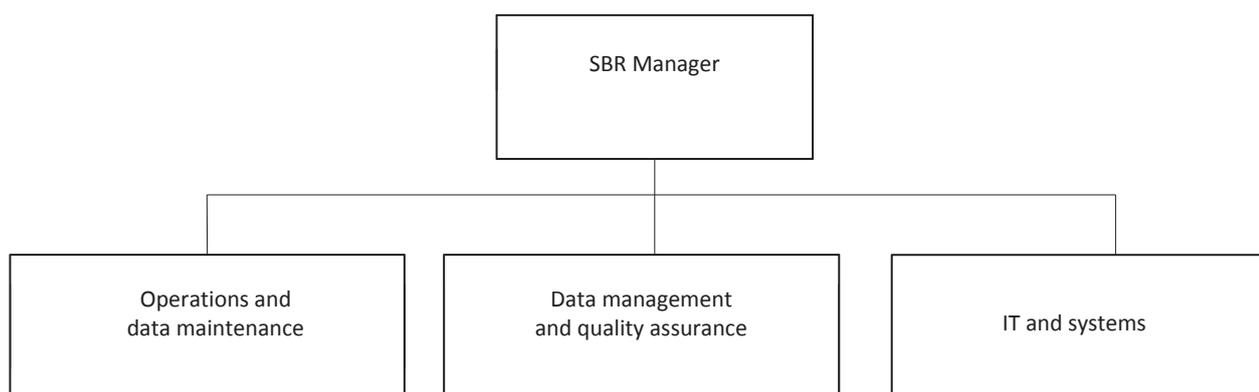
Ongoing operational requirements and organization

11.35 The operational structure of a completed SBR, as well as the corresponding funding structure, should be clearly set out in advance to prevent the build project from creating an ineffective or underutilized SBR. Although many alternative groupings of the functions are possible, Figure 11.1 and the following paragraphs present a feasible structure involving three SBR sections, i.e., organisational work units, with distinct roles: *operations and data maintenance, data management and quality assurance, and IT and systems*.

11.36 Each section can be expanded, contracted, or modified as need be to take account of the particular circumstances of the NSI, in particular the resources it has at its disposal, and the functions that the SBR performs. The sectional structuring has been devised to delineate clearly the essential tasks, responsibilities and funding commitments. Opportunities for efficiency and collaboration between the sections can be pursued.

Operations and data maintenance section

11.37 The staff of this section undertake all the basic tasks associated with operating an SBR, including processing administrative data, processing frame data feedback from surveys, performing profiling activities, producing frozen frames and training staff and users. Securing and committing full-time personnel to these tasks is essential to ensure that the SBR data remain relevant and accurate. The size of the section depends

Figure 11.1 Operational structure of an SBR

on the coverage of the SBR at its outset. Its structure can be expected to change as SBR coverage and content improve.

11.38 A realistic, well-funded and evolving maintenance strategy is a crucial aspect of the SBR. For example, in the case of profiling, the exact nature of the signals and processes that prompt a profiler to review a particular enterprise structure should be reassessed over time. When an SBR is new, the section might simply schedule regular profiling of the largest so many enterprises. Subsequently it might target profiling operations more specifically to those large enterprises for which data collection is proving most difficult.

11.39 The section should comprise:

- Specialists in SBR concepts and business structures, to perform profiling.
- Specialists in administrative data sources and processes.
- Industry classifications specialists.
- Operational staff.

11.40 The section should be responsible for:

- Acquiring and processing administrative data.
- Processing frame data feedback from surveys.
- Performing profiling and classification activities.
- Investigating and correcting errors and inconsistencies that are identified by users or the quality assurance section.
- Producing frozen frames.
- Training SBR staff and users.

Data management and quality assurance section

11.41 While the SBR is being established, and after it is established, the scope of the staff that are initially responsible for analysing the incoming data should be extended to assessing quality requirements and developing a quality assurance strategy. Consistency

checks should be built into the system to improve system control and prevent errors. A person, or a team, ideally with a good understanding of SBR concepts and of enterprise structures and strong technical skills in validating data and data processes, should analyse frame data and investigate potential quality issues.

11.42 This *data management and quality assurance section* should be maintained as part of the SBR's ongoing operation. The team should comprise:

- Data source specialists, to create specifications and/or use cases for the development of business rules and automated processes for acquiring and processing administrative and statistical data.
- Specialists in SBR concepts and business structures (having experience in economic statistics and survey cycle is relevant).
- Survey interface specialists.
- Data analysts.

11.43 This team should be responsible for:

- Providing specifications of the characteristics to be populated in the database tables, maintaining the content of the tables and submitting new or modified specifications as needs arise and shift.
- Perform acceptance testing of changes made to the SBR systems, interfaces and processes.
- Assessing data from administrative sources.
- Conducting internal analysis and coherence checks on frame information.
- Reviewing requests from survey statisticians and other SBR users (including SBR staff themselves) for improvements or modifications to SBR metadata, characteristics and outputs, prioritizing these requests and creating specifications for future development and improvements.
- Liaising with survey staff to ensure that they understand SBR processes and outputs, and that

they are submitting and receiving files from the SBR as needed.

- Ensuring the quality of frozen frames before they are released to users.
- Identifying significant errors.
- Ensuring that updates are timely, coherent and accurate.
- Documenting concepts, processes or coverage changes over time.

IT and systems section

11.44 Maintaining the SBR requires dedicated IT staff. The section ensures that the systems and software needed for extracting data are properly programmed and optimized. The section also maintains, and possibly advances or further develops, the graphical software that enables SBR staff to easily access and update the SBR content. This may initially be restricted to packaged server software (e.g., Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio). In addition the section ensures that certain derivation tasks are programmed and run correctly.

11.45 At least one database administrator (DBA) is required. The DBA interacts with the database management system processes and tables that make up the SBR, and ensures that the tables are accessible and available for production of the outputs. The DBA is responsible for ensuring that the database is functional. The DBA also ensures that the database can be updated and queried as required.

11.46 The number of dedicated IT personnel required for the implementation and maintenance of the SBR depends on the volume and nature of the functional and non-functional requirements for the specific SBR implementation. They must also be competent to handle specific IT requirements, to develop and maintain the SBR application, and to test newly developed features. The number required could range from one or two dedicated persons for a simple SBR to a team of experts during the course of a complex implementation.

11.47 The types of IT specialists required include:

- Architect
- Database administrator
- Developer, with knowledge (as needed) of .NET, Java, SAS, T-SQL, PL/SQL
- Information analyst
- IT project manager
- Systems analyst
- Tester

11.48 In smaller teams one person may perform more than one type of task.

11.3.5 SBR training

11.49 The SBR manager is responsible for developing and maintaining a training program for NSI staff who will work with the SBR. The training program should be designed to be easily divided into separate modules, which can focus on specific needs of different user groups.

11.50 As a first priority, the training program should be designed and implemented to ensure that all users understand the basic concepts and information available in the SBR. This training should be delivered to all users who are planning to use or interact with the SBR.

11.51 Secondly, all users who are planning to use the SBR system interface should be trained in the system's functionalities.

11.52 Thirdly, a more in-depth training program should be developed and provided to the staff that conduct profiling activities and perform frame updates. This is particularly important in ensuring that profiles of complex business structures are completed and organized properly so that the appropriate statistical elements from which samples can be drawn can be consistently obtained.

11.53 Finally, if the SBR is accessible through an interface by the survey collection staff, training should be developed and given to interviewers who directly contact businesses during survey collection activities. This part of the training program would focus on the maintenance of the respondent (business contact) information, and should ensure that interviewers are trained to gather the necessary information to update the frame information directly or provide the relevant information to the SBR maintenance team or profilers.

11.54 It is likely that other specialized training may need to be developed, depending on the variety of SBR functions available, the types of access that can be granted and various user roles allowed. There is also the possibility of aligning training with a user certification process which gives different permissions to access the various areas and functions of the SBR. Ideally, certification would require attendance at the necessary training sessions and/or successful completion of written tests to ensure the content is adequately grasped.

11.55 In summary, the SBR training program should comprise specific courses and training material that address the needs and requirements of all users, allowing them to have all of the required information they need to use the SBR system with the appropriate level of access and permissions.

11.56 It is important to keep training materials and courses updated to reflect developments in the SBR and to meet users evolving needs. New users should be able to receive the support in the form of material and training that they need within a reasonable timeframe. Training material and other documentation supporting the training should include:

- SBR concepts definitions, including types of units, attributes and relationships.
- Interface functionalities.
- Industrial classification.
- Update guide and procedures.
- Database metadata and frozen frame record layout.
- Glossary.

11.4 IT considerations

11.57 This section provides notes and recommendations on the IT infrastructure and programming requirements for the build phase of an SBR system. Cost and resource requirements can be inferred.

11.58 When establishing an SBR, there are many possible technologies. The choice should take into account scalability, cost and maintenance. The technology should be flexible enough to evolve with new requirements.

11.59 As there is no international standard or even commonly used practice amongst NSIs regarding the design of an SBR system per se, general international IT standards and guidelines, such as the Open Group Architecture Framework (TOGAF) and Solutions Integrated Development (SID) should be considered. The main consideration is to develop an SBR system that fits within the NSI IT architecture and that is as compatible as possible with other systems like the administrative data acquisition systems and the business survey collection systems.

11.4.1 Project management methodology

11.60 The development and implementation of a new SBR is a significant undertaking and should be managed as a project. If the NSI has a defined project management methodology, then it should be applied. If there is no existing organizational standard, then well accepted international standards such as PRINCE2 and PMI/PMBOK should be evaluated with the goal of selecting one of them.

11.61 As a general rule, the level of rigour in implementing the project management methodology should be scaled to the size of, complexity of, and risk associated with, the project.

11.4.2 Software development methodology

11.62 The development and implementation of the system required to support the establishment of the SBR is always a substantial part of the overall effort required. Many organizations have IT standards and, of course, these should be followed. Where this is not the case, an appropriate methodology should be adopted. Modern methodologies place a high focus on agility, demonstrating value to stakeholders quickly and regularly, managing change, proving the technical

architecture early, managing risk continuously, and establishing frequent checkpoints (quality gates) for evaluation and realignment of scope, cost, schedule and quality.

11.63 IT development can be implemented in two phases:

- a) *Acquiring an initial database infrastructure* - keeping in mind the modular approach to growing the SBR, the infrastructure should be expandable and flexible.
- b) *Programming and process development* required in order to create:
 - The tables that make up the database.
 - The main statistical outputs of the frame (sampling frames, sample files, etc.).
 - The applications, programs and tools required to query and update the database to support business workflows and interface with other systems, for example, the administrative data, survey, and collection systems.
 - Data transfer processes in a standard data format (for example SDMX).

11.64 As with project management methodology, the software methodology should be scaled to the size, complexity and risk of the project.

11.4.3 Solution architecture

11.65 The requirements for an IT solution are commonly split into two groups; *functional requirements* and *non-functional requirements*.

11.66 *Functional requirements* indicate what the system is expected to do, i.e., the set of functions and user tasks that the system must be able to implement. A function can be described in terms of inputs, behaviour and outputs. The scope of the SBR coverage, the number of characteristics (real, estimated and derived), and the required interfaces and interactions with other systems are, along with other items, reflected in the functional requirements of the system.

11.67 *Non-functional requirements* indicate overall requirements that do not pertain specifically to functions of the system. Some examples are compliance with organisation's technical standards, performance, scalability, security, availability, accessibility, quality, and usability.

11.68 Functional and non-functional requirements are necessary inputs to decisions that need to be made regarding the solution architecture. The architect considers patterns, practices, tools and technologies to arrive at a design and system architecture that optimally satisfies the requirements. Most modern, complex solutions are implemented with a layered architecture, of which a simple generic example is illustrated in Figure 11.2.

11.4.4 Database

11.69 There are a number of options, including a relational database management system (RDBMS), an object-oriented database management system (OODBMS), a key-value store, hierarchical database system, flat files, or even a spreadsheet based solution. An RDBMS is the predominant choice for a core piece of infrastructure such as an SBR. It is recommended on the basis of the following strengths:

- Extensive capacity to implement security.
- Extensive capacity for scalability.
- Extensive capacity for support of concurrent users.
- Capacity to enforce referential integrity and improved data integrity.
- Efficient storage facilitated by normalization and lack of data duplication.
- Efficient application code.
- Flexible and standardized query language.
- Ability to be extended for future requirements.

11.70 A relational database enables proper segmenting of the areas that make up the whole, which in turn enables a proper maintenance strategy. The database should be scalable as there may be an increasingly large number of observations to process.

11.71 SBR data should be stored in a purpose built database that can support all the types of units in the economic units model, and their inter-relationships and characteristics, and that has appropriate confidentiality and access provisions.

11.72 There should be provision in the database, or within an associated, controlled environment, for storing and accessing data generated by all SBR functions, including snapshots, frozen frames, survey control files, respondent reporting obligations and statuses, and respondent burden.

Frame, collection and respondent burden modules

11.73 In its primary capacity of providing frames for surveys, the SBR should be seen as a database that stores both the frame data (including unique identifiers and stratification characteristics) as well as data about the collection processes. The required collection data include the units sampled, information on how and from where data about these units are to be collected, and the outcomes of the collection efforts. These data are input to the SBR respondent burden module that provides an agency-wide view (i.e., across economic statistical programs) of the reporting burden that the NSI places on enterprises, and a record of any efforts to mitigate this burden, for example by using tax data in place of survey data.

11.74 A key benefit of using a relational database as the foundation of the SBR is that tables can be created, developed and maintained apart from one another. This provides great flexibility regarding resource requirements and allocation, the sophistication of the various tables, and the capacity to build on different modules at different rates. Thus, initial resources should be devoted to developing the core SBR tables and its main outputs, with simple collection tables to track which units in the SBR are sampled most heavily. Future resources can be allocated more efficiently as usage is tracked. The respondent burden module may be developed at a later stage.

Figure 11.2 Layered architecture

Presentation layer	Implements the user interface and manages user interaction with the system.
Service layer	Exposes interfaces and system functionality to other systems, and may also be the boundary between the presentation and business layers.
Business layer	Implements the core functionality and business logic.
Data access layer	Implements access to and interaction with data stores.

11.4.5 Database Management System (DBMS) options

Relational databases and SQL

11.75 The modular approach to building the SBR is aided by using a relational database structure that enables creation of different tables and modules in isolation from one another. Using a RDBMS solution such as Microsoft SQL Server, or Oracle, offers other benefits too, including predefined software server applications, like SQL Server Management Studio, and international standards for querying the database using Structured Query Language (SQL). When appropriate and cost-efficient components, codes or architectures may be shared or re-used.

11.76 Figure 11.3 below, represents two tables from a relational database model. The first table (the Statistical Unit table) contains the statistical unit’s unique identifier with a few basic characteristics of the units, and the second table (the Relationship table) contains the parent’s identifiers of each unit.

Database cost considerations

11.77 Functional and non-functional requirements for the SBR can have significant cost implications at the database layer in terms of licensing, amount and type of storage required, quantity and capacity requirements of the database servers, and levels of effort required by the database administrator (DBA) and other IT support staff. Here are some items that need to be considered.

- *Functional requirements:* coverage levels, number of characteristics, scope of functionality implemented (i.e., number of subsystems, screens and business processing logic), and interfaces with other systems;

these requirements have a direct effect on the number and size of database tables required, and therefore on the storage required.

- *Non-functional requirements:* performance, load, availability, and number of environments; these requirements have an effect on the cost of the IT hardware required to implement the solution.

11.78 An enterprise class RDBMS enables addition of servers and databases as resources and growth dictate.

11.79 Another benefit of a relational database is that users can link tables across several databases to perform analyses and track data.

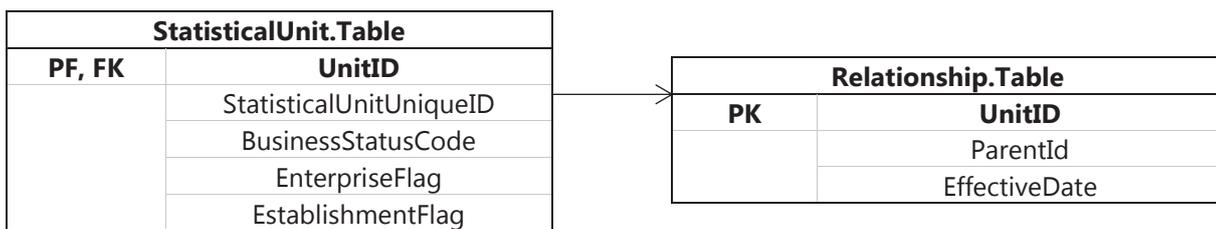
11.80 When possible it will be cost efficient to reuse database code, e.g. for store procedures.

Simple database solutions

11.81 Compared with enterprise class RDBMS solutions, there are other, lower cost options for simple database solutions. However, the reduced costs are accompanied by loss of functionality and flexibility (for usage and future growth) compared with what a relational database offers. For example, MS Access can be used to run a limited SBR, but with several shortcomings:

- The inability to program sophisticated data constraints.
- Limitations on how users can query and update tables simultaneously.
- Constrained ability to proceed with a modular approach that enables gradual introduction of databases and tables.
- Limited security controls.

Figure 11.3 Simplified data model example of 2 tables



Database construction and organization

11.82 Designing database tables involves deciding which tables will house which characteristics, and the manner in which these tables should interact. The IT team should also determine how data are backed up and secured, and should create a set of database roles (for example, *write access*) to be assigned to users, as needed.

11.83 Another important task in table design is creating unique identifiers for the records in the SBR, both to identify specific records and to identify relationships between the records. Creating and maintaining hierarchical relationships is essential as they enable users to denote the parent–subsidiary relationships of enterprises, and the operational links between enterprises and establishments.

Advantages of relational database: quality assurance and data coherence processes

11.84 Another advantage of a relational database system is that data constraints can be placed on tables. This ensures that inputs, either from statistical or from administrative sources, can be required to meet certain criteria in order to be loaded. This in turn enables automated quality checks on data when they are loaded. Furthermore, dividing different types of information into multiple tables allows for data segregation, and thus analysis can be atomized further.

11.85 The IT development team should be contracted to insert appropriate data constraints. As well, they should design *data coherence programs* that can be used to determine outliers and validate the internal coherence of information, for example, that the revenue of an establishment is not greater than the revenue of the corresponding enterprise. Constraints on data should also be implemented as a control on the quality of the data received and loaded from external sources.

11.4.6 Programming requirements

Graphical user interface and database server software

11.86 The manner in which users interact with the SBR is a crucial decision in the build process. In deciding whether or not to develop a tailor-made graphical user interface (GUI), two groups of factors should be considered: first, the *types of users and their requirements*; and, second, *the relationship between the SBR itself and its outputs*.

11.87 Users of the SBR include:

- SBR staff whose task is to ensure that SBR information is accurate and up to date.
- Survey statisticians and analysts, who want to review the enterprises and corresponding structures in the SBR that affect their own statistical programs with a view to updating their particular populations.
- Sampling statisticians and other statistical staff, who analyse their frames to select samples.

11.88 Each group of users has different requirements. Sampling statisticians are most interested in analysing the outputs from the frame at aggregate level to help in optimising sample design, and thus, for them, a GUI is not particularly important.

11.89 On the other hand, profilers and survey statisticians greatly benefit from a GUI that enables them to easily search, browse and update individual units in the SBR. A GUI also minimises the need for all staff to understand SQL and database querying.

11.90 However, a GUI can involve large development and maintenance costs, including those for design, coding and additional server infrastructure. Without a GUI, there is still plenty of capacity to group and analyse enterprises based on the database tables. Initially running database server software like SQL Server Management Studio, or SAS, to access and query SBR data may be economical. The SBR can be made operational and can start producing the needed outputs more quickly and cheaply than if a GUI has to be developed.

11.91 In summary, given that a GUI is not an essential SBR tool, in the initial stages of SBR development the cost–benefit is tilted against introducing a GUI. However, a GUI may be integrated into some standard database software. Also, keeping in mind that survey frames are ultimately the main output of the SBR, a GUI is a tool that may be worth introducing at a later stage to enable statistical staff to more easily browse, profile and update the units in their frames.

Production of survey frames and sample files

11.92 The extraction process by means of which survey frames are produced requires relatively little programming, as it is a derivative product of the database tables themselves. The exact design and types

Example from Canada

In Canada every business that registers with the Canada Revenue Agency is assigned a *Single Business Registration Number (SBRN)*, commonly known as the BN, or Business Number. Thus, it is essential, first, for SBR staff to have a clear understanding on how to relate and/or link the BN to statistical units and, second, to include the BN within the SBR as a key identifier.

of SBR database tables, and the unique identifiers to be used, should have already been determined before the design of the extraction processes. The main effort required from survey and sampling statisticians is in determining which characteristics should be available in the frames, and which in the sample files.

11.93 Creating a data repository to archive frames and sample files is recommended as these are the primary outputs of an SBR. Maintaining these files is important from a data management perspective. They also offer a key input for future analysis and development work.

11.4.7 IT environments

11.94 The IT solution should properly manage the deployment of new features. A full scale solution may involve five distinct environments.

- 1) *The production environment* should be a dedicated version of the system, including the active data that are being updated.
- 2) *The practice environment* has the same code as production, but the data are not being continuously updated. This environment is typically used to perform updates that mimic what would happen in production. It enables users to check and see how their changes would affect the overall process.
- 3) *The user acceptance environment* enables testing of new programming functionality before moving the code into the production and practice environments. It typically has fictitious data that are developed solely to test various scenarios.
- 4) *The development environment* is dedicated to systems programmers, who use it to test their own programming. Once code is system-tested, it can be moved into the user acceptance environment to be tested by users.
- 5) *The analysis environment* is dedicated to analysts performing quality evaluation and simulation testing. This environment offers analysts access to a mirror image of the data available in the production environment without disturbing the production processes.

11.95 The first environment is essential, the third and fifth environments are highly desirable. As a minimum, there should be a production environment and one

other environment in which all forms of testing and analysis can take place.

11.96 It is important to consider how all other systems link to the SBR when establishing these environments. For example, if end-to-end testing across systems is required, the SBR user acceptance environment needs to be linked to the user acceptance versions of the linked systems.

11.4.8 Programming language

11.97 The choice of programming language is crucial, and the options should be researched thoroughly. A poor choice could lead to premature redesign and costly maintenance processes. The chosen language should be sufficiently common that knowledgeable staff and training are readily available, and it should have a demonstrated long shelf life.

11.4.9 Relationships with other systems and registers

11.98 The SBR should be established knowing that it may be linked to other registers or lists. Thus, from the start, standard definitions and concepts should be used, and the most commonly used unique identifiers for each type of businesses should be included. If a commonly known identification numbering system for legal units does not exist, the SBR should create one itself.

11.99 Developing a flexible SBR system that enables adding to and maintaining the various concordances between identifiers is important. It facilitates linking the SBR to satellite systems that create and maintain their own identifiers. A module to store and maintain specific variables of partners or SBR users will help to further facilitate interaction with other systems.

11.4.10 Establishing a unique identifier for statistical units

11.100 The establishment of unique identifiers is essential for accurate maintenance of the SBR. There is a technical need to have a unique identifier to load and maintain each unit within the SBR database. The sequential assignment of unique identifiers is effective. It is even more effective when the unique numbers are created and managed centrally, and are used by all statistical systems and processes throughout the entire statistical organisation. Having SBR assigned identifiers is also a good means of reducing the risk of

Example of database structure from Statistics Canada

In Canada, the SBR is now maintained in about 30 databases on five separate servers. The online transaction processing (OLTP) Production Database is a separate database and server that can only be accessed and updated using the Business Register System (BRS) application. A snapshot of the frame is stored in a separate database on a separate server, so that analysis, quality assurance and reporting activities do not impact the OLTP performance. Likewise, the Survey Interface Repository (SIR), which enables survey areas and systems to access information required for sampling and analysis of survey collection information, is stored on a separate server and database so that its workload does not impact the OLTP performance and scalability.

inadvertently disclosing confidential micro-data by use of easily identifiable and recognizable information such as the tax number or the business name.

11.101 Here are some of the key elements to consider when creating a unique identifier for the SBR.

- Create an identification numbering system *for each statistical unit, no matter what type*. Multiple business numbers lead to added complexity in SBR systems, and introduce risks such as duplication and omission of statistical units.
- Use a *non-confidential identifier* in order to facilitate the statistical processing. It should not contain any information about the business. All the statistical processing such as edit, imputation and estimation can make use of this non-confidential identifier in their processes.
- Ensure these unique identifiers have *no meaning* (other than, possibly, indicating the type of unit) and are *only be used for statistical purposes*.
- Ensure that the unique identifiers *cannot be reused*. Ensure that the length of the identifier is sufficient

to account for the total number of statistical units the SBR may ever contain over time, including dead units and units of all types.

11.102 Technical considerations in the generation of a unique identifier are as follows.

- In order to minimise errors, consider including a check digit function, especially if the unique identifier will need to be manually captured (e.g., through *heads down data entry*) by SBR users when they enter information about specific units. (An example of how to calculate a check digit according to Modulo 11 is included in Annex E2.)
- If the identifier is always generated centrally by the SBR, use can be made of a *key generator function* that guarantees to generate a unique sequential number. If need be a check digit can be added to the number.
- Alpha characters combined with numbers can be used in order to avoid confusion with any other numeric data value on the database.

Example from Canada

The unique identifier of the Canadian SBR is called the *Statistical Number*. The Statistical Number is composed of a letter and followed by an 8-digit number. The letter "S" is used in order to easily identify the Statistical Number. The alpha character combined with numbers avoids confusion with other numeric data value in the database.

In the database, there is a function called the *Key Generator* that generates a unique sequential 8-digit number, so no digit check is required. This function also ensures the uniqueness of the generated number. Here is an example of a Statistical Number structure generated in the SBR to identify uniquely a new created business entity: S12345678.

The *Key Generator* function is used when a new statistical unit is added on the SBR. A new unit can be added online by an employee or from a batch process. The *Key Generator* is invoked and uses the Statistical Number Table that contains all potential 8-digit numbers from 00000001 to 99999999 to determine the next available number. When the function locates the next available number, then it automatically assigns an "S" in front of the number and assigns it to the new statistical unit. As it performs this assignment, the Key Generator automatically removes this number from the Statistical Number Table, leaving in the Table, only numbers that have not been assigned. This technique permits multiple processes to call the *Key Generator* function simultaneously and to have access to a new 8-digit number.

11.4.11 Tools/software for record linkage

11.103 The results quoted for the performance of automated data matching tools and software tend to be overly optimistic. Experience has shown that, when bringing together data from two sources without a known and unique correspondence between the sets of identifiers, deterministic matching or probabilistic record linkage often yields mismatches when the matching rules are too loose and a high percentage of missed matches when the rules are too rigid. Nevertheless, circumstances may dictate the need for record linkage. No specific tools or software are recommended in this chapter. Chapter 6.8 provides some guidance. It should be mentioned that data sets may have to be “cleaned” before they are matched against other sources.

11.4.12 Job scheduling software

11.104 The administrative data used to update the SBR usually requires a great deal of time to process. Thus, to reduce the impact on other forms of processing, administrative data are usually processed when no one is accessing the database — typically at night or over the weekend. Job-scheduling software enables efficient management of the process of running computer jobs automatically. It monitors processing and should remotely notify technicians of any problems to be resolved before users next access the database.

11.4.13 Documentation

11.105 Documentation related to the system is needed to ensure the long-term functioning of the SBR. It helps staff identify and understand the changes they need to make from time to time.

11.106 The IT team should invest significant time in fully documenting each module and process, both during initial development and as the SBR evolves. The documentation should be detailed enough for a new programmer to continue where a previous one left off. Wikis enable free-form information entry over time.

11.5 Data retention

11.107 SBR data retention strategy should be articulated in accordance with operational and analytical needs and should begin with the determination on how changes made to the SBR will be tracked and what historical information will need to be kept.

Tracking changes

11.108 The following paragraphs summarise briefly the options to consider for the safekeeping of historical information, like the usage of logs, the creation of snapshots and frozen frames on a regular basis, and the

recording of the *effective date* (i.e. the time that an event really occurred) as well as the *update date* (i.e. the date when the event was recorded on the SBR).

11.109 In determining the strategy, a key factor is how changes to SBR data are handled. One possible approach is *to always add data, never to replace data*. With this approach, the (new) value of characteristic is recorded together with the date and time it was recorded. The old value (if any) of the characteristic, and the date and time it was recorded are retained. This approach enables the creation of a view of the SBR as of any past date and time. In a more sophisticated approach the date and time from which a new value is *effective* is recorded in addition to the date and time of the update.

11.110 Another, much simpler approach is to take periodic snapshots of the database and keep these for as long as seems necessary. To satisfy all operational and analytical needs, using both approaches is suggested.

Frequency and content of snapshots

11.111 In so far as snapshots are used, data retention should be frequent enough to offer users a reasonably comprehensive view of the past. Monthly snapshots of all statistical units and their characteristics going back two years would likely offer users sufficiently frequent data for the majority of their immediate needs. As regards data retention for analytical purposes a set of frozen frames may suffice for most users. Some NSIs retain these files indefinitely, as they are a great source of information for longitudinal studies.

Administrative updates

11.112 Keeping track of updates from administrative sources is also recommended. An automated log should include the update date and source. This information may prove useful in troubleshooting issues with a specific maintenance or update processes. It may also serve to document and explain changes to SBR users.

Documentation

11.113 As the SBR undergoes constant evolution in concepts, coverage and methods, the data retention strategy must also contain documentation explaining these changes. Each file stored should have a full account of major changes attached to it. This enables future analysts to understand the data. The quality assurance team may also use the log information to assess the quality of certain maintenance processes or sources of SBR updates.

Example from Statistics Canada

At Statistics Canada a complete copy — called a snapshot — of the SBR database (live register) is taken just prior to the first day of every month. A generalised survey universe file (GSUF), i.e. frozen frame, containing every statistical unit, is created from the snapshot every month. Although frozen frames are primarily used for sampling, normally soon after their creation, they are retained for an extended period for analysis purposes. The table below shows the current retention period for each frozen frame.

Monthly frozen frames	Retention period
January	Indefinite
February to December	24 months

11.114 Once it is determined *how* changes made to the SBR are tracked and what historical information the SBR stores, then an *information management directive (IMD)* should formalize *what* should be kept on the long term.

Information management directive

11.115 Assuming an IMD exists, the SBR should follow it in determining its data retention strategy. If no IMD exists, a data retention strategy should be articulated in accordance with operational and analytical needs, taking into account future cost and space requirements and general NSI policies and legislative restrictions.

11.116 To determine appropriate retention periods for specific sets of information, it is suggested to develop:

- Groups for the various types of statistical micro-data files; and
- Information management categories, i.e. categories of retention and documentation requirements.

11.117 For example, four primary groups (each group relating to one or more phases of the generic statistical business process model) could be created.

1. Statistical micro data – design and collection.
2. Statistical micro data – processing.
3. Statistical micro data – analysis and dissemination.
4. Statistical micro data – other.

11.118 Five information management (IM) categories could be created.

1. Indeterminate retention and “high” level documentation.
2. Maximum 20 year retention and “medium” level documentation.
3. Maximum 10 year retention and “medium” level documentation.
4. Maximum 5 year retention and “minimum” level documentation.

5. Other (for a few file types that require special attention).

Archiving and deleting

11.119 As the SBR content continuously grows, the data retention strategy must also contain documentation and rules on data and information that does not need to be retained (i.e. data and information that can be deleted/disposed of) and data and information that do not need the same ease of access (i.e., data and information that can and should be archived).

11.120 Below is a list of business rules that should be considered when developing any archiving and deleting processes.

- *Automation*: The process needs to be automated with minimal manual intervention.
- *Scheduling*: The process needs to be able to schedule using a standard scheduler.
- *Logging*: A log of the tables (files) deleted (or flagged for deletion) needs to be recorded, centralized and accessible to all users having access to the process.
- *Reporting capability*: The process should create a report.
- *Possibility of review*: The process must allow the user to review the actions to be performed before being applied.
- *Possibility of executing report only*: The process should allow the user to execute the report portion of the process only (i.e. not apply the updates).
- *Possibility of resuming execution*: The process should allow the user to resume execution of the update portion of process when the reporting portion has been executed beforehand. The amount of time spent between the execution of the report portion and the update portion should be flexible.

- *Possibility of retrieval:* The process must allow tables that have been deleted to be retrieved if deleted by mistake (at least the last deletion batch).
- *Validation of existing cycle:* The process must ensure that a previous cycle exists for all tables (files) that have been identified to be deleted.
- *Flexible parameter modification:* The process should use the already existing files, tables and information so that modifications to concepts are automatically applied to the job. Parameters should not be hard coded in the process.

Chapter 12

Topics for further work and research

12.1 Introduction

12.1 The Guidelines focus on providing methodological and practical guidance to countries for establishing and maintaining SBRs. They do not, however, resolve a number of emerging issues that will pose major challenges in the future.

12.2 The continuous development of businesses, the economic globalisation and the growing complexity of global production arrangements raise a number of questions concerning definitions and identification of relevant statistical units of the SBR and international comparability of statistics derived from it. These developments also make data collection more complex and difficult. At the same time, the SBR has a key role to play as backbone in the modernisation of statistical production and integration of economic statistics. To strengthen this role there is a need to explore how to integrate the SBR into the statistical production process as a common tool and database for all domains of business statistics, and to ensure the SBR can be used to combine information from different sources. In addition to this there continues to be a need to explore the use of administrative registers and other new or emerging electronic data sources and for further development of methods and concepts for the establishment and maintenance of the SBR.

12.3 Developing new methods and good practices is resource demanding, for which reason experiences should be shared among countries and common development projects should be encouraged. International cooperation can help reduce gaps between developed and less developed statistical systems, while capacity building and training activities will be useful to support countries with less developed statistical systems. In addition, sharing methods and practices may help improve the international comparability of SBR information.

12.4 During the work of the drafting of the Guidelines the Task Force noted a number of topics where further work and research is recommended. These topics are listed and briefly described below. Some of the topics are interrelated, since various aspects of SBR may be relevant for more than one topic.

12.2 Recommended topics by domain

Statistical units and profiling

12.5 The statistical units are the basic entities in SBRs. Due to the globalisation of economic production the enterprise group has become an important statistical unit that should be integrated into SBRs. Legal entities do not always meet the criteria as units suitable for statistical purposes. They need to be transformed into statistical units in a consistent way. This is especially true for large, complex and global businesses. Work in the following areas should be supported:

- Delineation of the *enterprise* statistical unit.
- Delineation of *multinational enterprise groups*.
- Analysis of country experiences in profiling large and complex enterprises and enterprise groups.
- Sharing best practices in the coding of statistical units.

SBR as the backbone of economic statistics

12.6 It is important to develop the role of the SBR as the backbone in the production of economic statistics, up to the national accounts. The SBR fulfils this role by providing survey frames and by integrating information from different data sources (surveys/censuses, statistical registers and administrative registers) and facilitating collection of economic data and production of coherent statistics as part of the thrust to modernise statistical production and services. It can also facilitate the development of a standardised production process for business statistics. Countries will need to move forward and exchange experiences made in developing integrated approaches and operational designs. Activities that will facilitate this include:

- The role of the SBR in integration and analysis of multi-source data datasets.
- Integration of SBR into data warehouse systems.
- Sharing of experiences in implementation of the GSPBM and the GSIM for the SBR database management.
- Development of efficient user oriented maintenance strategies.

- Balancing the demands of different user groups when developing the SBR.

Use of administrative data sources

12.7 The use of administrative sources continues to be a major challenge, but has the potential for gains in many countries. The challenges include issues with coverage and definitions, which may not be in line with the statistical requirements, timeliness and in some instances confidentiality. In some countries lack of access to administrative sources is also an obstacle. Potential gains include access to sources with good coverage and detailed information that can be used directly in the SBR or in validation of SBR information, reduction of response burden and increased efficiency in the statistical office. Establishing good cooperation with the owners of administrative data sources is essential to ensure sustainable solutions and to ensure that the NSI is kept informed of, and exercise influence on, future changes to administrative registers. Examples of areas where work is encouraged are:

- Sharing of best practices in cooperation with administrative registers to improve the quality of the SBR and of the administrative sources.
- Sharing of best practices in cooperation with e.g. central banks and other external (governmental) organisations to ensure correct sector coding of the statistical units.
- The treatment of administrative units. Linking across registers, conflicting information, and how to derive statistical units on basis of administrative units.
- Development of register-based economic censuses.

Use of new data sources

12.8 New data sources and new ways of collecting data are emerging with the potentials of improving the quality and coverage of the SBR, and in some cases also the timeliness of the register. Activities that should be pursued include:

- Sharing experiences in using new data sources, including big data.
- Sharing experiences in new electronic data collection methods.
- Legal and confidentiality issues.

International trade and economic globalisation

12.9 Economic globalisation is one of the main challenges for SBRs. It influences the activities to be measured and data collection becomes more complex and difficult. Economic globalisation is accompanied by the development of global production arrangements, often with complex ownership structures, where the challenge of the SBR is to collect and provide coherent and relevant information in a continuously changing world. The UN Statistical Commission requested at its session in March 2015 that a handbook on a system of

extended international and global accounts be developed. This implies also new requirements for SBRs. Linkages of enterprises across borders will have to be measured, which has consequences for the classification of MNEs and their foreign affiliates. Work on the following issues should be encouraged:

- The international statistical standards regarding, for example, the National accounts and the Balance of Payments, and their requirements to the SBR.
- The requirements for the SBR to deal with emerging global production arrangements, including e.g. factoryless goods producers.
- The new extended international and global accounts, and their requirements to the SBR.
- Pilot study for the development of a supra-national SBR to deal with multinational enterprise groups (based on experience with the EuroGroup Register).
- Linking the SBR with trade, foreign direct investment and the international sourcing of business functions.
- Use of the SBR for micro-data linking.

Development of new statistics

12.10 The development of new statistics will also be a challenge for the SBR by using information from the SBR to combine with information from other sources (administrative data, surveys or other statistical registers) to meet new user needs. Possibilities include combining information from the SBR with social and/or population data, and deriving business demographic information. Questions and issues that should be addressed include:

- Potentials of the SBR as a part of a set of interrelated/linked statistical registers.
- Analysis of the effects of using different statistical units in business demography.
- Sharing experiences in applying geocoding in the SBR.

Methodological developments

12.11 There needs to be further work on various methodological issues for the establishment, maintenance and use of the SBR to take advantage of developments in techniques and data sources, and to ensure the quality and relevance of the SBR in meeting current and future user needs. Examples of particular topics where work is called for include:

- Improvements of economic censuses in countries where administrative sources are not available or of poor quality.
- Evaluation of database software packages that can be used for SBR.
- Coverage of the non-observed economy.

-
- Analysis of software services/methods for SBR maintenance that could be shared between countries.
 - Analysis of various forms of frozen frames with respect to their use for business statistics.
 - Analysis of methods of creation of identifiers and check digits.
 - Development of methods for adjustment of under-coverage.
 - Development of input data validation methods.

International comparability

12.12 The importance of the international comparability of SBRs and derived business statistics is

likely to grow in the future. Statistical offices need to consider this when developing methods and practices, while national differences in terms of legislation, institutional set-up and structural diversities put limits on obtaining international comparability. To address these challenges work in the following areas is encouraged:

- Development of internationally comparable quality indicators.
- Development of an international quality assessment framework.
- Use/integration of international administrative identifiers in the national SBR.

Annex A

Characteristics of units by unit type

A1: Enterprise group (including truncated enterprise group) characteristics

The characteristics listed in the following paragraphs apply equally to a truncated enterprise group that is the national part of multi-national enterprise group as well as to an enterprise group that is entirely within national boundaries (all resident group).

A1.1: Enterprise group – Identification characteristics

Enterprise group – Identity number

Purpose

To identify all enterprise groups (all-resident or truncated parts of international enterprise groups) and to follow their continuity.

Definition

The identity number of an enterprise group is (usually) given nationally in the SBR. It may be common with other national institutions.

As the enterprise groups are permanently buying, selling or restructuring their affiliates, the question of whether the enterprise group is the same after restructuring than before is a prominent one. General continuity rules apply for all types of enterprise groups, as discussed in Section 7.3.4.

The continuity of a truncated group is based on the continuity of the global group of which it is part. The question of whether a truncated group can be continuous, even if the global group is not and even if it is split from the global group or sold to another one, remains an issue.

Sources

The identity number of an enterprise group can be given internally in the SBR or be derived from an external (administrative) source.

Comments

As the continuity of an enterprise group may remain while the global group head changes, it is not advisable to use the identity number of the global group head as the identity number of the enterprise group.

Enterprise group name

Enterprise group – Address

Enterprise group – Telephone and fax numbers, electronic mail address and information to permit electronic collection of data (non-core)

Purpose

The storing of the name and address information is important for survey and profiling purposes and may have other national uses.

The enterprise group (through its head office services) is often the reporting unit for itself and even for data about other statistical units belonging to the group (e.g., enterprises).

Definition

National standards for the name and address are used for head office, whether it be an all-resident or truncated enterprise group.

Sources

The name may be given nationally in the SBR or it may be common with other institutions (for example, from the EU perspective). Administrative sources, surveys, profiling, internet, and SBR information can be used.

Comments

The name of the truncated group should not be exactly the same as the name of the global group. It is up to the country to decide on the information it wishes to record for each unit and address. In some countries, at legal level the consolidated accounts may use the legal name of the group head when they refer to the whole group.

Enterprise group – Identity number of the group head

Purpose

To identify the global group head (all-resident or truncated group head).

Definition

The identity number of the legal unit which is the resident group head.

Proxies

For a natural person who is not registered in the SBR as economic operator or for non-resident group head, a quasi-unit with an identity number can be created when necessary. In this case, it should be possible to identify natural persons separately.

Sources

Administrative sources and control links in the SBR.

Comments

If the controlling unit is a natural person who is not an economic operator, recording is subject to the availability of this information from an administrative source. In some countries recording is subject to legal limitations or banned; in other countries there is no problem. Nevertheless, the *OECD Handbook on Economic Globalisation Indicators* recommends the inclusion of natural persons in these cases.

The number and importance of natural persons as controlling units may depend on national legislation and thus vary considerably between countries. It would be useful to study the effect of their inclusion/exclusion on the consistency of data between countries.

This characteristic is relevant only if the global group head (GGH) is a resident unit and if the unit is not a natural person. If not, a link should be made with to an international register, if one exists.

The dates of commencement and cessation as resident group head must also be stored, either when the change is recorded in the SBR or preferably as separate variables when the real change takes place (if this is known).

Enterprise group – Type of enterprise group*Purpose*

The type is an important stratification characteristic from an economic point of view: The importance of many other characteristics depends on the type.

It allows calculation of many economic indices at national level by type, such as proportion of different group types (and independent enterprises) as regards employment, turnover per person employed, etc. The units belonging to foreign controlled truncated groups define the foreign controlled inward FATS population.

Definition

The difference between an all-resident and a multinational group depends purely on whether controlled affiliates exist in only one country or in more than one country.

The difference between domestically and foreign controlled multinational groups is determined by whether the global decision-centre managing unit is resident in the country being considered or in another country.

Sources

Administrative and commercial sources, statistical or administrative surveys, the Euro Groups register.

Comments

Types of enterprise group:

1. All-resident group;
2. Domestically controlled truncated group;
3. Foreign controlled truncated group.

Although enterprise group type may be inferred from other characteristics it is advisable to record it separately. This is especially the case if much of the national enterprise group information is in a satellite register where the coverage may vary according to the group type.

A1.2 Enterprise group – Demographic characteristics**Enterprise group – Date of commencement in the country***Purpose*

The date is needed for the demography of enterprise groups.

Definition

The date refers either to a date when a new enterprise group is born or to other creation date of a new group (by merger, break-up, split-off or restructuring).

The date refers to the beginning of operation for a truncated group: this date can be the same as the creation date of the first affiliate in the country; but more often it refers to the date when the first affiliate is controlled (bought).

Proxies

The birth of a new group may be difficult to define in practice, if the smallest groups of no statistical importance to the country are not monitored. The date from which the group is being monitored is then used as a proxy. However, the approximate dates are important in order to determine from which year a certain multinational group is monitored in different countries.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys.

Comments

The creation may result from a restructuring process.

Enterprise group - Date of cessation in the country*Purpose*

The date is required for the demography of enterprise groups.

Definition

Cessation of a group means either death of the group in the country (dissolution of the links of control between

the units belonging to the group), or (more commonly) merger with or takeover by another group, break-up, split-off or restructuring into two or more groups.

The cessation of a truncated group is registered separately from that of the global group it is part of, because the previous demographic events can have different consequences for the global group and for its truncated part(s). Thus the date of cessation of any kind of group is very closely dependent on the continuity rules used.

Proxies

If no exact date is known for truncated groups, the approximate date is important in order to know the situation of multinational groups in different countries.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys.

Comments

This characteristic is recorded when the group ceases to exist or is not monitored anymore. In such cases, all the characteristics become historical.

A1.3: Enterprise group – Economic/stratification characteristics

Enterprise group – Principal activity code at ISIC 2-digit level

Enterprise group – Secondary activities at ISIC 2-digit level (non-core)

Purpose

These activity codes can be used for stratification, demographic and economic analysis. Secondary activities are important for observing the homogeneity of the group and, in cases where the secondary activity rather than the primary activity is the subject of a survey.

Definition

The activities are defined according to the ISIC rules. The principal activity is identified by the top-down method as the activity which contributes most to the total value added.

The same definition is applied at the global level as at the national truncated level.

Proxies

If value added data are not available, it is recommended that employment be used as the criterion. The activities performed can be based on the activity codes and number of persons employed in the units belonging to the group at national level. Turnover is less suitable because it is more sensitive to intra-group transactions.

Sources

SBR derivation from its legal units, administrative sources, and surveys.

Comments

The main activity of any of the truncated parts may be different from the main activity of the global group.

Principal and secondary economic activities in the country can be inferred from the economic activities of the enterprises composing the group.

It is recommended that the principal activity be recorded more precisely, if possible at ISIC 3-digit level.

Enterprise group – Number of persons employed in the all-resident/truncated groups

Purpose

Employment can be used for stratification, demographic and economic analysis. Together with activity code, it provides information on the role of the group in the global framework.

Definition

The persons employed in the group are added up from the units which belong to the enterprise group.

This procedure is valid at truncated level and at global level (provided that a global register of affiliates exist).

Proxies

The number of employees.

Sources

The SBR.

Comments

For a large multinational operating in a large number of countries, a better source for employment in foreign countries might be a specific "note" included in the Annual Report.

Enterprise group – Consolidated turnover (non-core)

Purpose

Turnover is an important size indicator for stratification. The availability of consolidated turnover at global group, at truncated or at or subgroup level may be useful in profiling.

Definition

Turnover is defined as the revenues gained by the sales of goods and services. For consolidation rules (full consolidation) the International Accounting/ Financial Reporting Standards (GAAPS) should be followed.

Proxies

There can be national specifications of the consolidation rules.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys, profiling.

Comments

It is difficult to consolidate turnover of different enterprises in different activities and the consolidation rules are not the same everywhere. Also turnover from different sources may not be consistent.

It may also be possible to aggregate the turnover of legal units belonging to the enterprise group, but this would include internal turnover which does not correspond to market prices when based on internal prices. Thus storing of any figure other than the consolidated turnover figure may be confusing and is not recommended. The best source for consolidated turnover of an enterprise group is their Annual Report.

Enterprise group – Country of global decision centre (non-core)*Purpose*

To allocate the enterprise group to the country where decisions on its global strategy are actually taken. Foreign affiliate statistics use the resident country of the global group head.

Definition

Country where the strategic decisions referring to an enterprise group are taken.

Proxies

In most of the cases the global decision centre equals to the global group head. In these cases the country of global decision centre is the country where the global group head is located. In special cases the global group head is not able to act as a decision centre for the whole group. Units without substantial physical presence, significant economic activities, or employment are not able to be engaged in decisions. In these cases the global decision centre should be appointed at the next level downwards in the enterprise group tree structure, where the global decisions of the enterprise group are taken.

Sources

Administrative and commercial sources; statistical surveys. (In the case of the EU the Eurogroup Register provides standardised information on the decision centre of the multi-national enterprises covered.)

Comments

The country where the decision-making centre is located is often referred to as the *nationality of the group*,

although nationality can be understood in other ways, for instance to refer to the nationality of the owner. The roles of the group head and decision centre may vary a great deal.

This cannot be taken into account in an operational rule, but can be established during profiling. To gain further knowledge about how the group operates, the group can be further analysed. Factors to be considered include where the main production activity is located, where value added is created, and where research and development (which influences the future strategy of the group) takes place.

These characteristics are relevant when allocating the enterprise group to the country where decisions on its global strategy are actually taken. Foreign affiliate statistics use the resident country of the global decision centre (GDC) for defining the outward FATS population (the resident GDC is the reporting unit on its foreign affiliates) and the inward FATS population (all enterprises which have a non-resident GDC are surveyed).

Coordination with the NSIs of the other countries where the multinational enterprise group is acting is recommended in order to agree on the GDC and the global economic characteristics of the group for producing international consistent statistics.

Enterprise group – Countries where enterprise group has enterprise(s) or local unit(s) (non-core)*Purpose*

The characteristic is essential information for outward FATS and for studying intragroup trade, which also needs the names, addresses and identity numbers of legal units belonging to the group.

Definition

Country codes (according to the §4.13 of the Balance of Payments Vademecum).

Sources

Administrative (consolidated balance sheets) and commercial sources, the EuroGroups register.

A1.4 Enterprise group – Relationships between units

(No characteristics.)

EU example of relationship

The example concerns the European Union (EU) (including EFTA) member states.

- The identity number of a multinational enterprise group comes from the EuroGroups Register (EGR), a supra-national register.
- The identity number (ID) of a truncated group is derived from the common ID of the multinational enterprise group and thus given centrally by an EGR procedure.
- The ID should remain the same so long as the group is considered to be continuing. (Continuity is discussed in Chapter 4 of these Guidelines and in Chapter 22 of Eurostat's BR Recommendation manual).
- The global group head and/or the main decision centre may be moved from one country to another with the enterprise group. Thus it is not advisable to give an ID that includes a country code.

National numbers can be used until a system of unique Europe-wide identity numbers is established. From then on, a second identity number may be useful to be able to trace the continuity of all-resident groups if they become multinational.

In principle this approach could be used by any group of countries that agreed to co-operate on handling multinational enterprise groups. It would need to be supported by legal rights to exchange information, which would likely require the existence of some kind of integrated economic union. In practice the only known collection of countries where the approach is being applied is the EU.

A1.5 Enterprise group – Relationship with other registers/update sources*Purpose*

There can be two kinds of links:

- Links with sources of information and data on enterprise groups, mostly either private providers or specific administrative registers or enquiries; several examples show that the concerned administrative enquiries might be managed by statistical offices under specific non-statistical regulations.
- Links with other countries relating to multinational enterprise group (as exemplified in the following box).

A2: Enterprise characteristics**A2.1 Enterprise – Identification characteristics****Enterprise – Identity number***Purpose*

To identify the unit and to follow its continuity and the demographic events leading to discontinuity.

Definition

Given nationally in the SBR.

As the continuity rules for enterprises should be applied, the identity number should remain the same while the enterprise is considered as continuing.

Sources

Assigned by SBR procedures.

Comments

In case of a 1:1 relation between the legal unit and enterprise, the same identity number is often used but this is not recommended as, conceptually, they are different units.

Enterprise – Name**Enterprise – Address****Enterprise – Electronic mail address and website addresses (non-core)***Purpose*

To provide contact information. The website can also be used for statistical purposes.

Definition

Countries can decide what information is required to meet their needs.

Proxies

The enterprise name may be the same as the legal unit name, but it may also differ (i.e., be a trade name) even if the enterprise comprises only one legal unit. An enterprise often uses the name of the main legal unit that operates it.

Sources

Administrative sources, websites, SBR procedures, surveys.

Enterprise – Identification number(s) of legal unit(s) of which the enterprise consists*Purpose*

To enable the enterprise to be linked to its constitutive legal unit, or legal units if more than one.

Definition

This is simple for enterprises consisting of one legal unit only. In the case of complex enterprises, the identity numbers of all legal units must be recorded.

Proxies

None.

Sources

Created by SBR procedures.

Comments

It is recommended that the dates when the links are created and (possibly) dissolved in the SBR are recorded as well as the reference dates in the real world.

A2.2 Enterprise – Demographic characteristics**Enterprise – Date of commencement of economic activities in the country***Purpose*

The date is required for monitoring the demography of enterprises.

Definition

The date refers to the economic birth of the enterprise.

Proxies

As explained in Section 5.3, the date of birth is, in principle, the date on which the first financial commitments are made. In practice it may refer to the registration date in the administrative source if the unit starts its economic activities immediately after that.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys.

Comments

It is necessary to register the relation with legal units.

The legal unit(s) associated with an enterprise may change and be re-registered, for example after a change of legal form, while the enterprise continues, i.e., remains the same.

Enterprise – Date of permanent cessation of activities in the country*Purpose*

The date is required for monitoring the demography of enterprises.

Definition

The date refers to the date when an enterprise becomes permanently inactive or dead.

Proxies

As explained for the corresponding characteristic of legal units, this date may not be available with any precision. Only the fact that the enterprise has ceased to

exist or has ceased its activities during the reference year may be known, in which case the date should be estimated.

Sources

Surveys, administrative sources or defined by SBR procedures.

Comments

The relationship to legal units needs to be registered.

A2.3 Enterprise– Stratification characteristics⁴⁵**Enterprise – Principal activity code at ISIC 4-digit level***Purpose*

The principal activity code is a key stratification characteristic. The code is also very important in judging the role of certain units in the enterprise group structure, mainly the group head, the decision centre and special purpose entities, and in general in enterprise group structuring and demography. The enterprise group's worldwide dispersion of employment by activity can also be studied through its constituent units.

Definition

The activity code is derived according to the rules in the ISIC Rev 4.

Proxies

Other criteria can be used to define the principal activity code, if value added is not available. Employment (preferably) and turnover (with the drawback that it depends on from where it is measured) broken down by the different activities can be used, also activity descriptions.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Comments

If the enterprise has a legal capacity to operate in different trades, data from administrative sources may indicate a range of activities, but quantitative information on their relative importance may not be available. In such a case the data has to be obtained by survey.

If the enterprise is linked to just one local unit, the principal activity for both types of unit should be the same.

⁴⁵ Enterprises are defined globally (which means at world level when adequate). For establishing national level, they may be truncated to the national territory of each relevant country. In the case of truncated enterprise, double coding of some characteristics (in particular principal activity code) at national and supra-national level is recommended.

Enterprise – Conditional: Secondary activities, if any, at ISIC 4-digit level*Purpose*

Knowledge of secondary activities is very important for large enterprises, for example for short-term business surveys and for national account purposes.

Definition

The activity codes are derived according to the rules in the ISIC Rev. 4.

Proxies

Several criteria can be used for defining the activity code(s), if value added is not available. Employment and turnover by different activities can be used (when available), also activity descriptions.

Sources

Surveys (more accurately) or administrative sources.

Comments

The values of this characteristic may lead to delineation of establishments belonging to the enterprises.

Enterprise – Number of persons employed**Enterprise – Number of employees****Enterprise – Number of employees in FTE (non-core)**

(These characteristics are calculated in accordance with the same rules as for local units, establishments or KAUs.)

Purpose

Many countries are interested in breakdowns by size class, as small and medium size enterprises (SMEs) are often considered to be a major source of new employment. The precise definition of SME has to be decided by each country⁴⁶. The share of SMEs and within SMEs, the small and micro enterprises can be calculated on the basis of this characteristic.

Employment within the enterprises that comprise an enterprise group may be used to determining the continuity or otherwise of the enterprise group.

An enterprise group's worldwide dispersion of employment by activity, and the impact of offshoring, can also be studied by through the employment of its constituent enterprises.

Definition

Number of persons employed is defined as the total number of persons who work in the unit, including wage-earners and self-employed persons (i.e., working proprietors, partners working regularly in the unit and

unpaid family workers) as well as persons who work outside the unit but who belong to it and are paid by it (e.g., sales representatives, delivery personnel, repair and maintenance teams). It excludes manpower supplied to the unit by other enterprises, persons carrying out repair and maintenance work in the unit on behalf of other enterprises, as well as those on compulsory military service.

Number of employees is defined as those persons who work for an employer and who have a contract of employment and receive compensation in the form of wages, salaries, fees, gratuities, piecework pay or remuneration in kind. A worker from an employment agency is considered an employee of the employment agency and not of the units in which he/she (temporarily) works.

Sources

Surveys or administrative sources. Social security sources may be used as sources of information.

Comments

As an enterprise consists of one or more local units, the employment of an enterprise as of a given date should equal the sum of the employment for the local units. The same holds true for establishments and KAUs belonging to the enterprise.

SBR employment values should be compared with those of other sources (structural business statistics, business demography, labour force survey) for consistency. Of course, the values may differ if different concepts, definitions or methodologies are used.

Enterprise – Turnover*Purpose*

For some surveys, mainly repeated ones, and for some spheres of activity, it may not be appropriate to stratify according to employment. Moreover, for accurate calculation purposes, the size of enterprises should also be measured in terms of their turnover.

Turnover is not an additive measure which restricts its direct (non-consolidated) use for the enterprises in the enterprise group framework. However, it can be used for group-related research and development intensity calculations.

Definition

Turnover consists of all revenues arising during the specified reference period, in the course of ordinary activities of the statistical unit and is presented net of all price reductions, discounts and rebates granted by it.

The revenue referred to is arising from contracts with customers and are realized through the satisfaction by the statistical unit of the contractual performance obligations usually represented by the sale (transfer) of goods or the rendering of services, however, it can also

⁴⁶ For example, in the EU, according to Commission Recommendation 2003/361/EC they consist of independent enterprises below 250 persons employed full-time.

contain revenues obtained as a yield on the use by others of the statistical unit's assets.

Excluded from net turnover are:

- All taxes, duties or levies linked directly to the output.
- Any amounts collected on behalf of any principal, if the statistical unit is acting as an agent in its relationship with said principal; turnover includes only the service charge for acting as an agent.
- All income not arising in the course of ordinary activities of the statistical unit. Usually, these types of income are classified as "Other income", "Financial income", "Extra-ordinary income" or under a similar heading, depending on the respective set of generally accepted accounting standards used to prepare the financial statements.

Proxies

Fiscal sources may be used as sources of information, for example, corporate income tax or VAT returns. There may be cases where such information is unavailable, for example where units are not subject to VAT. In such a situation one possibility is to estimate turnover based on employment using a standard turnover per head ratio calculated by the ISIC class.

Turnover is relevant for market units; it should not be estimated for non-market units. However, non-market units can have secondary production.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Comments

This turnover is "net" in the sense that it excludes the price reductions, discounts and rebates.

The figure used should be the actual turnover. Turnover may be available only with some delay, especially for newly created enterprises. This may cause problems, mainly for business demography, and it may be necessary to estimate the turnover in such cases.

As turnover from different sources is not always the same, using different sources may lead to inconsistencies. Turnover is usually measured excluding VAT.

Turnover is an essential piece of accounting data. Even if comparing turnover between enterprises across different ISIC sections may not make much sense, it may be the only parameter that permits a breakdown by product or allows exports to be ascertained.

Enterprise – Institutional sector according to 2008 SNA

Purpose

The institutional sector classification in SBR has several important functions, as noted in Chapters 3 and 4.

Definition

The classification of institutional sector applies to the institutional unit which includes also the enterprise.

The classification is detailed in Annex B.

Proxies

From the information available, it may not always be possible to define the sector or sub-sector accurately. In such cases, large and important units could be checked manually. A proxy can be derived from ISIC code, legal form and country of global decision centre.

Sources

Defined by SBR procedures in cooperation with national accounts, according to established rules, based on SBR information and using administrative sources when necessary.

Comments

In the vast majority of cases, it is possible to calculate the institutional sector code from other explicitly recorded characteristics, especially legal form, ISIC code and controlling country. Algorithms can be used for this purpose. In certain cases the institutional sector must not conflict with the principal activity and whether the enterprise is foreign controlled must be consistent with the respective characteristics of the enterprise group to which it belongs.

The principal activity of the enterprise separates the financial and non-financial corporate enterprises. Two criteria can be applied to separate corporate and quasi-corporate enterprises from enterprises attached to the household sector: The legal form of the legal unit operating the enterprise and, if the legal unit is a natural person, whether or not it keeps annual accounts for the assessment of its tax liability. It may therefore be appropriate to provide an intermediate code indicating, in the case of enterprises operated by a natural person, if they keep accounts or not. That code might perhaps record whether the enterprise is taxed on profits on the basis of its accounts (actual profits) or on the basis of an assessment.

Business statistics cover only market activities and a code indicating whether the activity of an enterprise is market or non-market is essential for them. The distinction is sometimes difficult to make and can be definitively determined only by looking at the accounts.

Public undertaking is defined as any undertaking over which the public authorities may exercise directly or indirectly a dominant influence by virtue of their ownership of it, their financial participation therein, or the rules that govern it. A dominant influence on the part of the public authorities shall be presumed when these authorities, directly or indirectly:

- hold the major part of the undertaking's subscribed capital; or

- control the majority of the votes attaching to shares issued by the undertakings; or
- can appoint more than half of the members of the undertaking's administrative, managerial or supervisory body.

This could be one legal form or it could be obtained from an administrative source. It may be interpreted in different ways in different administrations. The key issue is that public authorities control public undertakings. The definition does not clearly specify whether public undertaking should be market-oriented and distinguishing between public undertaking and government unit is sometimes difficult and may require the information from its accounts (whether more or less than 50 % of production costs are met by sales).

The European System of Accounts (ESA 2010) further divides the institutional sectors of the 2008 SNA into sub-sectors, with the exception of the institutional sector for non-profit institutions serving households.

A2.4 Enterprise – Relationships between units

Enterprise – Identification number of the all-resident/truncated enterprise group to which the enterprise belongs

Purpose

To identify the enterprises belonging to an enterprise group, for example when looking at size classes, in order to avoid confusion between independent enterprises and enterprises belonging to enterprise groups.

It is important also for the enterprise confidentiality treatment, for example when all enterprises in a cell belong to the same enterprise group.

Sources

SBR procedures

Comments

The date when enterprise becomes part of the group should also be recorded.

Enterprise – Relationship with other registers/update sources

Purpose

(See Annex A1.5.)

A3 Establishment characteristics

An *establishment* is also known as a *local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU)*.

A3.1 Establishment – Identification characteristics

Establishment – Identification number

Purpose

To identify a unit and to be able to record its continuity.

Definition

It is recommended that the SBR registers the identification numbers of establishments in accordance with the advice given in Section 11.4.11. The identification number of an establishment should remain the same while the unit continues (according to the continuity rules defined in Chapter 6) even when the enterprise to which it belongs changes.

Proxies

Using a unique administrative identity number (if it exists) is also possible, but may cause problems with continuity and thus is not recommended.

Sources

SBR procedure, unless an administrative number is used.

Establishment – Name

Establishment – Address

Establishment – Telephone and fax numbers, electronic mail address and information to permit electronic collection of data (non-core)

Purpose

To contact the unit.

Definition

The official name of an establishment is generally the same as the legal unit that controls it, with some additional part (usually) specifying location or activity. If there is only one establishment belonging to the legal unit, a separate name may not exist.

The actual address of the location of the unit and the contact information should always be recorded.

Proxies

Different establishments within a legal unit may use different *trading names* (also known as *signboard names* or *commercial names*) and provision should be made for recording these different trading names where they exist.

Sources

Administrative sources and surveys.

Comments

The address could be given a code referring to a national territorial nomenclature. It would be preferable if that nomenclature or national geographical code enables the unit to be pinpointed as accurately as possible, at the level of the street, section of street and building.

In addition to the physical address of the establishment it is useful to provide for the possibility of recording a correspondence address where different.

Establishment – Identity number of the enterprise to which it belongs

Purpose

The establishment must be linked with the enterprise to which it belongs.

Definition

This link can be included in the register by adding the identity number of the enterprise to the Establishment file (and vice versa).

Proxies

Other ways are conceivable, for example when the enterprise consists of one establishment only, another (simple) arrangement of the business register is possible.

Sources

SBR procedures.

A3.2 Establishment – Demographic characteristics

Establishment – Date of commencement of activities (economic birth)

Purpose

The date is needed for monitoring the demography of establishment.

Definition

This date should refer to the birth or other creation date of the unit according to the continuity rules.

Establishment – Date of final cessation of activities (economic death)

Purpose

The date is needed for monitoring the demography of establishments.

Definition

The date refers to the death of a unit.

Proxies

As explained for the corresponding characteristic for legal unit, this date may not be available with any precision. Only the fact that the establishment has ceased to exist or has ceased its activities during the reference year may be known, in which case the date should be estimated.

Sources

Survey, administrative source and SBR procedures.

A3.3 Establishment – Economic/stratification characteristics

Establishment – Principal activity code at ISIC 4-digit level

Purpose

The principal activity code is a stratification characteristic and important in the compilation of regional and small area statistics.

Definition

The activity code is determined according to the rules in the ISIC Rev. 4 handbook. The activities actually pursued in the unit are taken into account. They may not coincide with the principle activity of the enterprise.

Proxies

Several criteria can be used for defining the principal activity code. Employment by different activities (if available) can be used, also activity descriptions.

Sources

The code can be obtained from surveys or administrative sources.

Comments

If the activities are ancillary in the context of the enterprise, the value recorded should indicate this.

Establishment – Secondary activities, if any, at ISIC 4-digit level (non-core)

Purpose

Secondary activities may be used in determining establishments that are of key importance for national/regional accounts.

Definition

Activity codes are allocated according to ISIC Rev 4.

Proxies

Several criteria can be used for defining secondary activity code(s). Employment by different activities can be used (if available), but also activity descriptions, etc.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Establishment – Activity carried out in the unit constituting an ancillary activity of the enterprise to which it belongs (yes/no) (non-core)

Purpose

To distinguish ancillary units. This characteristic enables statistical analyses to reallocate the cost of ancillary activities to the activities for the benefit of which they are undertaken.

Definition

An ancillary activity is incidental to the main activity of an enterprise. It facilitates the efficient running of the enterprise but does not normally result in goods and services that can be marketed. For enterprises that are relatively small and have only a single location, ancillary activities are not separately identified. For larger enterprises with multiple locations, it may be useful to treat ancillary activities in the same way as a secondary or even a principal product (2008 SNA: 5.10).

Proxies

Activities in certain ISIC classes often constitute ancillary activities.

Sources

Administrative sources and surveys.

Comments

If a unit has been identified as an ancillary unit, this fact should be positively indicated in the SBR.

Establishment – Number of persons employed**Establishment – Number of employees***Purpose*

The SBR should record the actual numbers of persons employed and employees, the latter both as a head count and as a FTE.

The main aim is to provide a stratification characteristic. Persons employed are preferable for stratifying survey samples for very small units.

In addition, SBR employment figures are sometimes disseminated directly, especially as small area statistics where the SBR may be the only comprehensive source.

Definition

For stratification purposes, the SBR aim is to provide end of year values (including seasonally active units). As the end date approach is not harmonised across countries, the annual average can also be used.

The number of employees as a FTE may be calculated for a full year as well as for the period in which an enterprise is active. If the number of employees in FTE is used as stratification characteristic, it should be calculated as an average over the active period, whilst in compiling annual statistics it should be calculated as the average over the full 12 months. 0 means less than half a person, whether calculated as a head count or FTE.

Proxies

Number employed can be obtained directly in some countries in administrative sources, while in other countries only an administrative source providing number of *paid employees* is available. However, number employed can be calculated from data on paid employees by adding working proprietors and unpaid

employment calculated according to legal form and activity. In particular:

- For sole proprietors, total employment = paid employees + 1.
- For partnerships, total employment = paid employees + number of partners.

Depending on the availability of administrative sources, more sophisticated methods have been devised in some countries.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys, calculations.

Comments

The reference period used for the measurement of employment in business demography is a year, i.e. the labour force should be an annual average, though this can be approximated by using the number of persons employed at any given moment during the year if this is the only information available.

Both head counts and FTE have certain advantages and the latter should be recorded if possible. Head count is the number of physical persons, full-time and part-time, employed by a unit. FTE is the number of full-time equivalent jobs, defined as total hours worked divided by average annual hours worked in full-time jobs. FTEs are a more accurate measure of labour input but they are more difficult to measure as additional data would be required which is difficult to survey. As the concept of 'full-time' may vary over the economic sectors and countries, the definition does not really make the FTE data comparable. Given the administrative origin of the data, it may not be possible to calculate FTEs in some countries. Another possibility would be to use 'hours worked' directly. This is gaining favour in employment statistics, but the comment on data availability is also likely to apply to this characteristic.

Establishment – Geographical location code (non-core)*Purpose*

The geographical location code complements the address and postal codes and can be used to derive classifications relating to the geographical location of units at the most detailed level, also other national classifications such as administrative regions, travel-to-work areas, health regions, and education regions.

Definition

Countries can decide which code is most useful for their own purpose.

Proxies

The geographical location code can refer to a classification at the most detailed level used in the country. It can refer to geocoding according to latitude and longitude points.

Sources

Administrative sources.

A3.4 Establishment – Relationship between units**Establishment – Identification number of the enterprise to which the establishment belongs***Purpose*

To identify the establishments belonging to an enterprise: for example to link geographical details to the economic enterprise data.

Sources

SBR procedures.

A4 Local unit of enterprise characteristics**A4.1 Local unit of enterprise – Identification characteristics****Local unit of enterprise – Identification number***Purpose*

To identify the unit and to be able to record its continuity.

Definition

The identity number of a local unit should remain the same while the unit continues according to the continuity rules defined in Chapter 6 (even when the legal unit to which it belongs changes).

Proxies

Using a unique administrative identity number (if it exists) is also possible, but it may cause problems with continuity and thus is not recommended.

Sources

SBR procedure, unless the administrative number is used.

Local unit of enterprise – Name**Local unit of enterprise – Address****Local unit of enterprise – Telephone and fax numbers, electronic mail address and information to permit electronic collection of data (non-core)***Purpose*

To contact the unit.

Definition

The official name of the local unit of an enterprise (and truncated enterprise) is generally the same as the legal unit that controls it, with some additional part usually specifying location or activity. If there is only one local unit in the legal unit, a separate name may not exist.

The actual address of the location of the unit and the contact information should always be recorded.

Proxies

Different local units within a legal unit may use different trading names, also known as *signboard names* or *commercial names*, and provision should be made for recording these different trading names where they exist.

Sources

Administrative sources and surveys.

Comments

The address could be given a code referring to a national territorial nomenclature. It would be preferable if that nomenclature or national geographical code enables the unit to be pinpointed as accurately as possible, at the level of the street, section of street and building.

It is always useful to provide for the possibility of recording a correspondence address in addition to the physical address of the local unit if the unit wishes correspondence relating to statistical surveys to be sent elsewhere.

Local unit of enterprise – Identity number of the enterprise to which it belongs*Purpose*

The local unit of enterprise (and truncated enterprise) must be linked with the enterprise to which it belongs.

Definition

This link can be included in the SBR by adding the identification number of the enterprise to the local unit of enterprise (and truncated enterprise) (and vice versa).

Sources

SBR procedures.

A4.2 Local unit of enterprise – Demographic characteristics**Local unit of enterprise – Date of commencement of activities (economic birth)***Purpose*

The date is needed for monitoring the demography of local units.

Definition

This date should refer to the birth or other creation date of the unit according to the continuity rules.

Sources

SBR procedures.

Local unit of enterprise – Date of permanent cessation of activities (economic death)*Purpose*

The date is needed for monitoring the demography of local units.

Definition

The date refers to the death of the unit or the date on which it became permanently inactive.

Proxies

As explained in connection with the corresponding characteristic of legal units, this date may not be available with any precision. Only the fact that the local unit has ceased to exist or has ceased its activities during the reference year may be known, in which case the date should be estimated.

Sources

Surveys, administrative sources, SBR procedures or estimated.

A4.3 Local unit of enterprise – Economic/stratification characteristics

Local unit of enterprise – Principal activity code at ISIC 4-digit level

Purpose

The principal activity code is a stratification characteristic and is important in the compilation of regional and small area statistics.

Definition

The activity code is determined according to ISIC Rev 4. The activities actually conducted by the unit are what matters, even if they are ancillary in the context of the enterprise.

Proxies

Several criteria can be used in defining principal activity code. Employment by each different activity can be used (if available), also activity descriptions.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Comments

If the local unit activity is ancillary in the context of the enterprise, this should be indicated.

Local unit of enterprise – Secondary activities, if any, at ISIC 4-digit level (non-core)

This concerns only local units which are the subject of surveys

Purpose

Secondary activities may be used for helping determining establishments, which are of key importance for national/regional accounts. Establishments can be recorded in the SBR as separate units (this practice is commonly applied by many smaller countries). If this is not the case, this characteristic offers the possibility of identifying them for analytical purposes.

Definition

The activity codes are allocated in accordance with ISIC Rev. 4.

Proxies

Several criteria can be used for defining the secondary activity code(s). Employment by each different activity can be used (if available), also activity descriptions.

Sources

Surveys or administrative sources.

Local unit of enterprise – Activity carried out in the unit constituting an ancillary activity of the enterprise to which it belongs (yes/no) (non-core)

Purpose

To distinguish ancillary units. This characteristic enables statistical analyses to reallocate the cost of ancillary activities to the activities for the benefit of which they are pursued.

Definition

An ancillary activity is incidental to the main activity of an enterprise. It facilitates the efficient running of the enterprise but does not normally result in goods and services that can be marketed. For enterprises that are relatively small and have only a single location, ancillary activities are not separately identified. For larger enterprises with multiple locations, it may be useful to treat ancillary activities in the same way as a secondary or even a principal product (2008 SNA: 5.10).

Proxies

Certain ISIC classes often constitute ancillary activities.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys.

Comments

Whether or not a unit is an ancillary unit should be explicitly recorded in the SBR. The absence of a value should be interpreted as *having no knowledge about this characteristic*.

Local unit of enterprise – Number of persons employed

Local unit of enterprise – Number of employees

Local unit of enterprise – Number of employees in full-time equivalent (non-core)

Purpose

The SBR should record the actual numbers of persons employed and employees, both as head counts and the latter also in FTEs. The main aim is to obtain stratification characteristics as well as statistical information. Persons employed are preferable for stratifying survey samples for very small units. The business register employment figures are used especially

for small area statistics, where the business register is the only comprehensive source. In addition, employment figures can be used by employment statistics where needed.

Definition

The structural business statistics definitions should be used, with the exception that the requirement to measure the numbers as annual averages does not apply. For stratification purposes and according to the BR intention is to use the situation at the end of year (including seasonally active units). As the end date approach is not harmonised the annual average can also be used as reference calculated for a certain period. The number of employees in full-time equivalents might be calculated for a full year as well as for the period in which the enterprise is active. If number of employees in fulltime equivalents is used as stratification characteristic, the calculation for the active period should be used, while for statistics covering a year the calculation should cover the whole year.

Proxies

These figures can be obtained directly in some countries, while other countries may have an administrative source available only for the number of paid employees. However, the latter countries can obtain total employment by making a statistical adjustment to their figures on paid employees by adding a constant representing working proprietors and any other form of unpaid employment calculated according to legal form and activity, for example:

- For sole proprietors, total employment = paid employees + 1.
- For partnerships, total employment = paid employees + number of partners.

Depending on the availability of administrative sources, more sophisticated methods have been devised in some countries.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys, calculations.

Comments

Note that the reference period used for the measurement of employment in business demography is a year, i.e. the labour force should be an annual average, though this can be approximated by using the number of persons employed at any given moment during the year if this is the only information available. How the annual average is calculated depends on the updating frequency of the register. If the unit operates during only part of the year (seasonal, new enterprises), the average should be calculated for that period.

Both head counts and FTE have certain advantages and the latter should be recorded if possible. Head count is the number of physical persons, full-time and part-time, employed by a unit. FTE is the number of full-time

equivalent jobs, defined as total hours worked divided by average annual hours worked in full-time jobs. FTEs are a more accurate measure of labour input but they are available in fewer countries. As the concept of 'full-time' may vary, the definition does not really make the FTE data comparable. Given the administrative origin of the data, it may not be possible to calculate FTEs in some countries. Another possibility would be to use 'hours worked' directly. This is gaining favour in employment statistics, but the comment on data availability is also likely to apply to this characteristic.

Local unit of enterprise – Geographical location code (non-core)

Purpose

The geographical location code complements the address and postal codes and can be used to derive classifications relating to the geographical location of units at the most detailed level. Other national classifications such as administrative regions, travel-to-work areas, health or education regions etc. can also be derived from it.

Definition

Member States can decide which code is most useful for their own purpose.

Proxies

The geographical location code may refer to classification at the most detailed level used in the country. It may refer to geocoding to latitude and longitude points recorded by GPS in countries where the exact site of local unit can be recorded.

Sources

Administrative sources.

A4.4 Local unit of enterprise – Relationship between units

Local unit of enterprise – Identification number of the enterprise to which the local unit belongs

Purpose

To identify the local units belonging to an enterprise: for example to link geographical details to the economic enterprise data.

Sources

SBR procedures.

A5 Legal unit characteristics

A5.1 Legal unit – Identification characteristics

Legal unit – Identity number

Purpose

To identify the unit and to link it with other units in the SBR and with administrative and statistical sources.

Definition

The identity number of the legal unit can be either specific to the SBR or set by an administrative source and used by the SBR, or shared by several administrative sources and used by the SBR.

Sources

If the identity number of the legal unit assigned by an administrative source is used by the SBR, then its updating has to follow the changes taking place in the administrative source, even if it is an issue for economic purposes. For instance, a change of legal form from natural to legal person may result in the fiscal administration assigning a different identifier to the same economic unit.

If the identity number of the legal unit in the SBR is not the administrative identifier, the administrative identifier should be handled as a characteristic and a record of its changes should be kept⁴⁷.

Comments

Common business identifiers, shared with fiscal and other government departments greatly facilitate the connection of the SBR with other administrative sources.

The continuity rules for legal units depend on national legislation. There are no general recommendations.

Legal unit – Name**Legal unit – Address****Legal unit – Telephone and fax numbers, electronic mail address and information to permit electronic collection of data (non-core)***Purpose*

To contact the unit.

In the event that a common identifier is missing, names and addresses can also be used for linking units.

Definition

The addresses should be recorded at the most detailed level possible and respect international standards.

The information may refer to a legal or a natural person. In the case of a legal person, the official business name and address must be recorded. In the case of a natural person, it may be useful to maintain both a business and a personal address. Also, the following information may be recorded:

- Family name(s)
- Names normally used and possible pseudonyms

⁴⁷ This could be the situation if an administrative legal unit is given a unique identifier related to the region in which it is registered. If the unit moves to another region within the country and then is given a new identifier, there is not actually a unique administrative identifier for the unit for that country.

- First names
- Gender (for address purposes — Dear Mr/Ms ...)

This information is often insufficient to identify a natural person with certainty. It may therefore be useful also to record either the date of birth or the personal identity number.

Proxies

In some countries and for some legal forms, the business name may be very long and have to be abbreviated. In this case, strict rules on abbreviation must be established and applied.

Where applicable, territorial classifications and nomenclatures may be used for coding of addresses. It is even better if addresses respect the ISO standard.

Sources

Administrative sources, mainly trade/company registers and surveys.

Comments

Legal persons and also sole proprietors often use initials, an acronym or a trading name instead of their official name in their business or administrative relations. There must be provision for recording this information separately.

A5.2 Legal unit – Demographic characteristics**Legal unit – Date of incorporation for legal person or date of official recognition as an economic operator for natural person***Purpose*

The characteristic is needed for the inclusion of new units.

Definition

The 'date of official recognition' should be the date on which an identification number is given, or the date on which the legal existence was approved, be it via a company/trade register, a VAT register or other register.

Proxies

If the exact date is not available, the year from which the unit has been monitored can be used as proxy, including a certain date (like 1 January) that is indicative of the situation, as defined in SBR procedures.

Sources

Administrative sources: Trade/company register, tax administration, social security.

Comments

In general, the date is the prerequisite for a unit to engage in legal economic transactions. Given that the SBR is usually supplied from administrative sources, a date for official recognition should always exist and be stored in the SBR. The legal unit may start its economic

activity (and only then be regarded as an enterprise or part thereof) with some delay after its recognition, or it may remain economically inactive. If a legal unit remains inactive, it can either be omitted from the register, or kept in the SBR but marked as inactive. The latter approach is preferable. Keeping legally alive but economically inactive legal units in the SBR facilitates the use of data from administrative sources.

Legal unit – Date of commencement of economic activity

Purpose

To ensure that a legal unit that has started economic production is recognised as an active enterprise.

Definition

The 'date of effective economic activity' should be the date on which the unit starts its economic activity. This date may be declared by the unit when it registers officially and receives an identification number, or when its legal existence was approved, be it via a company/trade register, a VAT register or another register.

Proxies

If the exact date is not available, the year from which the unit has begun its activities can be used as proxy, including a certain date (like 1 January) defined by the SBR procedures.

Sources

Administrative sources: Trade/company register, tax administration, social security.

Comments

In general, the date is the prerequisite for a legal unit to engage in legal economic transactions. Given that the SBR is usually supplied from administrative sources, a date for an effective economic activity should always exist and be stored in the SBR.

Legal unit – Date of permanent cessation of activities (economic death)

Legal unit – Date on which the legal unit ceased (administrative death)

Purpose

These demographic characteristics are needed for monitoring the death or permanent inactivity of the unit from both economic and administrative perspectives.

Definition

A legal unit ceases to be part of an enterprise (economic death) when:

- The unit ceases to be economically active and it is not part of the control chain within the enterprise group.
- The unit ceases to exist.

The record of a legal unit that has ceased (administrative death) should be kept in the SBR marked dead.

Proxies

Registration of the year of economic death is important, even if the precise day and month are not known, as is often the case.

Sources

Administrative sources (from which the date often comes with considerable delay), surveys.

Comments

A legal unit usually has no particular interest in officially announcing cessation of its activities. Cessation may be the end result of a slow process of diminishing activity. Even if the activity completely ceases, the owner may still want to retain the option of resuming in the future and hence may retain a legal name, fiscal number and other legal attributes.

Between economic death and administrative death there is often a period of inactivity during which the unit may be regarded as economically *inactive* (also called *dormant*). Signs of this situation are lack of employees, the cessation of tax compliance and inability to contact the unit after repeated efforts.

A5.3 Legal unit – Economic/stratification characteristics

Legal unit – legal form

Purpose

Legal form (also known as *legal status*) is useful in helping to eliminate ambiguity in identification searches. It is also a possible criterion for selection of units into survey frames and for stratification for survey sampling. It is also useful in defining the institutional sector (see Annex B). In monitoring the internal market there is an interest in being able to distinguish publicly traded and incorporated companies.

Definition

Defined according to national legislation. Section 4.6.4 gives an example for EU countries.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys. The legal form of a legal or natural person determines the tax regime applicable to the unit. Thus, if the SBR is supplied with taxation records it has access to the values of this characteristic.

Comments

Adjustments to questionnaires and collection processes are often made in accordance with legal form of the legal unit operating an enterprise.

Legal unit – Principal activity*Purpose*

As a stratification characteristic and for the compilation of regional and small area statistics.

Definition

The activity code is determined according to ISIC Rev 4. The code is based on the activities actually conducted by a legal unit even when they are ancillary in the context of the enterprise.

Proxies

Employment or value added for each of the different activities can be used (if available), also activity descriptions, etc.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Comments

This characteristic indicates whether the activities are ancillary in the context of the enterprise.

Legal unit – Secondary activities (non-core)*Purpose*

For indirect use by national/regional accounts to estimate enterprise or establishment figures.

Definition

The activity codes are determined according to ISIC Rev 4. The code is based on the activities actually conducted by a legal unit even when they are ancillary in the context of the enterprise.

Proxies

Employment or value added for each of the different activities can be used (if available), also activity descriptions, etc.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Legal unit – Ancillary unit (yes/no) (non-core)*Purpose*

To distinguish ancillary legal units. This characteristic enables statistical analyses to reallocate the cost of ancillary activities to the activities for the benefit of which they are conducted.

Definition

An ancillary activity is incidental to the main activity of a unit. It facilitates the efficient running of the unit but does not normally result in goods and services that can be marketed. For units that are relatively small and have only a single location, ancillary activities are not separately identified. For larger units with multiple locations, it may be useful to treat ancillary activities in

the same way as a secondary or even a principal product (2008 SNA: 5.10).

Proxies

Ancillary activities tend to relate to certain ISIC classes, for example book-keeping. However, while book-keeping is a potential ancillary activity, it is predominantly done by the businesses that offer book keeping services on the market and constitute the corresponding ISIC class.

Sources

Surveys and administrative sources.

Comments

Whether or not a unit is an ancillary unit should be explicitly recorded in the SBR. The absence of a value should be interpreted as *having no knowledge about this characteristic*.

Legal unit – Turnover (with flag for consolidated turnover)*Purpose*

As a size indicator for stratification, and for profiling an enterprise group using a bottom-up approach.

Definition

Turnover consists of all income arising during the reference period, in the course of ordinary activities of the unit and is presented net of all price reductions, discounts and rebates granted by it.

The income referred to arises from contracts with customers and is realized through the satisfaction by the unit of the contractual performance obligations usually represented by the sale (transfer) of goods or the rendering of services. However, it can also contain revenues obtained as a yield on the use by others of the statistical unit's assets.

Excluded from net turnover are:

- All taxes, duties or levies linked directly to revenue.
- Any amounts collected on behalf of any principal, if the statistical unit is acting as an agent in its relationship with said principal.
- All income not arising in the course of ordinary activities of the statistical unit. Usually, these types of income are classified as "Other income", "Financial income", "Extra-ordinary income" or under a similar heading, depending on the respective set of generally accepted accounting standards used to prepare the financial statements.

Proxies

Fiscal sources may be used as sources of information, for example, corporate income tax or VAT returns. There may be cases where such information is unavailable, for example where units are not subject to VAT. In such a situation one possibility is to estimate turnover based on

employment using a standard turnover per head ratio calculated by the ISIC class.

Turnover is relevant for market units; it should not be estimated for non-market units. However, non-market units can have secondary production.

Sources

Administrative sources and surveys.

Legal unit – Number of persons employed

Legal unit – Number of employees

Legal unit – Number employees in full-time equivalent (non-core)

Purpose

The SBR should record the actual numbers of persons employed and employees, both as head counts and the latter also in FTEs. The main aim is to obtain stratification characteristics as well as statistical information. Persons employed are preferable for stratifying survey samples for very small units. The SBR employment figures are used especially for small area statistics, where the SBR is the only comprehensive source. In addition, employment figures can be used by employment statistics where needed.

Definition

Number of persons employed is defined as the total number of persons who work in the unit, including wage-earners and self-employed persons (i.e., working proprietors, partners working regularly in the unit and unpaid family workers) as well as persons who work outside the unit but who belong to it and are paid by it (e.g., sales representatives, delivery personnel, repair and maintenance teams). It excludes manpower supplied to the unit by other enterprises, persons carrying out repair and maintenance work in the unit on behalf of other enterprises, as well as those on compulsory military service.

Number of employees is defined as those persons who work for an employer and who have a contract of employment and receive compensation in the form of wages, salaries, fees, gratuities, piecework pay or remuneration in kind. A worker from an employment agency is considered to be an employee of that employment agency and not of the units in which they (temporarily) work.

For stratification purposes the intention is to use the situation at the end of year (including seasonally active units). As the end date approach is not harmonised the annual average can also be used as reference calculated for a certain period. The number of employees in full-time equivalents might be calculated for a full year as well as for the period in which the legal unit is active. If number of employees in fulltime equivalents is used as stratification characteristic, the calculation for the active period should be used, while for statistics covering a year the calculation should cover the whole year.

Proxies

These figures can be obtained directly in some countries, while other countries may have an administrative source available only for the number of paid employees. However, the latter countries can obtain total employment by making a statistical adjustment to their figures on paid employees by adding a constant representing unpaid employment (including working proprietors), calculated e.g. according to legal form and activity:

- For sole proprietors, total employment = paid employees + 1;
- For partnerships, total employment = paid employees + number of partners.

Depending on the availability of administrative sources, more sophisticated methods have been devised in some countries. Note also that 0 means less than half a person, whether calculated as head counts or FTEs.

Sources

Administrative sources, surveys, calculations.

Comments

Note that the reference period used for the measurement of employment in business demography is a year, i.e. the labour force should be an annual average, though this can be approximated by using the number of persons employed at any given moment during the year if this is the only information available. How the annual average is calculated depends on the updating frequency of the register. If the unit operates during only part of the year (seasonal, new enterprises) the average should be calculated for that period.

Both head counts and FTE have certain advantages and the latter should be recorded if possible. Head count is the number of physical persons, full-time and part-time, employed by a unit. FTEs are defined in SBS (variable 16 14 0) and also in national accounts (FTE employment is the number of full-time equivalent jobs, defined as total hours worked divided by average annual hours worked in full-time jobs). FTEs are a more accurate measure of labour input but they are available in fewer countries. As the concept of 'full-time' may vary, the definition does not really make the FTE data comparable. Given the administrative origin of the data, it may not be possible to calculate FTEs in some countries. Another possibility would be to use 'hours worked' directly. This is gaining favour in employment statistics, but the comment on data availability is also likely to apply to this variable.

Legal unit – Institutional sector and sub-sector in the European System of Accounts (ESA 2010)

Purpose

The institutional sector classification for legal unit is determined by the institutional sector classification of the enterprise with which it is associated.

Sources

SBR procedures

Comments

In practice, institutional sector classification is often applied directly to legal units. Then the enterprise inherits its institutional sector classification from the legal unit(s) from which it is constituted.

Also in practice, enterprise and legal unit coincides in the majority of cases.

A5.4 Legal unit – Relationship between units**Link with enterprise group and truncated group****Legal unit – Percentage of control of legal units by the enterprise group (direct + indirect)***Purpose*

To allow the delineation of the enterprise group.

Sources

SBR procedures.

Legal unit – Percentage of ownership of legal units (direct + indirect)*Purpose*

To support calculation of control.

Sources

SBR procedures.

Link between enterprise and legal unit**Legal unit – Identification number of the enterprise(s) to which the legal unit belongs***Purpose*

To identify the legal units belonging to an enterprise.

Sources

SBR procedures

Links with local units**Legal unit – Identification number of the local unit(s) that belongs to the legal unit***Purpose*

To identify the local units belonging to the legal unit.

Sources

SBR procedures

Consolidation method (non-core): *Integration method of the legal unit in the consolidated accounts (if relevant).*

A5.5 Legal unit – Relationship with other registers/update sources**Legal unit – Value added tax (VAT) identification number****Legal unit – Identification number of each other administrative source used to maintain the SBR or to compile economic statistics***Purpose*

For linking administrative data to the SBR; for the links to non-resident units and for the links to foreign trade.

Definition

Defined by the corresponding administrative source. A separate VAT identification number may not exist in countries where a single identification system for legal units is used by several administrative sources.

Proxies

Certain economic activities may be exempted from VAT and thus have no VAT number. In this case identity number from another administrative source, such as tax number, corporate registration number may play the same role.

Sources

Mainly tax administration.

Comments

In some countries, a VAT number may relate to part of a legal unit or to a natural person who is not an economic operator but who has a VAT number for tax reasons.

Legal unit – Balance sheet data registration identification number

(Applicable only for legal units required to publish accounts.)

Legal unit – Balance of payments register or foreign direct investment register**Legal unit – Farm register****Legal unit – Chamber of commerce and trade associations***Purpose*

The first link concerns the balance sheet data. Many countries use the published accounts as a source for the SBR and combining the SBR and published accounts data is likely to become very important in the future. It reduces response burden and serves the production of economic and financial statistics.

The second link concerns the BoP and FDI registers and the usefulness of these links concerns the harmonisation of statistics related to globalisation. Conventional bank settlements data are becoming more and more frequently replaced by data based on direct surveys, for which the BoP compilers are increasingly relying on SBRs.

The third link to farm register (if separate from the SBR) is important for the coverage of main agricultural enterprises and for updating the increasing rural multi-

activities, where the role of agriculture as principal or secondary activity may often change.

The fourth (set of) link(s) to (often) compulsory registrations that exist in countries for various reasons, for example establishment of legal persons and liability commitments of producers. These administrative or para-administrative bodies may well register births, deaths and changes in legal structures of the legal units within their realms of responsibility. They often cover a large part but not all of the legal units in scope for the SBR.

Definition

The practical arrangement of the links, either from the SBR to the associated registers, or vice versa, is a country matter.

Proxies

The links can be achieved in several ways, for example:

- Recording in the SBR the reference number of the unit in the other register(s), together with the legal unit identity number.
- Adding one or more marks to the SBR to indicate that the legal unit is also present in other register(s) under the same identity number.
- In the absence of a unique identifier, the link can also be built by name/address matching and possible use of other characteristics. This is less effective, but matching names/addresses can be useful for detecting errors. For every legal unit recorded in administrative sources, the different relations should be stored separately.

Sources

Administrative sources

Comments

The requirement to publish annual accounts depends on national legislation, which may vary between countries. It usually applies to incorporated and publicly traded companies.

The data from published accounts may be considered free from confidentiality restrictions and thus suitable for exchange with other NSIs. However, this is not the case if the data are accompanied by data collected via surveys.

The links to balance sheet data can be used for combining SBR and accounts data, which are generally available in satellite registers.

In the EU, either the national central bank (NCB) or the NSI is a member of the European Committee of Central Balance Sheet Data Office, which supplies data for an increasing number of Member States.

The BoP register in most countries is maintained by the NCB. In this case close cooperation and exchange of information between the NSI and the NCB is vital for well-targeted and good quality BoP and FDI surveys. The BoP register may alternatively be maintained by the NSI, or there may not be a separate BoP register and the SBR is used for BoP purposes.

The link between farm and business registers is discussed in Section 3.4.1.

Several other registers (e.g. shop register, tourist establishment register, transport registers, educational institutes register, etc.) may also be important for updating the SBR, especially in determining whether or not units are active, because data in these registers tend to be updated frequently.

Harmonisation of units in the SBR and these associated registers is an important issue.

Annex B

International classifications

B1: International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC), Revision 4

For economic statistics, including SBR, countries are recommended to apply the *International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC), Revision 4*. In ISIC, economic activities are subdivided in a hierarchical, four-level structure of mutually exclusive categories. This facilitates data collection, consistent aggregation and presentation and analysis at detailed levels of the economy in an internationally comparable, standardized way. Revision 4 is the most recent version of the standard and is specifically designed to classify enterprises, kind-of-activity units, and establishments as defined in the 2008 SNA according to their principal economic activity. ISIC includes four levels of aggregation:

- **Sections:** The sections are the highest level of aggregation. The sections are labelled alphabetically and listed in Figure B1.
- **Divisions:** The next level contains two-digit divisions. Examples are Division 03; Fishing and aquaculture; Division 13: Manufacture of textiles.
- **Groups:** The third level contains three-digit groups. Examples are Group 031 Fishing; Group 131: Spinning, weaving and finishing of textiles.
- **Classes:** The most detailed level contains four-digit classes. Examples are Class 0312: Freshwater Fishing; Class 1312: Weaving of textiles.

At each level of ISIC, a statistical unit is assigned to one and only one ISIC code. The set of statistical units that are classified into the same ISIC category is often referred to as an *industry*. Examples are:

- The *furniture industry* – all units classified in ISIC division 31 (Manufacture of furniture).
- The *construction industry* – all units classified in ISIC section F (Construction).

For national purposes the level of detail provided by ISIC may not be viewed as sufficiently detailed. Countries may thus introduce a fifth hierarchical level, usually called sub-class level, or intermediate levels of aggregation (for example between divisions and the

much more detailed group level). However, the national aggregates should be consistent with the ISIC hierarchy. Conversely, it could also be the case that the level of detail in ISIC may be viewed as being too detailed. In such cases a country might for instance use the three-digit level instead of the four-digit one.

Where national classifications are used these should be fully comparable with ISIC. If this is not the case international comparison is not ensured. Transformation of data from one classification to another with different groupings is likely to create problems by leaving some activities out or including the same activity more than once, which reduce data quality and international comparability. It should, therefore, be possible to aggregate the national groupings into the sections, divisions, groups and classes of ISIC. Activities should not be moved between different levels of aggregation or within the same level of aggregation.

Assigning classification codes

ISIC class descriptions and explanatory notes are used in determining the class of activities under which a particular statistical unit is classified. It is recommended that all units are classified down the class level of ISIC, all higher aggregation levels can then easily be derived. Classifying at the class level does not mean that data have to be published at this level. The level of publication has to be decided based on various criteria: confidentiality criteria, type of statistical unit, sample selection, etc.

A unit is to be classified according to its principal (or main) activity. The principal activity of a unit is defined as the activity which contributes most to the total value added of the unit (2008 SNA: 5.8). In determining the principal activity, all activities of the unit, except the ancillary activities, are considered but only the principal activity is used to classify the unit. The other activities of the unit are named secondary activities and may also be recorded in the SBR.

Principal and secondary activities cannot be carried out without the support of a number of ancillary activities, such as bookkeeping, transportation, storage, purchasing, sales promotion, cleaning, repair and maintenance, security, etc. At least some of these activities can be found in every economic entity. Ancillary activities are not produced for selling on the market, but are only undertaken for the unit itself. Thus,

the output of ancillary activities is always intended for intermediate consumption within the same entity. Although most ancillary activities produce services, some goods-producing activities may, as an exception, be regarded as ancillary. The goods produced, however, may not become a physical part of the output of the principal or secondary activities (such as tools).

Top-down method to determine principal activity

A unit may perform one or more economic activities. If all these activities fall into one category in ISIC, the coding is quite straightforward. However, if these economic activities fall under different ISIC categories, the principal activity has to be determined using the top-down method. The principle of the top-down method is that the classification of a unit at the lowest level of the classification must be consistent with the classification of the unit at higher levels. To satisfy this condition the process starts with the identification of the category at the highest level which comprises most of the value added. The method will then be applied to the second classification level: within the category that accounted for the highest share of value added at the highest level, the category at the second level is determined analogously: it is that category which accounts for the highest share of value added. This method is further applied until the lowest level is reached. The category at the lowest level determines the principal activity of the unit. It may not necessarily be the category which accounts for more than 50% of the value added.

Input and output based indicators of value added

In practical implementation the main problem is that usually data on value added by the different activities of the unit is not available and can also not easily be observed. Therefore some value added substitutes are proposed in ISIC. They fall into two types: substitutes based on output, such as gross output attributable to the goods and services produced, value of sales of the different goods and services, and substitutes based on input indicators, such as wages and salaries attributable to the different activities, hours worked or employment attributable to the different activities. Such substitute indicators should be used as proxies for the unknown value added data to obtain the best approximation possible compared to the results which would have been obtained on the basis of the value added data.

However, both the input and output substitutes have problems. Generally, the relation of a substitute

indicator (such as turnover or employment) to the value added might be quite different by the different activities and thus distort the results based on the substitute criteria. Reasons are the different value added shares of the different goods or services sold, or the differing capital intensities of the different goods or services produced. For the input indicators there is a further problem: ancillary activities play no role in the determination of the principal activity. So, employment engaged in ancillary activities must be identified and taken out of the determination.

Output substitutes are thus the more preferred basis and also more easier to handle: in principle it is quite straightforward for a unit to provide data on the shares of sales for the different categories of the goods and services produced, compared to reporting on the share of employment by the different activities, for example. Having such information on the share of sales by the goods and services sold, is a quite good basis for the derivation of the principal activity. The sales shares can be transformed into an approximation of value added shares. If there is a kind of structural business statistics performed in the country, the data might be used for that transformation. Such structural business survey ask for data on the output of a unit as well as the cost data, which is split into intermediate consumption and components of value added (wages and salaries, depreciation, taxes/subsidies and as a residual operating surplus). These data allow calculating shares of intermediate consumption related to sales for each of the industries. Thus, the resulting value added share by industry can be used for the transformation of the sales data into value added data. For each kind of goods and services produced the value added share of the industry typically producing that product can be applied. This is of course only an approximation as the value added structure of that unit in question could be different from the average value added structure of that industry. However, it is nevertheless a good approximation and can avoid treating goods and services sold as having the same value added relations when determining the principal activity. In addition to these general rules for the determination of the principal activity there are additional or specific rules for certain activities, such as for wholesale and retail trade or government activities, as well as specific rules for various activity constellations, such as repair and maintenance, vertical integration, or outsourcing. For more information on these rules see ISIC Rev. 4.

Figure B1 The sections of ISIC Revision 4

A	Agriculture, forestry and fishing
B	Mining and quarrying
C	Manufacturing
D	Electricity, gas, steam and air conditioning supply
E	Water supply; sewerage, waste management and remediation activities
F	Construction
G	Wholesale and retail trade; repair of motor vehicles and motorcycles
H	Transportation and storage
I	Accommodation and food service activities
J	Information and communication
K	Financial and insurance activities
L	Real estate activities
M	Professional, scientific and technical activities
N	Administrative and support service activities
O	Public administration and defence; compulsory social security
P	Education
Q	Human health and social work activities
R	Arts, entertainment and recreation
S	Other service activities
T	Activities of households as employers; undifferentiated goods- and services-producing activities of households for own use
U	Activities of extraterritorial organizations and bodies

Annex B2: Classification of institutional sectors ⁴⁸

The institutional sector classification groups together similar kinds of institutional units according to the nature of the economic activity they undertake. Corporations, NPIs, government units and households are intrinsically different from each other in their economic objectives, functions and behaviour. In relation to the three basic economic functions:

- Production of goods and services.
- Consumption to satisfy human needs.
- Accumulation of various forms of capital.

Only the production function is of interest in the context of the SBR. So, only the institutional units engaged in production are covered in the SBR and can be classified by institutional sector. Thus, only households which engage in market production are covered in the SBR (in the form of sole proprietorships). As the SBR covers only resident units, the institutional sector “rest of the world” is also not of interest.

Corporations undertake production and/or accumulation, but not consumption. Corporations are split into non-financial and into financial ones. This distinction is made because of the special role that financial corporations play in the economy. Government undertakes production, accumulation and final consumption on behalf of the population. Households undertake consumption on their own behalf and may also engage in production and accumulation. NPIs are diverse in nature: some behave like corporations and some undertake activities similar to government but independently of it.

The five institutional sectors relevant for the SBR are:

- Non-financial corporations sector (S.11).
- Financial corporation sector (S.12).
- General government sector (S.13).
- Household sector (S.14).
- Non-profit institutions serving households (S.15).

The distinction between corporation and government is fundamental, but also difficult to apply. It refers to the distinction between market and non-market production. Corporations produce for the market and aim to sell their products at economically significant prices. Government units organize and finance the provision of goods and services to individual households and to the community as a whole. They may produce most of these goods and services themselves but the products are either provided free or at prices determined by

considerations other than purely market forces. Households are primarily consumers but some of them are also producing goods and services for the market. When production takes place in the household but not in a separate legal entity owned by the household, it is described as an unincorporated enterprise. It is then part of the institutional sector households.

As mentioned above NPIs are behaving mainly as non-market producers, in that they are producing goods and services not for the generation of income or profit. However, some NPIs behave like corporations and should thus be classified under S.11 or S.12. Other NPIs that are controlled by government are to be classified under S.13. The remaining NPIs, those that produce goods and services but do not sell them at economically significant prices and are not government controlled, are classified in a separate institutional sector called non-profit institutions serving households (NPISHs). They are mainly non-governmental social institutions, such as churches, social clubs, charitable associations, etc.

The five institutional sectors can further be divided into subsectors, depending on the national needs and intended analysis. The European System of Accounts (ESA 2010) includes subsectors for all the institutional sectors except S.15 (NPISH), based on the type of institutional unit and control criteria. The sectors S.11 (non-financial corporations) and S.12 (financial corporations) are subdivided by whether the units are public, foreign controlled or nationally private controlled. The first category would include public corporations, the second one resident units belonging to foreign controlled multinational enterprise groups, whereas the last category comprises all the other institutional units classified in S.11 and S.12. The financial sector S.12 is further divided by type of institutional units into nine subsectors, from central bank, other monetary financial institutions, to insurance companies and pension funds. The general government sector is split into four subsectors: central government, state government, local government, and social security funds. And lastly, also the household sector is split into different types of households. Only the subsectors S.141 (employer households) and S.142 (own-account workers) are covered in the SBR.

The classification of institutional sector is different from an activity classification, such as ISIC. Therefore, the activity coding is not of much help for the coding according to the institutional sectors. Only in certain cases does an activity code lead directly to a sector code. Examples are central banks, insurance companies, pension funds and the activities of public administration. The legal form of an institutional unit is also a criterion that is partly of help: the main examples are the legal forms of sole proprietorship which are allocated to the household sector S.14. However, the legal form of non-profit associations is not per se of help as the NPIs can be classified to S.11, S.12, S.13 and S.15 according to their behaviour and control.

⁴⁸ *Business Registers Recommendations Manual*. Eurostat (2010)

The main challenge for the implementation of the sector classification is the correct allocation of units to sectors S.12 and S.13. Sector S.14 can be implemented automatically based on the legal form and NPIs need to be coded manually. So, if the allocation to the sectors S.12, S.13 and S.14 is fixed, the remaining units that are not sole proprietorships can be allocated to sector S.11.

For the allocations to sectors S.12, S.13 and S.15 additional information is required that is usually not available in the SBR and in the administrative data sources used in the SBR. The complexity of these sectors lies in deciding whether a unit is a market or a non-market producer and whether the unit is government controlled or not. Further, especially as concerns the

financial sector, there are various types of units that need special attention, such as holdings, head offices, special purpose entities, captive financial units and artificial subsidiaries.

Working closely with the experts of national and financial accounts in the NSI is recommended in order to achieve a high quality and coherent classification according to the institutional sectors. Such cooperation could also include the central bank, as often these institutions produce financial statistics and compile financial accounts.

Figure B2 provides an overview of the relationships between the different kinds of institutional units and the institutional sectors.

Figure B2 Institutional sector as determined by legal description and market/non-market production

Type of producer		Market producers		Non market producers	
		<i>Goods and non-financial services</i>	<i>Financial intermediation</i>	<i>Public producers</i>	<i>Private producers</i>
Private and public corporations		S.11 Non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations		
Cooperatives and partnerships recognised as independent legal entities		S.11 Non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations		
Public producers which by virtue of special legislation are recognised as independent legal entities		S.11 Non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations		
Public producers <i>not recognised as independent legal entities</i>	Those with the characteristics of quasi- corporations	S.11 non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations		
	The rest			S.13 General government	
Non-profit institutions recognised as independent legal entities		S.11 Non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations	S.13 General government	S.15 Non-profit institutions serving households
Unincorporated household enterprises: Partnerships not recognized as independent legal entities Sole proprietorships	Those with the characteristics of quasi-corporations	S.11 Non-Financial corporations	S.12 Financial corporations		
	The rest	S.14 households	S.14 Households		
Head offices whose preponderant type of activity of the group of corporations controlled by them is the production of:	goods and non-financial services	S.11 Non-Financial corporations			
	financial services		S.12 Financial corporations		

Annex C

Examples of statistical business registers

Annex C1: SBR development at Statistics Denmark

C1.1 Summary

The development of Danish business statistics from a situation where they covered only activities in the agricultural sector, which used to be the main activity in Denmark, to a situation where they cover all business activities, and the move from separate lists of businesses updated by individual survey statistics divisions to a comprehensive business register, are illustrate how an NSI can become an important player in developing a business register that is useful for statistics as well as for public administration and the businesses themselves.

As long as statistics are based on censuses the need for a statistical business register (SBR) is not obvious. However, when it is acknowledged that:

- the NSI does not have the resources to conduct censuses;
- the results of censuses are out of date before the results can be published; and
- the response burden is high;

the need for an SBR is evident. This was already recognized by the Nordic Council in 1952, but it was not until 1959 that the first version of the Danish SBR was established.

Due to Statistics Denmark's (SD's) co-operation with other public institutions it has been possible to influence the development of different administrative registers. The breakthrough came in the end of the 1960's with the establishment of four central administrative registers. Based on this, SD was able to establish a statistical register as well as an administrative register based on regular electronic updating routines. A special law was passed to make a distinction between the statistical register and the administrative register. The basic information in the two registers may be the same (names and addresses, etc., as well as the administrative identification numbers), but some information is available only to statisticians.

Also technical developments have increased the possibilities for a much more flexible and comprehensive business register and for identification of inconsistencies. In 1993 SD established a relational database, which provided the basis for a complete

separation of the Statistical Business Register from the Central Administrative Business Register (ABR). The ABR, which earlier had been maintained by SD, was moved to the tax authorities and then to the Ministry of Businesses. Linking administrative units to legal units was found to be important for public purposes and the tax authorities, among others, found it useful for the ABR to include local kind of activity units, linked to legal units, for administrative purposes.

It is interesting that, because of its importance to the economy, the agricultural sector itself (organisations and the farmers) was very interested in the agricultural statistics, making it possible to maintain an annual census with data collected locally until 1970, after which the Real Estate Register of the municipalities formed the basis for the Danish Statistical Agricultural Register, separate from the Statistical Business Register. This Real Estate Register was used to update the Statistical Agricultural Register until 2008.

Still more administrative registers have been developed since 1970, and SD is, by law, required to participate in the preparatory work. SD determines whether the new register contains information of interest to statistics and tries to influence the legislator to take statistical needs into consideration. One recent example is monthly reporting of various wage and employment figures to the tax authorities.

SD has worked to remove "shadow registers" kept by individual statistical divisions. The latest developments have been to incorporate (1) the agricultural register into the general business register, including the use of two administrative registers covering the agricultural sector (the Central Household Animals Register and the General Agricultural Register) and (2) the use of the digital maps and transformation of information on forests from these maps to categorise LKAUs. In the following sections these experiences are elaborated.

C1.2 First establishment of Danish business register

From 1896 to 1958 seven censuses were carried out covering only the non-agricultural industries. The same form was used for all activities and sizes of units. This did not produce economic statistics that were fully acceptable to users. The SNA also indicated that the establishment was the relevant statistical unit to use. The municipalities distributed and collected the census forms, carried out the primary validation and sent the forms to SD. Even after this, SD still had to contact many businesses by telephone.

In Denmark the first SBR was established on the basis of the business census in 1958. It was called a *Statistical Address List*. It was a list of companies with activities in industry, building and construction. The list was updated manually by information from address directories made available to SD free of charge. The register from which samples could be drawn from an updated population was ready in 1961. At this time only punched cards were used, which made use of the list very resource intensive.

C1.3 Breaking point one – Precondition for second SBR

By the end of the 1960s four electronic administrative registers had been established and electronic data processing was introduced at SD. This was a revolution. The four registers were as follows.

- *Wage Earner and Employer Register (1965)* - with the purpose of keeping information on the wage earners' supplementary pension.
- *Central Person Register (1968)* - every person in Denmark received a personal identification number (id) which has to be used by government in all contacts with the public.
- *Value Added Tax register (1967)* - almost all businesses were obliged to register by the tax authorities in an electronic register when their turnover exceeded a certain threshold. For several years, the register was used to produce statistics on turnover.
- *Income Tax Register (1969)*. It became compulsory for all employers to withhold income tax for all employees each time wages and salaries were paid. The collection of payments to the wage earners' supplementary pensions could be collected at the same time. Later, the register was extended to cover dividends, etc.

The Income Tax system, which was built to manage the flow of money, was not connected to the VAT system. These two new systems introduced the possibility of producing statistics on wages and numbers of employees.

One condition for the new systems to function was the establishment of a personal id-number system. Besides the personal id-number the Central Personal Register also included an address register. Each occupied house and dwelling was in the address register. Each road was assigned a municipality code and a road code. The house numbers (and for flats also floor and flat numbers) that were already known were registered in the register. As businesses were not in the address register this created some challenges. However, as businesses had house numbers on roads, SD decided simply to extend the official address register with these extra house numbers.

The address register is still not complete. It will be fully incorporated into the building and construction register.

At the same time all businesses will be given an official address. There are some challenges concerning businesses not connected to buildings (where x-y coordinates will be used) and concerning owners who are not living in Denmark (where addresses are still needed). The current system is usable, but complete integration is not expected until in the middle of 2016.

The law on SD in 1966 gave SD the right to access to the new registers. SD received information from the VAT register each month, including information to calculate turnover, and it received information from the Income Tax Register, including payments to the wage earners' supplementary pensions, from which the number of employees could be calculated.

C1.4 Content of second SBR

In the first instance SD did not make attempts to integrate the two tax systems. Two separate files were kept. However, it became obvious that it would be of interest to link information on turnover and number of employees. Also, the number of units (initially administrative units, later legal units) depended upon which system (the VAT System or the Income Tax System) was the basis for the calculation, which was not satisfactory.

It was difficult to link the two registers, and a matching system had to be developed. Fortunately, both the VAT register and the Income Tax Register kept links between two or more administrative units that were connected to the same legal unit. Each of the registers also identified one administrative unit as the main unit. This information was used to create a legal unit in each register.

If the legal unit was a single proprietor business the personal id-number was registered in both registers. So in case of a single proprietor business the two registers' identification numbers could be connected with virtually no problem. This was also the case for partnerships. The addresses did not always correspond in the two registers, but this was not a significant problem. A decision simply had to be taken about which should be used.

For other legal forms matching on addresses was the starting point. Also matching on telephone number was used. As not all businesses were registered in both registers the result of matching was a group of matched units and two groups of non-matching units. During the following updating routines all units with a new or changed address were re-matched with the non-matched group from the other register, by which process the quality of the matching was improved.

C1.5 Statistical versus administrative business register

In 1967 the Ministry of Administration asked SD to establish a general administrative business register. SD undertook responsibility for establishing a business register both for the public and for statistical purposes,

but making a clear distinction between the public part and the statistical part. Identification information such as the legal form and the activity code was the same. SD suggested introducing a common id-number that could be used to identify each legal unit, but this turned out to be impossible at that time, especially because it would have required a change in the two main source systems (the VAT System and the Income Tax System). A law on the Administrative Business Register was passed by the Danish Parliament in 1975.

Further development of the two Danish Business Registers is discussed below, but before getting to this, it is relevant to talk about the cooperation concerning the number of employees at local kind of activity units (LKAUs).

C1.6 Work to establish LKAUs

SD wanted to produce employment statistics distributed by municipality, or even smaller areas. When the Income Tax System was designed it was not possible to attribute the employees to a local unit so SD had to conduct a survey for this purpose. As businesses already withheld individual taxes for each employee the only missing information in administrative sources was where the employees worked. In most cases the employer had only one local unit and all employees could be attributed to that location. This location was usually at the address registered by the tax authorities. It was also possible to see where the employees lived using administrative registers. If a group of employees lived far from the location identified by the tax registration of the business, it indicated that at least one more location was used by that employer. Thus, SD could limit its survey to those employers where these kinds of differences showed up.

A system to collect information on LKAUs was established together with the Tax Authorities and the business organizations. The system came into action in 1980. Each LKAU belonging to one legal unit with more than one LKAU was given a three digit number. Every November SD sent a list of LKAUs with addresses and activity codes to the legal unit. The legal unit had to complete the list by adding changes to addresses and activity codes by deleting LKAUs that no longer belonged to the legal unit and by adding new LKAUs. In the event of a takeover SD asked for information from the legal unit that had taken over the LKAU.

When a legal unit submitted information on income and withheld tax for each employee to the Tax Authorities, it had to indicate the three digit number of the LKAU at which the employee was employed at the end of November. The employer could also give information about whether or not the employee had been employed for the whole year. Where an administrative unit corresponded exactly to one LKAU, the legal unit did not need to fill in the LKAU list or the three digit number of the LKAU for the employees.

This working-place based system also included registration of correct addresses for those legal units that had only one LKAU but at a different address than that registered in the VAT register.

C1.7 Work to establish a coherent Statistical Business Register

During the 1970s and 1980s a simple record system was built. Even though LKAUs were registered for those legal units that had more than one, it turned out that there were some problems with the locations of the one-to-one units. An investigation unveiled the reason: for some units the address registered in the VAT register was not the address where the activity took place but the home of the owner or the place where he/she kept his/her account. This meant that, as the SBR was updated every month, useful information from the working-place system described above was overwritten. As a result it was not sufficient to keep records on those LKAUs where more than one was connected to a legal unit. There was a need for a complete list of LKAUs. At the same time, as a result of technological developments, it became possible to move towards use of relational databases.

C1.8 Common identification

A committee was established by SD in 1970 with members from several ministries to determine how centralisation of business registration could be achieved. Although its report explained the need for common identification numbers, and although this same message was repeated by a similar group in 1982, this did not move the VAT and Tax Authorities before these two directorates were joined. Even then the situation was not ideal as the only agreement that could be obtained was that the VAT and the Tax numbers should be converted into one.

As SD already had done the work required to link the two systems, it was 'just' a matter of agreement about converting the identification numbers to the new number. In the case where there was a one-to-one situation the adjusted Tax number was used. In case of several administrative identification numbers being used by a legal unit, these were all converted to the new numbering scheme, but with still the main Tax number being identified as the main number. Now the VAT and Tax numbers were the same even though, in some cases, one number was used for VAT registration and two numbers were used for Tax registration. The numbers are referred to below as Tax numbers.

SD took the new id-number into use in 1987 in the Administrative Business Register (ABR). In 1992 the new number was also in use in the joined VAT and Tax register.

C1.9 Third establishment of the Statistical Business Register

SD was then able to drop its matching procedure. Instead a relational database was created, including the

administrative units and their relations and their relations to the *legal unit*, which was still the SD unit used in the ABR still being maintained by SD. The relational database also included the *enterprise* and the *LKAU*, and the relation between these, and the relation between the enterprise and the legal unit, and in some cases the relation between LKAU and an administrative unit.

Business demography was a new important area. Therefore the new SBR also included information about demographic events at LKAU level, including relations between LKAUs involved in the same event.

The process and system that followed an LKAU over time was very complicated, using information about changes in addresses and activity codes, about starting and stopping legal units, and about employees and turnover.

C1.10 Fourth establishment of the Statistical Business Register

No more than six years passed before the SBR was again revised. The reason was the merging of VAT and Tax by the Tax authorities in 1992. Also the revision of the law on the Administrative Business Register (ABR) resulted in a wish to renew business registration more fundamentally to include other administrative registers as well and to require that the public administration should not ask for the same information more than once.

In 1999 the Central Administrative Business Register was moved to the Ministry of Business who is responsible for its maintenance. Formally, legal units and LKAUs were transformed to the new ABR as legal units and legal LKAUs. SD kept legal units, enterprises and LKAUs together with the legal LKAUs and Tax units in the SBR. Registration of demographic events was also moved to the ABR. However, this did not work properly in practice since it was not possible to change LKAU-identification numbers of legal units in the ABR. After a while DS therefore took over the demographic registration, which was then integrated in the work with the SBR.

The work of SD to link administrative units to legal units was crucial for the successful establishment of the Central Administrative Business Register, and the Tax authorities, among others, found it useful for administrative purposes for the ABR to include administrative local kind of activity units.

Figure C1 illustrates the Danish SBR, the main sources and output in terms of providing sampling frames for survey based statistics. The main sources of the SBR are the ABR and the Tax register. Other statistical and administrative registers (e.g. on agriculture) are also used. SBR staff updates the SBR through processing of information received from administrative sources and from surveys conducted by SD. Staff from survey based statistics divisions have access to update the SBR, on basis of information received from their data collection.

C1.11 Further development

The SBR has been further developed by including enterprise groups. A system for registration of owners of legal units has been taken into use and the data exchange with the European Group Register has been incorporated.

One of the latest developments has been to incorporate the agricultural register into the general business register. This includes use of two administrative registers covering the agricultural sector, the Central Household Animals Register and the General Agricultural Register, and use of digital maps to categorise LKAUs. If divisions of the NSI discover need for changes, these are recorded in the SBR which helps to keep the SBR updated. It also helps to ensure that statistics produced by different divisions are consistent.

A few years ago a new system for employers to report the income of their employees to the Tax authorities came into use. Every month the employers have to report the income paid to each employee and by which legal LKAU the employee is employed. The information is used to produce high quality employment statistics. It is also used to check if a legal LKAU has been taken over by a new employer in which case the corresponding statistical LKAU will be transferred to the new enterprise.

Looking forward it may be compulsory for businesses to report ownership of other businesses to the Ministry of Businesses, and this information may be available to SD. SD has asked for detailed ownership groupings (below 5%, 5-10%, etc.) but the actual groupings have not yet been decided.

C1.12 Lessons learned

The Danish experience suggests that three things are very important:

- Identification numbers.
- Keeping things simple, having information on administrative registrations and keeping track of registration history.
- Cooperation with public administrations and business organisations.

Common identification

The most important thing is the identification numbering system. The optimal situation is that of one common identification number for legal units used by all organisations. This allows different administrative identification numbers and the related information to be connected through this single legal unit identification number. Groups involving relevant ministries and other organisations set up to discuss common identification of the units, including legal form and local units, have been very useful in the development of a common identification number in Denmark.

Keep things simple

It is important to keep things simple. This means not mixing everything together but keeping things separate. In particular, administrative information should be kept *untouched* and connected to administrative units. SBR processes can then transform this information into relevant information about statistical units. It is also important to know when information has been updated, from what source, and to what point in time the information relates. If information is received about a change in activity code it is important to know if this change relates to the current year or the previous year.

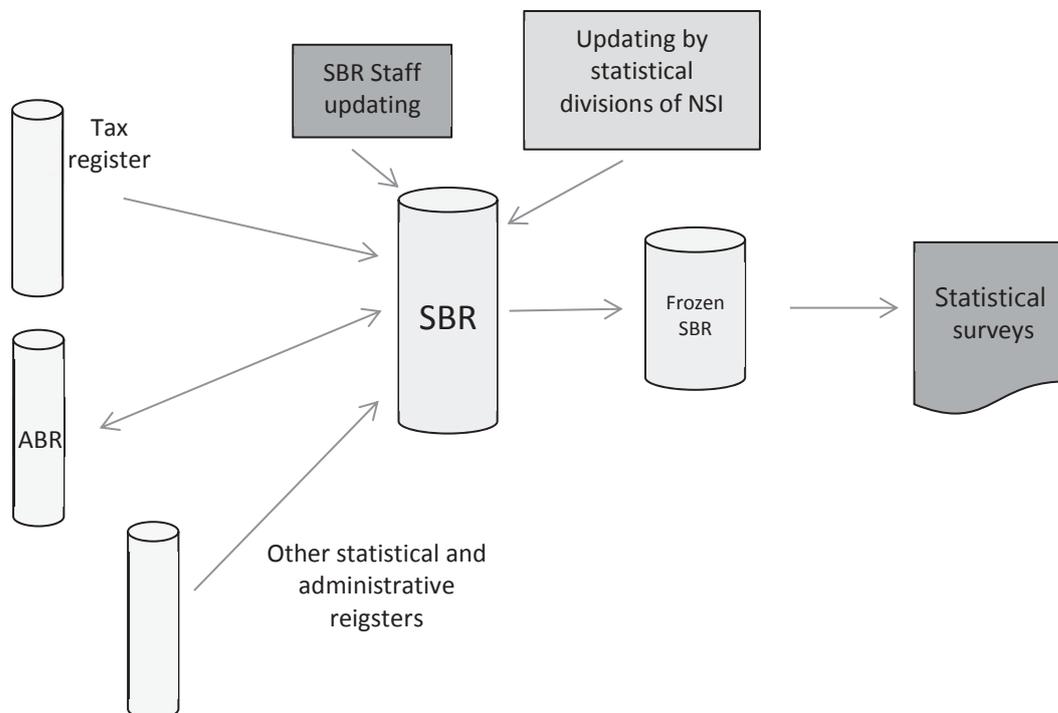
Cooperation with administrative sources

Good cooperation with administrative sources is crucial to ensure progress over time. The General Director of Statistics Denmark is a member of the board of *Datacentralen*, a publicly owned data processing centre which operates the administrative registers of the country. This provides SD with an important opportunity of influence on the development and maintenance of administrative registers which is of great value also for the SBR. The close cooperation between the SBR and the Central Administrative Business Register has also been very useful.

Updating frequency

The 1966 law about Statistics Denmark gave the organisation access to various administrative registers. SD used to get information from the VAT Register each month and from the Income Tax Register, including the payment to the wage earners' supplementary pension, each quarter. Now this information is delivered each week. SD also gets information about each employee connected to each legal LKAU each month, and about monthly turnover, exports, imports etc. Since 1999, when the Central Administrative Business Register was established, SD has been receiving updating information when the CVR is updated, though this is dependent to a large extent on self-registration.

Figure C1 Overview of the Danish SBR- updating and extracts



Annex C2: Costa Rica's SBR programme

C2.1 Overview of Costa Rica's SBR programme

The Register of Enterprises and Establishments (REE) in Costa Rica is a structured registry of the resident institutional units (*enterprises*) in the private sector in Costa Rica, and their local units (*establishments*), engaged in the production of goods and services. It includes information on the characteristics of each unit, such as identification (ID) characteristics, location, economic activity and size.

Institutional units are enterprises associated with one or more legal units. They have unique ID numbers assigned by the National Institute of Statistics and Census (INEC). Each enterprise is further divided into one or more local units (establishments). Each legal unit of an enterprise can be further associated with one or more of the enterprise's local units. On the other hand, every local unit of an enterprise is associated with at least one legal unit. Thus, two or more local units of the same enterprise can be associated with the same legal unit. This is illustrated in Figure C2 below.

C2.3 Updating process

The process for updating the REE relies on three mechanisms. First, telephone interviews are carried out to obtain basic characteristics such as identification characteristics, location, size, and economic activity. This mechanism is supported by a customized information system developed in-house that allows updating of the REE database during the interview itself.

The second updating mechanism consists of the use of administrative records from both internal and external databases, including:

- *External sources:* Ministry of Finance, Agency for the Promotion of Foreign Trade, Electoral Register, National Registry and Social Security Register.
- *Internal sources:* Consumer Price Index and Construction Price Index databases, as well as the National Enterprise Survey.

A third updating mechanism, implemented since 2012, is the collection of data based on an enumeration exercise that covers one district at a time. This enumeration of local businesses is supported by the use of hand held *Personal Digital Assistants* (PDAs) - computer devices - to update all the key characteristics in the REE. The main purpose of this exercise is to assess the coverage of the

REE and the increase or decrease in the number of businesses in the district.

In addition to the three methods described above, special data collection projects that are carried out by INEC for other government agencies provide inputs to update the records of the REE.

Approximately 40 percent of the records in the REE are updated every year. Priority is given to those enterprises that have not been interviewed for a long period of time. This process of continuously updating the REE is crucial in providing an accurate picture of the current economic situation of the country and an adequate sampling framework for statistical surveys. Having a central business register avoids duplication of work and the proliferation of fragmented datasets collected by different users or agencies on an ad-hoc basis.

C2.4 Unique identifier

Costa Rica has a unique identifier for each natural person and for each legal entity. The ID number for natural persons ("*cédula física*") has nine digits and is required for all official administrative procedures related to social security, obtaining a passport, etc.

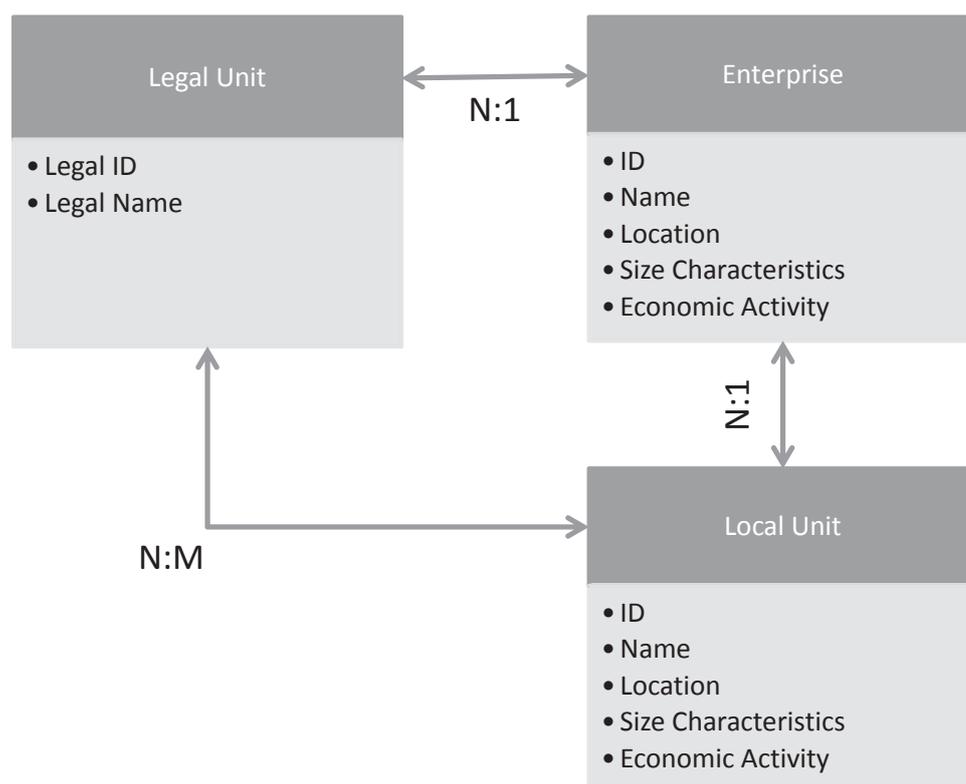
The ID number for legal persons ("*cédula jurídica*") is assigned by the National Registry to legal entities for paying taxes, complying with social security regulations, engaging in buying and selling operations, etc. It has ten digits; the first four digits identify whether it refers to a corporation, an association, a cooperative, a foundation, a foreign enterprise, etc.

C2.5 Administrative records

Social Security Register

The social security register (SSR) consists of each month's payroll, with details on the number of employees, salaries, and economic activity. It includes information obtained from employers, self-employed persons, individual employees, and persons employed under a special (collective) contract.

The SSR is used to improve the coverage of the REE by means of a data integration process. The first step is to reclassify data from the SSR database of employers that refer to geographic areas and economic activities (according to ISIC Rev. 3) to INEC's statistical classification of territories and ISIC Rev. 4. Once this reclassification is done, an assessment of the SSR database is carried out to determine which characteristics are relevant for the REE.

Figure C2 Structure of business register

Finally, the SSR database is linked with the REE database using either the unique ID numbers (for natural or legal persons) or the passport number in the case of foreign persons. Non-matching records are analysed in detail to check whether the enterprise is already included in the REE under another ID number (to avoid duplicates), or whether it is inactive, etc. Those records from the SSR database that are not found in the REE database are added as new records, and are then immediately updated to the extent possible by means of follow-up phone interviews.

Records from the Ministry of Finance

Administrative records from the Ministry of Finance contain data on the taxable income of natural and legal persons, over a specific period of time, collected by the Tax Revenue Administration. This information is used for two specific purposes: first, to update the data of large taxpayers and improve the coverage of the REE by adding new records for large enterprises whose ID numbers are not found in the REE; second, to identify large or complex enterprises based on their level of taxable income and their number of employees by economic activity.

Register of the Agency for the Promotion of Foreign Trade

The Trade Intelligence Division of the Agency for the Promotion of Foreign Trade (PROCOMER) provides INEC its register of exporting enterprises every year, within the framework of a joint programme to carry out a Census of Exporting Enterprises. The goal of this programme is to measure the number of jobs created by

the exporting sector and to assess the share in total exports of different categories of enterprises by size.

The PROCOMER register of exporting enterprises is used to improve the coverage of the REE on the basis of a comparative analysis that allows identification and addition of new records for exporting enterprises not found in the REE.

National Registry and Electoral Supreme Court databases

The National Registry is the institution responsible, among other things, for the cadastre and registry of real estate, industrial, and other property, as well as for the official registration of legal persons. The Electoral Supreme Court is in charge of civil registration, i.e., registration of all events that are relevant from the point of view of civil law (births, marriages, divorces, deaths, emission of personal ID number, etc.). These two databases are used for cross-validation purposes. Specifically they are used to verify the existence of the unique ID numbers (for natural and legal persons) of the enterprises included in administrative records, and to verify whether the legal name of an enterprise in the REE corresponds to the name assigned by the National Registry or the Electoral Supreme Court.

Consumer Price Index and Construction Price Index databases of INEC

The list of enterprises providing data to INEC for the Consumer Price Index and Construction Price Index programmes is periodically used to update the REE. With the help of an information system, the data collected through the price surveys are compared to the

information in the REE database, thus avoiding the need to conduct additional phone interviews.

INEC's National Enterprise Survey framework

The National Enterprise Survey is conducted on a quarterly basis on a sample of enterprises from the private sector engaged in various economic activities throughout the country. It collects data on the number of enterprises, jobs, hours worked, and salaries. Its main purpose is to provide information on the situation of Costa Rica's labour market from the point of view of the enterprises.

It also provides an opportunity to update the information of enterprises belonging to the same enterprise group. In some cases it is possible to obtain from a single interview, data on the various individual enterprises that belong to the same group, even if not all of them are included in the sample. This also helps to improve the coverage of the REE by identifying the enterprises that are not yet included in its database.

The REE is updated with data collected through the National Enterprise Survey with the help of a special module, which allows comparison of basic data of the surveyed enterprises with the current contents of the REE database.

C2.6 Cooperation agreements with sources of administrative records

An inter-agency cooperation agreement between the INEC and the Ministry of Science and Technology provides for the electronic exchange of data and mutual technical assistance with respect to the collection, use, and maintenance of statistical data for the *National Survey for the compilation of Indicators on Science, Technology and Innovation*.

Within the framework of an agreement between INEC and the Institute for Research in Economics (IICE) at the University of Costa Rica (UCR), INEC provides the sampling framework for the *Survey on Business Expectations*. The sample includes businesses from agriculture, manufacturing, construction, wholesale and retail trade, and other service activities.

A number of other inter-agency agreements have been established between INEC and the Ministry of Finance, the Agency for the Promotion of Foreign Trade, and the Ministry of the Economy, Industry and Trade. These agreements, which reflect the good relationships that exist with these institutions, allow exchange of information to improve the operation of the REE programme.

Annex C3: Statistics Canada's Statistical Business Register

C3.1 Introduction

When Statistics Canada redesigned its statistical business register (SBR) system over the period 2007-08, it built a Microsoft Windows application installed on a client PC using a service-oriented architecture. There are five major components comprising the system, namely:

- VB.Net is the programming language for the Windows Forms user interface, the business layer and the data layer.
- SQL Server 2005 is the underlying database that both stores and manipulates the data.
- SAS is used to crunch and manipulate input data from external sources.
- the system is message based and uses BIZTALK for routing the messages.
- Web services are used to manage both security and access to the data.

All users access the SBR by means of the same common interface with a privilege administration tool as the control mechanism to manage this access. The SBR includes information on legal and operating units and their structural relationships. It maintains a journal/log of all updates applied to these units as well as to stratification characteristics and information on reporting arrangements.

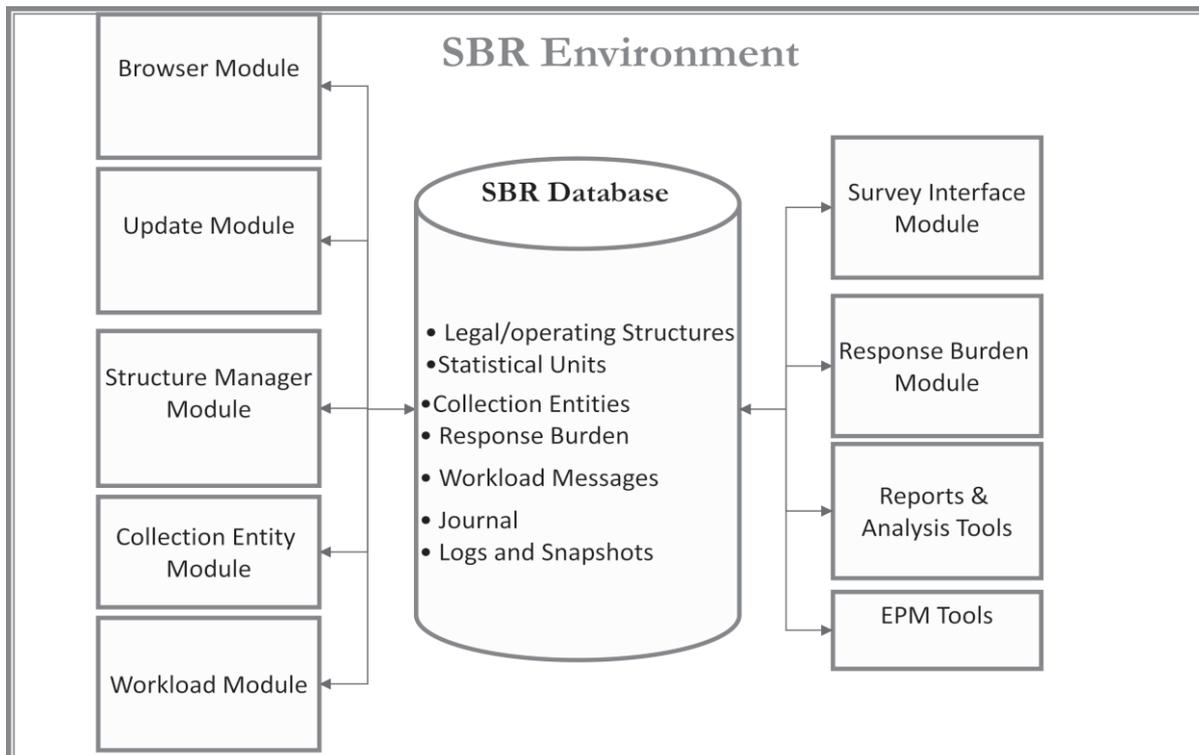
Seven modules within the register manage different aspects of this information.

C3.2 Browser Module

The Browser Module allows the user to browse and search for information on a given enterprise. It displays information such as the business structure, collection entities, the response burden, and the history of updates contained in the Register (Journal, Log and Snapshots).

The Log contains all the updates performed on a given variable. The Journal records significant events (e.g., amalgamation, dissolution) concerning a given business. The monthly Snapshots show the image of the business structures at regular points in time in the past (previous months).

Figure C3 SBR Environment



C3.3 Update Module

This component serves to control and manage all updates, both manual and batch, that need to be applied to the database. The SBR receives requests or signals for updates from various sources such as subject matter, collection and external administrative sources. Although each may follow a slightly different process, in general a request is vetted to determine if human intervention is required (Workload) and if accepted, it is applied to the database. Whether a request is rejected or accepted, the systems will send out notification to ensure that the affected parties are aware of the status of the request.

C3.4 Structure Manager Module

The Structure Manager Module is used to show complex structures via the Browser. It manages these enterprise structures and the links that exist between production entities. It manages and controls the parent-child links, propagates attributes within the structure, and checks the coherence of the structure once changes have been made.

C3.5 Collection Entity Module

This module is responsible for generating and updating collection entities (containing information used in contacting respondents) based on the information contained in a survey control file received from the survey's sampling process. It also manages the manual customization of collection entities that is performed by survey managers based on pre-established business rules.

C3.6 Workload Module

When an update signal arrives at the SBR that requires manual investigation/verification, the Update Module generates a signal to the Workload Module indicating the need for review by an analyst/profiler. The Workload Module manages, prioritizes and assigns the signals to the analysts/profilers. After manual review of a signal, the analyst/profiler either implements or cancels the corresponding change request.

C3.7 Survey Interface Module

The function of this module is to produce two key SBR products that are necessary to SBR partners in conducting their surveys: the frozen frames for sampling; and respondent information file for collection.

The monthly standardized frozen frame is the result of extracting all units that comprise the total business population. It contains a list of all units of production with their tombstone information, the industrial classification, the detailed geographical code, the size variables (such as revenue and employees), and other information to satisfy sampling procedures. Survey methodologists use this file primarily for the generation of survey samples. It is also used by subject matter divisions as an input to their edit, imputation and estimation system.

From the units selected for a given survey by survey methodologists, the SBR provides the respondent information file to collection staff. This file contains the information required in order to carry out data collection, such as the contact name, address and telephone number.

C3.8 Response Burden Module

This module presents all information relating to respondent burden for economic surveys. It displays information about all contacts that the NSI has had with any given enterprise. The response burden tool displays this information by survey, enterprise, contact name, and questionnaire. It also calculates the actual burden per enterprise. Finally, it provides extractions concerning exclusion orders and cases that require specialized treatment. A central frame used by the entire economic survey program means a truly comprehensive view of response burden and thus facilitates its management.

C3.9 Reporting and analysis tools

These tools produce the reports needed to manage survey operations and analyse sub-populations. The Survey Frame Assessment (SFA) tool extracts and presents changes that have occurred in a survey's population between two reference points. It includes births, deaths and changes to industry codes and size indicators such as revenue. The SFA tool can dynamically display all changes that occurred as of the previous day for selected characteristics by operating entity. This is of particular importance as changes can be reviewed immediately prior to the production of the monthly frozen frame. Other tools include the analysis of updates to the SBR and demographic analysis of the business population.

Annex C4: Business register at the National Statistics Office of Georgia

Activities for the development of the Business Register (BR) at the National Statistics Office, Georgia (Geostat) started with evaluation and identification of gaps and specific problems. The evaluation resulted in identification of several serious gaps, such as an incomplete database, several missing characteristics, outdated software (Paradox database developed in 1990s, with no possibility of adding new fields), lack of database structure, and inefficient updating procedures (receiving data on paper and manual data entry).

At a later stage it was necessary to identify possible internal and external sources for updating BR and to obtain full access to the relevant administrative sources. In this regard a number of working meetings were held with various public institutions that provide administrative data. In addition, in response to the Geostat's initiative, the Government adopted a resolution, according to which the administrative authorities are obliged to provide regularly required information to Geostat. According to a Government Resolution, approved in February 2011, and amended in July 2011, the Revenue Service (Tax Office) is obliged to submit monthly data to Geostat on active tax payers (that are enterprises). In this context, an enterprise is considered active if it has indicated:

- Turnover more than zero in any kind of declaration (VAT, revenue, etc.).
- Number of persons employed more than zero in any kind of declaration (VAT, revenue etc.).
- Wages or number of persons employed in a wage notification.
- Profit or loss in a profit declaration.
- Any kind of tax payment with the exception of property tax.

Active enterprises report data on turnover and number of employees to the Tax Office on a voluntary basis. Thus, the Tax Office does not receive these data from all enterprises. It submits the data it does receive to Geostat.

As a result of these activities, Geostat has direct access to administrative sources. In most cases, high quality statistical products are obtained by combining administrative and survey data.

Other sources for updating the BR include various business statistics surveys. Quarterly and annual business surveys provide information on contact details and type of economic activities of the surveyed entities.

International experts were engaged in the above mentioned activities in order to ensure international recommendations were taken into account and relevant methodologies for the formation of BR in line with international standards were introduced. In this respect cooperation with Statistics Sweden is noteworthy and greatly contributed to the development of the BR.

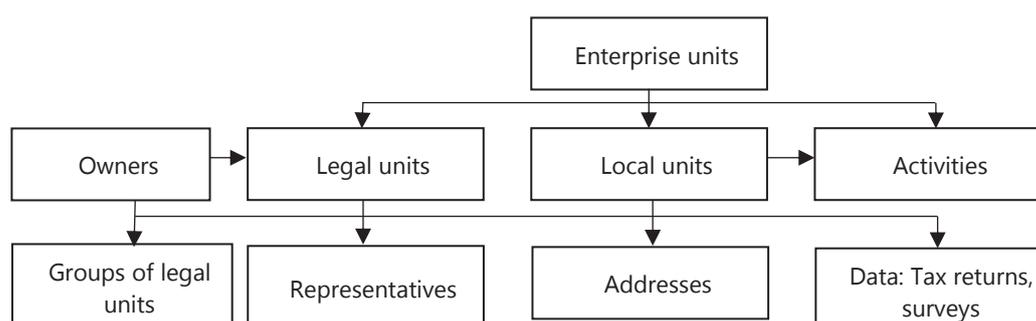
The Cooperation Agreement between Geostat and Statistics Sweden was signed in June 2011. The project is funded by the Swedish International Development Agency (SIDA) and covers a four year period. One of the components and goals of this cooperation is improvement and development of the BR in Georgia. As a result of this cooperation with the Swedish experts, a BR maintenance strategy has been developed that covers use of administrative sources, use of survey results, assessing needs of users, planning of updates, and rules for dealing with BR information.

Various administrative and internal data have been collected, unified and processed, resulting in the formation of a new database, namely the BR. At the moment the database contains approximately 581,000 entities (both active and non-active entities). It includes all registered economic entities, including physical persons. There is almost full coverage of legal entities, but full coverage of local units, local kind-of-activity units and enterprises has not yet been achieved.

Based on information received from the Revenue Service (Tax Office), Geostat has developed a methodology for creating a sampling frame for business surveys. This sampling frame covers active enterprises from the non-financial corporation sector. It may be used for all business surveys in Georgia.

The structure of the BR, as shown in Figure C4, is in accordance with international standards and recommendations.

Figure C4 Structure of the business register



One of the major factors in the development of the BR was the software. In this regard new user-friendly software has been developed. The database is operating in MS SQL Server and interface in Web application (PHP).

It was also important to establish a flexible and automated system for updating the BR. The main sources are administrative sources, namely the National Agency of Public Registry and the Revenue Service (Tax Office).

- From the Public Registry, Geostat receives information on newly registered and liquidated (closed) companies, as well as information on changes.
- From the Revenue Service (Tax Office), Geostat receives information on active taxpayers.

Update procedures are automated. The information is received from administrative sources monthly, using automatic interfaces that the Geostat has with the databases of these institutions. Received data are cleaned and structured. The statuses of the companies are identified. This information received from the administrative sources is automatically reflected in the BR.

Geostat also uses results of various business surveys to update the BR. It conducts special surveys that are directly aimed at updating the BR and improving its quality.

Figure C5 shows the current BR updating system.

In the data received from administrative sources the actual address and type of economic activity are specified only for a limited number of enterprises. Furthermore, in some cases, the information on economic activity is incorrect. This was a major problem for the BR and hence for all business surveys. Thus, since January 2013 the Geostat has been conducting a monthly survey, using computer assisted telephone interviews (CATI), of companies included in the BR to update information about the status, kind of economic activity and actual address of every local unit of the enterprises.

Relevant documentation is also essential for the users of the BR and is a part of the overall quality of the service the BR provides. Thus, Geostat created a metadata document for the BR that contains comprehensive information about the BR and brief description of the characteristics, production, updating and maintenance procedures, etc. In addition, it contains information about the rules for dealing with BR.

The relevant division in Geostat is continually working to maintain the BR and to improve its quality. Figure C6 shows the stages of BR development.

It is of major importance to share experiences with other countries and improve capacity of staff through participation in trainings and workshops.

Figure C5 Data flow of the business register

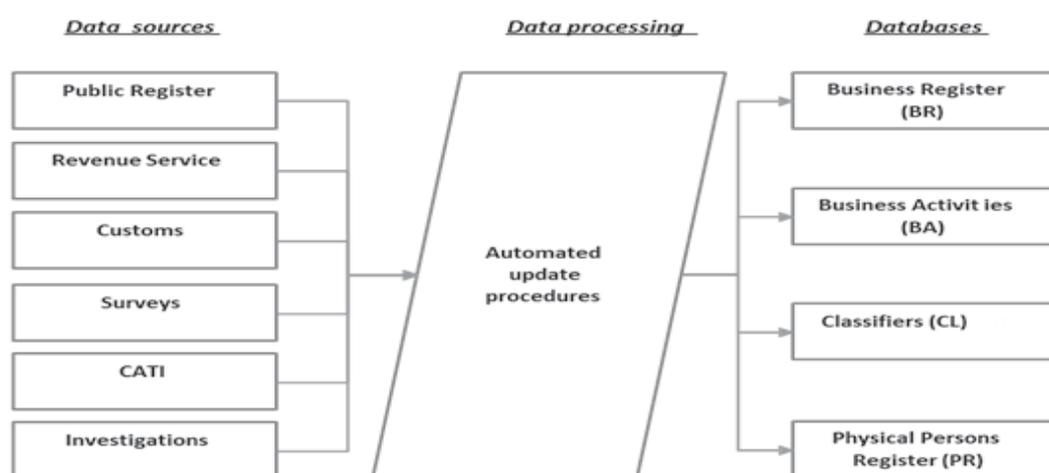
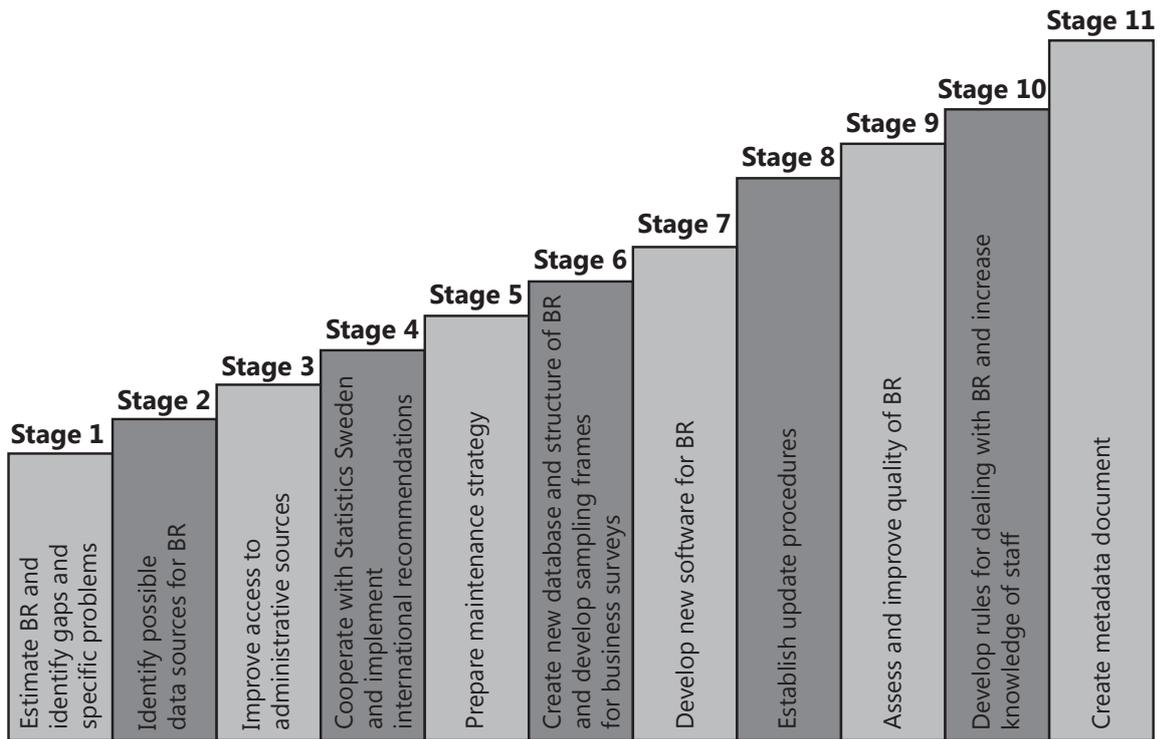


Figure C6 Stages of business register development in Georgia



Annex C5: Redeveloping the Malaysian Statistical Business Register

C5.1 Brief history of business register in Malaysia

The Central Register System (CRS) of Department of Statistics Malaysia (DOSM) was set up in 1994 in a PC based system using Dbase IV. It was upgraded in 1996 into a local area network (LAN) environment. Further enhancements were made in 2002 with an upgrade to a wide area network (WAN) environment as well as incorporation of features needed by users, requirements for new surveys and accommodation of new industrial codes.

C5.2 Streamlining business processes

DOSM has implemented an *Integrated Statistical Systems Framework (ISSF)* to ensure the quality in the statistical production process. It is an integrated online system to streamline statistical business processes and replace non-integrated systems. It is in line with the Generic Statistics Business Process Module (GSBPM) developed by the UNECE, which provides a basis for standard

terminology on statistical metadata systems and processes (Figure C7).

The ISSF is a flexible tool for describing and defining the set of business processes needed to produce official statistics. It can also be used as the basis for quality assessment of censuses, surveys, administrative data and data from other sources. The processes have been articulated within the ISSF module, which can be accessed by the head office and the state offices.

The ISSF provides the main business functionalities of DOSM for pre-collection, collection, processing, analysis and dissemination. The web browser will be the front end interface to this integrated system and will provide wide access capabilities anywhere and anytime through web based application. The *business register (BR)* which is known as *Establishment/Enterprise (EE) Frame* will be supporting the pre-collection and collection module. The modules for implementing the BR are shown in Figure C8.

Figure C7 Integrated Statistical Systems Framework

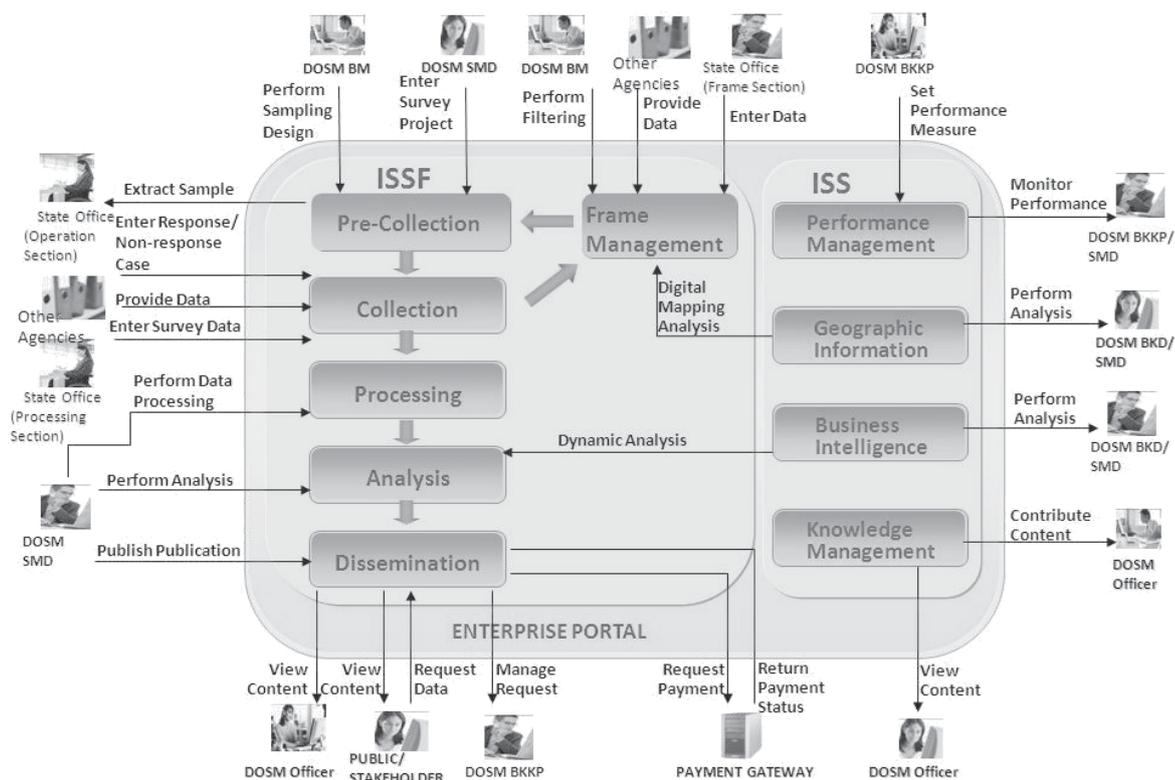


Figure C8 BR modules and functions

Module	Function
Screening Agency information Business Profiles	Maintenance through list information from administrative sources
Establishment/Enterprise Duplicate Data Collection Respondent Management Control	Maintenance of establishment and enterprise information
Report Business Intelligence (BI)	To generate monitoring reports and analysis tools
Geographical Information System (GIS)- EE	To monitor the number/type of establishments in an enumeration block

C5.3 Integration of the BR with the Collection System

In the ISSF platform the BR is integrated with collection processes through the *Operational Control Information (MKO) module*. The MKO module is being designed to allow the subject matter experts and enumerators to update basic business information in the frame before clean data from the survey/census are processed. This increases the efficiency and timeliness of the updates. Comprehensive, reliable and timely BR coverage and content increase data collection efficiency and assist the state offices in performing their updating activities.

The first benefit is accessibility by enumerators of the most recent and detailed information in the BR. Having access to comprehensive and timely information facilitates interpretation of information received from the respondents. It assists the department in improving respondent relations and improved respondent relations lead to more comprehensive and better quality responses.

C5.4 Future challenges

Enhancing the use of administrative data sources

While data from primary sources continue to play leading role in producing economic statistics, usage of administrative data is increasing. Thus efforts must be made to enhance the cooperative arrangements between DOSM and administrative agencies. Furthermore, the DOSM must address barriers in terms of quality associated with the use of administrative data as basis for official statistics with respect to coverage, timeliness, frequency, validity, reliability, consistency, legality and confidentiality constraints.

The DOSM should seek new sources of administrative data. In this respect, one of the steps to be taken is to engage with agencies involved in the *Malaysia Corporate Identity Number (MyCoID)* introduced by the Company Commission Malaysia. MyCOID refers to the company incorporation number which is used as a single source of reference for registration and transaction purposes

with other relevant Government agencies. These will be the future platform for coordinating and acquiring data from these agencies.

There is also potential to replace some survey data with administrative data obtained from other sources. These would reduce the burden on respondents and the operational costs incurred by the office. Awareness among administrative agencies is vital in developing the uses of their data sources. This can be done through meetings, seminars, training, and conferences. DOSM is monitoring the quality of incoming administrative data through ISSF.

Keeping the BR accurate and up-to-date

The BR should provide information that is as close as possible to the situation in the real economic world. Ways in which to do this include:

- Improving access and use of identification and matching data.
- Improving updating from survey feedback.
- Enhancing the use of administrative data sources.
- Establishing area frame development and maintenance procedures.

Reducing respondent burden

The BR contains many records as it is the main medium for survey frame creation and samples selection. It should enable control of the number of establishments and enterprises that are involved in censuses and surveys. Integration between BR and MKO will assist the enumerators to better manage the respondents and ultimately to ensure that the statistics collected are timely and reliable.

Business demography

There is a growing demand for business demographics, which involves statistics for specific events such as birth, death, survival and growth. Together with the Company Commission Malaysia, DOSM is conducting research on

the relevant terminology, scope and coverage and data availability.

Business profiling

Business profiling is the method for analysing the legal, operational and accounting structure of large enterprises and enterprise groups. It provides better

understanding of the complex structures of the enterprise groups in the country. Profiling can be viewed as part of a broader, coordinated strategy for improving agency's economic statistics. DOSM has taken step in this direction by creating an enterprise module in the ISSF system that can facilitate profiling activity.

Annex D

Examples relating to SBR quality assurance

Annex D1: Istat's SBR quality indicators

D1.1 Introduction

The Italian NSI (Istat) maintains an SBR, referred to as the *Business Register of Active Enterprises (ASIA)*. Based on the principle of transparency, Istat produces a declaration of ASIA quality to accompany ASIA viewed as a micro-data file. The declaration comprises a set of indicators intended to measure the various quality components. It is a synthesis of indicators, direct and indirect, that give a temporal reference to the data, sources and variables. It is easy to read and interpret in terms of users' needs. It covers several aspects:

- Use of metadata contained in the archive's database.
- Compilation of indicators, presented in the form of tables, graphs, histograms, etc.
- Calculation of synthetic indicators.
- Selection of priority indicators.

The following paragraphs describe 50 quality indicators that can be calculated for each reference year, including the various breakdowns of these indicators by selected characteristics. They cover the basic data from the administrative files that provide the inputs to ASIA as well as the statistical data on the output side, i.e., ASIA enterprises.

Comparisons over time (two or more consecutive years) and interpretation of increases and decreases in the indicators provide additional information on quality.

In the following paragraphs

- t = reference year of ASIA data
- s = administrative source of input:
 - Chamber of Commerce (CCIAA)
 - Fiscal register (MEF)
 - Social Security (INPS)
- st = data from source s for reference period t.

D1.2 Quality of inputs

Quality criterion: Timeliness

The indicators measure the time lag in the delivery of the administrative data to the SBR for each source. The

time lag is the difference between the date on which the data are supplied and the reference period to which they refer.

- Temporal lag, measured in months, between supply date (s_t) and reference year t , compiled for $s_t = \text{CCIAA}$.
- Temporal lag, measured in months, between supply date ($s_t = \text{MEF}$) and reference year t , compiled for $s_t = \text{MEF}$.

Quality criterion: Coverage

- Number of records received from supply s .

Measurement of the completeness of enterprise births and deaths is useful in detecting under-coverage and over-coverage. It is better to use comparisons of data from a single source over time since simple counts of the numbers of births or deaths during a reference period do not of themselves provide much information.

The effect of update delay of the source is obtained by comparing the values of a characteristic - the number of cessations in year t (*Ncess as in indicator 4*) or the number of starts of activity in year t (*Nstart as in indicator 5*) – in the yearly supplies received at time t (s_t) and at time $t+1$ (s_{t+1}) – each case referred to the year t .

The two simple indicators to estimate the lag in the registration of the two dates in input source $s = \text{CCIAA}$:

- Loss of information about cessations occurring in year t using the supply s_t :

$$1 - \text{Ncess}[St+1(t)] / \text{Ncess}[St(t)]$$

where

t = year of cessation

$\text{Ncess}[St(t)]$ = number of cessations occurring in year t for which data was received in year t from source s .

$\text{Ncess}[St+1(t)]$ = number of cessations occurring in year t for which data was received in year $t+1$ from source s .

- Loss of information about starts of activity occurring in year t using supply s_t :

$$1 - \text{Nstart}[St+1(t)] / \text{Nstart}[St(t)]$$

where

(t)=year of starting activity

$N_{start}[St+1(t)]$ = number of starts occurring in year t for which data was received in year t from source s .

$N_{start}[St(t)]$ = number of starts occurring in year t for which data was received in year t from source s .

Quality criterion: Completeness

The indicators measure the completeness of characteristics, including the numbers of missing values and/or number of missing values as a proportion of the total number of values, for selected characteristics.

- 6) Company name, $s = CCIAA$: Number and % of records with missing company name.
- 7) Legal status, $s = CCIAA$: Number and % of records with missing legal status.
- 8) Address(es), $s = CCIAA$: Number and % of records with missing address(es).
- 9) Principal economic activity code, $s = CCIAA$: Number and % of records with missing principal economic activity code.
- 10) Territorial (municipality, province) code, $s = CCIAA$: Number and % of records with wrong territory code.
- 11) Economic activity code, $s = MEF$: Number and % of records with missing economic activity code.
- 12) Registered head office abroad, $s = MEF$: Number and % of records with missing information about registered head office abroad.
- 13) Employees, $s = INPS$: number (%) of records with zero employees.
- 14) Economic activity code with classification not up to date, $s = MEF$: Number and % of records with classification code according to obsolete classification.

D1.3 Quality of processes

Quality criterion: Coverage

Information from the first macro-phase (Integration of administrative sources and identification of units)

Records coming from different sources that pertain to the same legal unit (i.e. identified by a common taxation identification number) are integrated in order to build-up a *cluster* of records for the same enterprise. The taxation register is, typically, the pivotal source, i.e., the base used to define the set of legal units and to integrate all the other sources.

- 15) No match: Number and % of records in source s (\neq MEF) not matched with $s = MEF$ by tax code.
- 16) Undercoverage due to lag: Number of *clusters* of administrative records indicating units not matched with $MEF(t-1)^*$ but then matched with $MEF(t)$ and as % compared with number of *clusters* in $MEF(t-1)$.

(*These are units that could have been linked and would have been included in the SBR in time $(t-1)$ if the tax register had successfully updated such units in time).

- 17) Structure of *clusters* by number of matching sources: Number and % of *clusters* consisting of 1, 2, ... n sources.

Quality criterion: Accuracy

Information from the first macro-phase (Integration of administrative sources and identification of units)

- 18) Economic activity code (NACE): number of records for $s = MEF$ with an old NACE classification, not coded using the new NACE codes as proportion of the total number of records with an old NACE classification.

Information from the second macro-phase (Estimation of characters)

- 19) Activity status: number of units (and/or related employees) with activity status estimated using administrative sources, then modified by deterministic (automatic) rules.

Information from the third macro-phase (Integration with statistical sources and quality control)

- 20) Number and % of units with erroneous NACE or activity status or number of employees.
- 21) Number of units (% of total errors) with erroneous NACE or activity status or number of employees then automatically corrected by standard deterministic rules.
- 23) Number of units (% of total errors) with erroneous NACE or activity status or number of employees then corrected manually by skilled BR staff (using clerical checks and on-line updating).
- 24) Number of units (% of total errors) with NACE or activity status or number of employees still to be ascertained and then accepted.

D1.4 Quality of outputs

The following indicators are calculated by size class in terms of number of employees in order to give different priorities to corrections.

Quality criterion: Coverage

- 25) Number of enterprises active in t and as change from $t-1$.
- 26) Number of reactivations in t as a percentage of active enterprises.
- 27) Number of units (in terms of enterprises and employees) by source (survey, estimation, profiling) by characteristic (NACE, employees and status of activity).

Quality criterion: Completeness

- 28) Incomplete NACE codes: Number of units with NACE 2-digit code; Number of units with NACE 3-digit code; Number of units with NACE 4-digit code).
- 29) Company name: Number of units with company name missing.
- 30) Address: Number of units with address missing.
- 31) Postal code: Number of units with postal code missing.
- 32) Telephone: Number of units with telephone number (fax, email) missing.

Quality criterion: Timeliness

- 33) Temporal lag, measured in months, between the dissemination date of ASIA (i.e., date when ASIA data are made available to users) and the reference year to which they refer.
- 34) Latest information (with reference date later than t when disseminating data with reference year t): Number of start dates later than t ; Number of cessation dates later than t ; Number of events (by type) having starting date later than t ; Number of units with employees updated at the time later than t .

Quality criterion: Accuracy**Direct indicators**

Comparison between BR data and SBS Small and Medium Enterprise Survey data concerning variables that are pre-printed in SBS questionnaires using BR data:

- 35) Number and % of questionnaires rejected by type of error.
- 36) Number and % of units with wrong address (trend over the last x years).
- 37) Number and % of units with erroneous activity status (trend over the last x years).
- 38) Number and % of units with conflicting economic activity.

Comparison between BR data and Survey on the local units of big enterprises (IULGI) (concerning variables that are pre-printed in IULGI questionnaires using BR data):

- 39) Number and % of questionnaires rejected.
- 40) Number and % of units with modified NACE.

- 41) Number and % of units with modified and corrected NACE (by manual check).
- 42) Number and % of units with modified and erroneous NACE (by manual check).
- 43) Number and % of units with inconsistent employees
- 44) Number and % of units with inconsistent and corrected employees (by manual check)
- 45) Number and % of units with inconsistent and erroneous employees (by manual check)
- 46) Number and % of units with modified activity status
- 47) Number and % of units with modified and accepted employees (by manual check)
- 48) Number and % of units with modified and erroneous employees (by manual check)

Indirect indicators:

- 49) Status of activity: analyses of time series of active enterprises of ASIA (t , $t-1$ and $t-2$) and measure of the reliability of selected sub-populations (defined by items like registrations, register deletions, reactivations, etc.). The indicator is also calculated by cell, like sector of economic activity and region.

Formula:

$$I_j = 100 - \left[\frac{\sum_k (x_{kj} * val_k)}{\sum_k x_{kj}} * 100 \right]$$

where:

x = number of units related to each item (i.e. number of register creations).

k = selected sub-population (item).

j = cell (class of employee, sector, etc.).

val = subjective measure assigned by statistician (BR staff) according to the importance of each item.

Mixed quality criterion: Coverage, up-to-dateness, transparency, dissemination

- 50) Updates and changes referring to time t when disseminating $t+1$ data: number (%) of false active units (non-active) in t ; number (%) of units with different NACE in t ; number of units with revised number of employees in t and related employees (%).

Annex D2: Colombian experience in implementation of quality processes

D2.1 Introduction

In Colombia, the process of updating the statistical business register, which is called the Statistical Directory, is supported by an information system called Directory Information System (SID)⁴⁹. The objective of the development of the SID is to automate processes and generate rules and controls enabling improvement in the quality of the information.

The SID is composed of eight modules, which are *supplier management, information preparation, information processing, actualization operations, analysis of quality, information exploitation, management and configuration, management and quality indicators*. Although there are quality control processes throughout the modules, the article is focused on the information preparation and processing modules, because these are where rules are implemented to ensure that internal and external information is of the best possible quality and can be used for updating.

The main advances and results obtained by implementing a set of validation and normalization rules, as well as the description of the process to combine administrative information with the statistical business register (SBR) information base are described. Finally, six indicators for measuring the quality of the SBR information are proposed.

D2.2 Description of the business register of Colombia

The Directory Information System (SID) aims to maintain an updated SBR by using information coming from administrative sources, updating operations (telephonic, field, and Web) and statistical operations.

The process of updating the SBR covers three main components, namely, universe, coverage and traceability of statistical units. These components are described as follows.

- Universe: the SBR must contain all the enterprises (and corresponding legal and local units) conducting economic activities in the country.
- Coverage: the SBR must guarantee a national coverage of all the statistical units addressing economic activities in every sector, this latter determined by means of the Uniform International Industrial Classification, Revision 4 adapted for Colombia (CIIU Rev. 4 A. C.)⁵⁰.
- Statistical units: the conceptual data model refers to three basic units: the enterprise, the homogenous production unit and the establishment.

Nonetheless, the model is being adapted to a more general framework in which the legal units, enterprises, local units and enterprise groups, are taken into account.

- Enterprise: economic entity or combination of the economic entities capable, by its own right, of possessing actives, incurring obligations and conducting economic and productive activities with other entities to achieve the objectives for which it was created.
- Homogenous production unit: characterized by a single activity: product inputs, production processes and homogeneous product outputs.
- Establishment: An enterprise or an enterprise part located in a topographically delimited place in which, or from which, economic activities are conducted. Its implementation includes a set of variables classified in four categories: identification, location, stratification and management.

The traceability of the statistical units is made possible via the identification, location, stratification and management information, which is updated for each enterprise through the SID:

- Identification: the Tax Identification Number (NIT)⁵¹, social reason, acronym, commercial (trade) name, legal representative and juridical form are recorded, in addition to the identification keys for every statistical unit in the database.
- Location: department, municipality, address, web page, e-mail, telephone.
- Stratification: CIIU code, busy staff, incomes from operational or sales.
- Management: constitution date, status, activity initiation and cessation dates.

D2.3 Quality improvement of the administrative information

The quality of the administrative information is measured in terms of coverage, reliability, coherence, opportunity, accessibility and traceability in the SBR frame. The updating and maintenance process is based on the following procedures:

- Processing and verification of administrative data.
- Feedback from economic surveys.
- Processing of economic unit data from censuses that are stored in the DANE (which is a database).

⁴⁹ Its acronym in Spanish.

⁵⁰ This is a classification according to economic activity.

⁵¹ The Tax Identification Number (NIT) constitutes the identification number of those enrolled in the Tax Unified Register (RUT), allowing individualizing the contributors and users, for every effect on tax, custom and change matters, and especially for accomplishing such obligations.

- Own processes for verifying and validating the SID information.

The six major modules of the SID that guarantee the quality of the business register are: *information management, information preparation, information processing, updating operations, quality analysis* and *information exploitation*.

Information management

The information management module monitors information from the moment it is requested from suppliers until it is received by the DANE. The information received is checked to see whether it satisfies the minimum variable requirements to be used in the SID. The information is requested in a specific format. Definitions are provided.

A process includes a general review of every database provided, and the statistical record is generated containing a diagnosis of the information provided to support for the preparation and loading processes.

Information preparation

The information preparation module consolidates the data provided by the suppliers at the level of the standard economic units (*enterprise, establishment, and homogeneous production unit*). A consolidated file with data from the different administrative sources is obtained. The variables in the supplier consolidated file are semi-automatically aligned to those of the SID.

Information processing

The information processing module automatically normalizes, codifies, and applies rules of validation and consistency of the information consolidated from the suppliers to update the consolidated file. The following basic elements are distinguished in this processing:

- Validation rules incorporated to the SID.
- Unique identifier for each statistical unit.
- Address normalization for every statistical unit.
- Detection and elimination of duplicates.
- Creation of a catalogue to normalize words in names; for example, the word "Limitada" (Limited) could be abbreviated as Lta, Ltda, Limit, etc., but the process normalizes it as "Ltda".

Some statistical units are sent to a base for revision when they do not satisfy the parameters. Additionally, the information received from administrative sources is checked in this module.

The SID determines in automatic manner whether the statistical unit exists in the database, and identifies the new units and the continuing units.

The reference date and origin of the value of every variable for every statistical unit is registered as the information is updated, so every value is traceable.

Updating operations

Information updating operations are conducted by means of call centres, Internet and electronic forms for economic units. The call centre technology platform has been modernized to improve the quality. The web form allows the enterprises to supply their information by directly electronically.

Quality analysis

There is a set of tools that enables analysis of any kind of information from administrative reports or contained in the SID.

Information exploitation

The real time consultation module is created that enables generation of frames for the SID users.

D2.4 Results of the information preparation and processing processes

The information preparation module yields two main products: a consolidated base and a statistical report structured in 4 parts:

- A variable list with descriptions, provided by the supplier (Dictionary).
- An attachment to the Dictionary in which the variable classifications are presented.
- A basic diagnosis indicating duplicate, empty and inconsistent cells (see. Figure D1).
- Frequencies for every categorical variable, including department, municipality, and legal organization, among others.

Figure D1 Database diagnosis for updating

			
FICHA TÉCNICA			
Este archivo fue generado de forma automática por el Sistema de Información del Directorio - SID			02/05/2014 10:56:31
DATOS DE CONTROL			
Pre-Proceso: 351			
CARACTERÍSTICAS DE LA INFORMACIÓN			
ENTIDAD O PROVEEDOR:	PLANILLA INTEGRADA DE LIQUIDACIÓN DE APORTES		
FECHA DE REFERENCIA:	31/12/2013		
ARCHIVO ORIGEN DE DATOS:	DANE2013_2_(Solicitud=351).txt		
UBICACIÓN ARCHIVO DE ORIGEN:	/mnt/mapasige/ARCHIVOS_PROVEEDORES/MIN_PROTECCION/PILA/2013-12-31/		
CANTIDAD DE VARIABLES:	38		
CANTIDAD DE REGISTROS:	16.465.895		
DICCIONARIO Y HOLOGACIÓN			
ORDEN	NOMBRE VARIABLES DEL ARCHIVO	NOMBRE VARIABLES DEL DIRECTORIO	DESCRIPCIÓN
1	TIPO_IDENTIFICACION	TIPO_DOCUMENTO	Tipo de documento de identificación
2	NUMERO_IDENTIFICACION	NIT	Número de Identificación Tributaria
3	DIGITO_VERIFICACION	DIGITO_VERIFICACION	Dígito de verificación del NIT de la unidad estadística
4	RAZON_SOCIAL	RAZON_SOCIAL	Nombre del propietario o razón social de la unidad estadística
5	CODIGO_SUCURSAL		Código de la sucursal de la empresa

Codification rules

The database information received in accordance with the reference tables is codified in this process. Codification applies to *municipality, department, economic activity, type of document and legal organization*. For example, there are cases in which the information does not come codified but named with the department or municipality where the economic unit locates. The process transforms these data into the official codes according to the Colombian Political-Administrative Division (DIVIPOLA).

Normalization rules

The system allows normalization of economic unit address (location), name, telephone number, by applying defined and updated rules, according to the word normalization catalogues. Symbols like # or – in the addresses, are eliminated within the normalization process.

Validation rules

The completeness and consistency of information is verified as follows.

- The length of the telephonic numbers must be 7 or 10 digits, without the inclusion of the city indicative. The datum type must be numeric.
- The address must have more than 4 characters.
- The commercial (trade) name must have more than 4 characters.
- If the statistical unit is classified as active, and comes from a DANE survey, it must have information about incomes and employed persons.
- Every statistical unit must have an identification unique number, which must be within a specific

length range depending on the type of the associated document.

- The e-mails must have the symbol @ and belong to a valid domain.

D2.5 Proposed quality indicators

In this moment, Colombia is conducting the process of defining a set of indicators whose purpose is to evaluate the quality of SBR. The indicators proposed are as follows.

Indicator 1

Name: Updating level.

Objective: to know the updating rate for every economic sector in the frame.

Type of indicator: process quality.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- A_j : Total updated records for sector j.
- B_j : Total records expected for updating in sector j.

The formula used for the calculation is: $I_{1,j} = \frac{A_j}{B_j} * 100$

Calculation frequency: annual.

Tolerance ranges:

- Critical ≤ 70 ;
- $70 >$ Fair ≤ 90 ;
- Satisfactory > 90 .

Indicator 2

Name: birth and death tracking

Objective: to evaluate the sector dynamics based on economic unit demographics.

Type of indicator: process quality.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- Ai: births in year i.
- Bi: deaths in year i.

The formulae used for the calculation are: $I_{2A} = \frac{A_i}{A_{i-1}}$;

$$I_{2B} = \frac{B_i}{B_{i-1}}$$

Calculation frequency: annual

Indicator 3

Name: Coverage.

Objective: to establish the SBR coverage compared to the information from the Tax and Custom National Directory (DIAN) database.

Type of indicator: process quality.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- ti: Total records in the database in year i.
- Ti: Total unique records identified in the national tax register database in year i.

The formula used for the calculation is: $I_3 = \frac{t_i}{T_i} * 100$

Calculation frequency: annual.

Tolerance ranges:

- Critical ≤ 70 ;
- $70 >$ Fair ≤ 90 ;
- Satisfactory > 90 .

Indicator 4

Name: Employment precision.

Objective: to determine whether the information by sector kept in the SBR is approximated to the official employment statistics generated by any National Statistics Institute.

Type of indicator: quality of the process.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- ei total employees according to information in SBR in year i.
- PEAI economically active population in the year i, according to official data.
- Li: lower limit established for estimating the unemployment by NSI
- Ls: upper limit established for estimating the unemployment by NSI

The formula used for the calculation is:

$$I_4 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } L_i \leq 1 - \frac{e_i}{PEAI_i} \leq L_s \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Calculation frequency: annual.

Tolerance ranges:

- 1 Satisfactory;
- 0 critical.

Indicator 5

Name: Income precision

Objective: To determine whether the information by sector kept in SBR is approximated to the official income statistics generated by any Institute of Statistics.

Type of indicator: Quality of the process.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- ci: Total income according to information in the SBR in year i.
- Ci: Total income according to official data of national accounts in year i.

The formula used for the calculation is:

$$I_5 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 0.9 \leq \frac{c_i}{C_i} \leq 1.1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Calculation frequency: annual.

Tolerance ranges:

- 1 Satisfactory;
- 0 critical.

Indicator 6

Name: Opportunity

Objective: to establish the level in which registers are available for being used by SBR users.

Type of indicator: output quality.

Variables used in the calculations are:

- uj: Number of users qualifying the access as timely to SBR (schedule);
- U: Total number of interviewees.

The formula used for the calculation is: $I_6 = \frac{u_j}{U} * 100$

Calculation frequency: Annually

Tolerance ranges:

- Critical ≤ 70 ;
- $70 >$ Fair ≤ 90 ;
- Satisfactory > 90 .

References

Bérard, Hélène, Pursey, Stuart & Rancourt, Eric. *Rethinking Statistics Canada's Business Register*. Statistics Canada. 11th, Floor, R.H. Coats Building, Tunney's Pasture, Ottawa, Ontario Canada K1A 0T.

DANE, Metodología Directorio Estadístico de Empresas – DEST–, Bogotá, D. C, Colombia. Versión 5. 2013.

Eurostat. *The French Business Register: From a quality approach to a statistical register*. Projects on the Improvement of Business Register. Session 5.

Eurostat. *Business Register Recommendations Manual: The use of Administrative Sources*. Chapter 20. December 2002.

Ritzen, Jean. *Statistical Business Register: Content, place and role in Economic Statistics*. Statistics Netherlands.

Annex D3: Statistics Netherlands' administrative data source evaluation checklist

Quality framework for administrative data sources

NSI's are increasingly making use of secondary data sources such as administrative registers for the production of statistics. However, the information in these sources is often collected and maintained by other organizations, usually for non-statistical purposes. Since the production of high quality statistics depends on the quality of the input data, it is useful to evaluate the quality of secondary data sources, in a systematic, objective, and standardized way. For this purpose Statistics Netherlands has developed a quality framework focusing on the quality of administrative and other secondary data sources⁵².

The framework distinguishes between the quality of the *data source*, the *metadata* and the *data*. For each of these the framework provides a number of dimensions and indicators that can be used to evaluate whether data from specific administrative or other secondary

data are suitable to be used in the compilation of statistics. The details of the framework are provided in Figures D2, D3 and D4.

The framework is applied by successively evaluating the quality indicators of the data source, metadata, and data. If a quality indicator of the data source reveals a problem, this should be addressed first, before starting to evaluate the indicators for the metadata. Likewise, any problems with the quality indicators of metadata should be addressed before evaluating the quality indicators of the data. If the evaluation of the quality indicators for all three areas is successful, the data source may be used for the production of statistics.

The framework includes detailed checklists for data source and metadata to be completed by the prospective internal user of an administrative or other secondary data source and/or an expert from the data source. For the data source checklist it is advised to contact the official NSI contact person for the particular source (if there is one).

⁵²Checklist for the Quality evaluation of Administrative Data Sources, Piet Daas, Saskia Ossen, Rachel Vis-Visschers and Judit Arends-Tóth. Discussion paper 09042, Statistics Netherlands, 2009 (<http://www.cbs.nl/nr/rdonlyres/0dbc2574-cdae-4a6d-a68a-88458cf05fb2/0/200942x10pub.pdf>)

Figure D2 Quality aspects related to the data source

Source		
Dimension	Quality indicators	Methods
Supplier	1.1 Contact	Name of the data source. Data source contact information. NSI contact person.
	1.2 Purpose	Reason for use of the data source by NSI.
Relevance	2.1 Usefulness	Importance of data source to NSI.
	2.2 Envisaged use	Potential statistical use of data source.
	2.3 Information demand	Does the data source satisfy information demand?
	2.4 Response burden	Effect of data source use on response burden.
Privacy and security	3.1 Legal provision	Basis for existence of data source.
	3.2 Confidentiality	Does the Personal Data Protection Act apply? Has use of data source been reported by NSI?
	3.3 Security	Manner in which the data source is sent to NSI Are security measures (hard/software) required?
Delivery	4.1 Costs	Costs of using the data source.
	4.2 Arrangements	Are the terms of delivery documented? Frequency of delivery.
	4.3 Punctuality	How punctually can the data source be delivered? Rate at which exceptions are reported. Rate at which data is stored by data custodian.
	4.4 Format	Formats in which the data can be delivered.
	4.5 Selection	What data can be delivered? Does this comply with the requirements of NSI?
Procedures	5.1 Data collection	Familiarity with the way the data are collected.
	5.2 Planned changes	Familiarity with planned changes to the data source. Ways changes are communicated to NSI.
	5.3 Feedback	Can contact data custodian in case of trouble? In which cases and why?
	5.4 Fall-back scenario	Dependency risk incurred by NSI. Emergency measures when data are not delivered according to arrangements made.

Figure D3 Quality aspects related to metadata related aspects of the data source

Metadata		
Dimension	Quality indicators	Methods
Clarity	1.1 Population unit definition	Clarity score of the definition.
	1.2 Classification variable	Clarity score of the definition.
	1.3 Count variable	Clarity score of the definition.
	1.4 Time dimensions	Clarity score of the definition.
	1.5 Definition changes	Familiarity with changes that occur.
Comparability	2.1 Population unit definition comparison	Comparability with NSI definition.
	2.2 Classification variable definition comparison	Comparability with NSI definition.
	2.3 Count variable definition comparison	Comparability with NSI definition.
	2.4 Time differences	Comparability with NSI reporting periods.
Unique keys	3.1 Identification keys	Presence of unique keys. Comparability with unique keys used by NSI.
	3.2 Unique combinations of variables	Presence of useful combinations of variables.
Data treatment (by data custodian)	4.1 Checks	Population unit checks performed.
		Variable checks performed.
		Combinations of variables checked.
		Extreme value checks.
	4.2 Modifications	Familiarity with data modifications. Are modified values marked and how? Familiarity with default values used.
4.3 Punctuality	How punctually can the data be delivered? Rate at which exceptions are reported. Rate at which data are stored by data custodian.	
4.4 Format	Formats in which the data can be delivered.	
4.5 Selection	What data can be delivered? Does this comply with the requirements of NSI?	

Figure D4 Quality aspects related to the accuracy of the data

Data		
Dimension	Quality indicators	Methods
Technical checks	1.1 Readability	Can all the data in the source be accessed?
	1.2 Metadata compliance	Does the data comply with the metadata definition? If not, report the anomalies.
Over coverage	2.1 Non-population units	Percentage of units not belonging to population.
Under coverage	3.1 Missing units	Percentage of units missing from the target population.
	3.2 Selectivity	R-index ¹⁾ for unit composition.
	3.3 Effect on average	Maximum bias of average for core variable. Maximum RMSE ²⁾ of average for core variable.
Linkability	4.1 Linkable units	Percentage of units linked unambiguously.
	4.2 Mismatches	Percentage of units incorrectly linked.
	4.3 Selectivity	R-index for composition of units linked.
	4.4 Effect on average	Maximum bias of average for core variable. Maximum RMSE ²⁾ of average for core variable.
Unit non response	5.1 Units without data	Percentage of units with all data missing.
	5.2 Selectivity	R-index for unit composition.
	5.3 Effect on average	Maximum bias of average for core variable. Maximum RMSE of average for core variable.
Item non response	6.1 Missing values	Percentage of cells with missing values.
	6.2 Selectivity	R-index for variable composition.
	6.3 Effect on average	Maximum bias of average for variable. Maximum RMSE of average for variable.
Measurement	7.1 External check	Has an audit or parallel test been performed? Has the input procedure been tested?
	7.2 Incompatible records	Fraction of fields with violated edit rules.
	7.3 Measurement error	Size of the bias (relative measurement error).
Processing	8.1 Adjustments	Fraction of fields adjusted (edited).
	8.2 Imputation	Fraction of fields imputed.
	8.3 Outliers	Fraction of fields corrected for outliers.
Precision	9.1 Standard error	Mean square error for core variable.
Sensitivity	10.1 Missing values	Total percentage of empty cells.
	10.2 Selectivity	R-index for composition of totals.
	10.3 Effect on totals	Maximum bias of totals. Maximum RMSE of totals.

1) R-index: Representative Index, an indicator that estimates the selectivity of the data missing by using information available in other sources (Schouten and Cobben 2007, Cobben and Schouten 2008).

2) RMSE: root mean square error; statistical measure for the quality of an estimator. The RMSE is equal to the square root of the sum of the bias and variance of the estimator.

Annex E

Additional concepts and procedures

Annex E1: Register based census

E1.1 General description

An economic census provides information about the structure and function of a production system from the national (macro-area) to the local (micro-area) level. In general it guarantees periodic and comprehensive statistics about businesses, establishments, activities carried out and employment every five or ten years. Economic census statistics are essential for economic policy and business planning. They provide an essential framework for all economic indicators (production indexes, input/output measures, labour, etc.) and they are fundamental inputs for benchmarking GDP estimates.

Basic statistical data on businesses are important and necessary for the public and private sector in policy formulation and development planning of the economy and industry at both national and local level. National and local governments use these data to monitor economic activity and the changes in national and regional economies. Census data are very useful for the individual businesses in calculating market share, locating business markets, identifying business site locations, and evaluating new business opportunities.

In many countries the censuses are regulated by law and provide for mandatory responses. In recent decades, the development, in a wide range of the countries, of the national SBR guarantees a significant improvement in methods and tools for census data collection.

At one end of the spectrum there is the traditional census, collecting data by use of enumerators and questionnaires, using no register information at all. At the other end there is the totally register-based census. Some countries use mixed mode data collection with a combination of data from registers and questionnaires (either total enumeration or a sample survey). Even countries conducting mainly traditional censuses tend to use register information to some extent, for instance as an address list.

The interaction between the SBR and the census can be defined as *register-assisted census data collection* that combines some elements of a direct door-to-door survey and some of a classic survey by list. This technique of data collection is characterized by the following three elements:

- Enumerators are supplied with lists of the enumeration units located in their *census districts*, drawn from the SBR. Their task consists in verifying the actual status of the listed units, deleting the records of the doubled and the ceased ones, and adding new records for the possible non-listed units (for example born in the lag between reference period of the list and the date of the survey, or unregistered for any other reason).
- Some days before the survey, all the listed units receive by mail a personalized questionnaire partly completed with information drawn from the SBR. In this way, the respondents just have to verify the correctness of the pre-printed fields (rectifying them, if necessary) and complete the questionnaire with the missing information.
- The questionnaires are collected by enumerators. The enumerators are provided with blank (non-personalised) questionnaires to be used only for non-listed units or in substitution of personalised questionnaires that are lost or damaged.

Using this method, based on the synergy between the census and the SBR, the main benefits are:

- *Reduction in burden for respondents*, by limiting the number of questions and radically simplifying the questionnaire. Besides, an overall reduction of the amount of collected data allows simplification and shortening of data processing and has a positive impact on the quality of the data itself.
- *A new approach to quality and coverage control*, since it is possible to carry out a micro-level coverage analysis, by comparing the raw data collection file with an image of the SBR as of the same date as the Census. This micro approach, instead of the classical macro approach based on a post-enumeration sample survey, makes possible the precise identification of every single unit under/over covered in both data sources. The results are that the theoretical under coverage – main problem of a direct door-to-door survey – and over coverage – main problem of an SBR – are significantly reduced.
- *Creation of a basis for improvement of the SBR* in terms of new characteristics obtained, for example, secondary activities.

An evolution of the previous *register-assisted approach* is the development of a *register-based Economic Census*. With this approach the census data are reproduced entirely by integrating data from SBR and administrative sources, without any direct data collection from businesses. The potential for turning a traditional business census to a register-based one depends mainly upon the degree of enhancement achieved in the statistical use of administrative sources and on quality improvements by each administrative body in the business area.

The advantages of the register-based over a register-assisted approach are:

- A significant decrease in costs for the statistical authorities.
- The non-existence of respondents means the absence of respondent burden.
- Statistics can be made available every year, providing opportunity to detect shorter term changes in the economic structures of the national and local economies.

On the other hand, besides the classical problems that arise in the use of administrative sources (the need to deal with administrative definitions and their operational rules, the timeliness in the production of data, the treatment and the exploitation of new administrative data, the enlargement of the dataset of information, the huge amounts of data linked), the key disadvantage of this approach is the absence of direct statistical information to improve SBR quality, especially in terms of under/over coverage.

There are some significant criteria for implementation of a register-based census:

- *High quality SBR in terms of coverage.* The population, in terms of enterprises and local units, is decided and cannot be changed or corrected.
- *Existence of a unified identification coding system across different administrative sources.* In the absence of such unified systems it is extremely difficult, if not impossible, to link different registers. Integration is the key for a register based census.
- *Methodology for translating administrative characteristics into the statistical ones.* The development is required of appropriate statistical methodologies (probabilistic and/or deterministic) to translate or to estimate statistical characteristics starting from one (or more linked) administrative data sources.

The realization of a register-based census depends on having the appropriate national statistical objectives and sufficient national administrative sources to support the objectives. There is no single recipe. The actual approach depends upon the country situation including the availability and completeness of administrative sources.

E1.2 The Italian 'Virtual' Economic Census (VEC)

For the first time the decennial Business Census named *CIS 2011*, aiming at the enumeration of businesses, related persons employed, and other types of employment, classified by activity code, size, juridical status and other structural information about enterprises, was carried out without any direct data collection from business. Instead it was based exclusively on statistical data obtained from the integration of administrative sources.

The Virtual Economic Census (VEC) system is built around a set of basic registers containing comprehensive data on business units and individuals. The core of this system is the national SBR (*ASIA BR*), which is produced yearly by integration of administrative and statistical sources. The *ASIA BR* is considered the reference population and the official source for the Italian statistical information on the structure and the demography of the business population.

In order to produce census data for enterprises that are active at the end of December 2011 (t), the *ASIA BR* utilises information available in the period from $t+6$ months to $t+12$ months from a set of administrative sources. On this basis the census data can be disseminated at $t+18$ months, which represents a reduction of the time lag compared to the dissemination of previous traditional censuses results.

The identification and acquisition of a new set of administrative sources changed the way the process is carried out, and added new contents to the database of business units and individuals in which information is available not only at *unit (enterprise, local unit) level* but also at an *individual level*. Each person involved in the business production process is identified. In fact each unit inside an administrative source is linked to the *ASIA BR* statistical unit by means of identification codes. Persons can be linked to the business in which they assume any ownership share, to the employer for whom they are working, etc.

The VEC makes use of many administrative sources. They can be grouped into different types:

- *Fiscal data - VAT, income, participation in partnerships, remuneration taken from 770-Form Tax Register, statistics-based Tax Assessment fiscal survey - i.e. 'Studi di settore'.*
- *Social security data - monthly employer declarations on each employee, on outworkers - i.e. persons that are linked to a production unit and that are not employer/own account workers or employees - and on self-employed workers and family workers in agriculture, handicraft and trade).*
- *Chamber of Commerce data - list of partners or shareholders of each legal unit.*

- *Employment insurance data - from the government agency responsible for insurance against work-related injuries (workplace, insurance payments).*

The integration of these sources has been made possible by the existence of a tax identification code that is available – with a very high level of coverage - both for legal units and individuals, in all sources and in ASIA BR. Thus, in Italy, the tax code represents an indirect unified identification code system.

Using information from these sources, a new employment data structure for the BR was set up - the LEED structure (Linked Employer-Employment Database). While in the old BR the number of persons employed represented one of the characteristics associated to a statistical unit (attribute), in the new data structure each single person is linked to each statistical unit for which he/she has any form of employment (according to the conceptual framework of the employment classification). In this new system, businesses and workers employed are identified by links derived by the integration and matching processes for the various administrative sources. The data structure is based on links, i.e. direct relationships between employment identification codes and enterprises, together with the basic enterprise attributes, employment composition at enterprise level (e.g., gender and age composition, workplace) and employment attributes that differ according to the type of employment.

This new integrated approach is able to provide an in-depth analysis of the employment of the enterprises and of local units. This analysis was, and still is, the main

objective of the Italian VEC. The main outputs of the Italian VEC are:

- *Data on employment, with a particular focus on the demographic characteristics of the workers, such as gender, age, birth location (country).*
- *More detailed information and job characteristics (professional status, type of contract, full/part time, etc.).*
- *Identification of the different types of workers used in a business (employees, self-employment, family worker, outworkers, temporary workers) to provide a global picture of the labour input, both for each enterprise, and at sectorial and territorial levels.*
- *To face and solve measurement issues (hours worked, number of jobs, full time equivalent jobs, number of persons employed).*

From conceptual point of view the change in moving to the VEC can be summarized in the two schemas in Figures E1 and E2.

Furthermore the VEC provided an opportunity to face and solve problems with employment definitions as regards better coherence with the international standards, and with translation of such definitions into operational rules. The global revision of the employment classification system and of employment measurement methods have been fundamental results of the VEC, providing improved coherence for the whole national statistical system.

Figure E1 Old conceptual approach: SBR-Italy (ASIA)

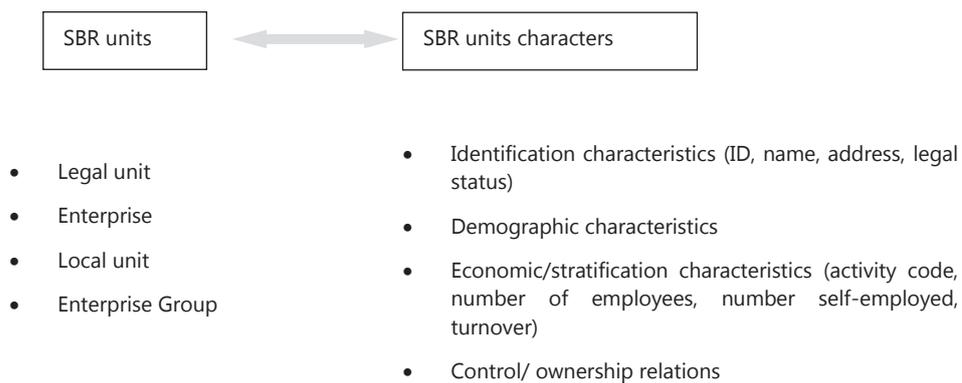
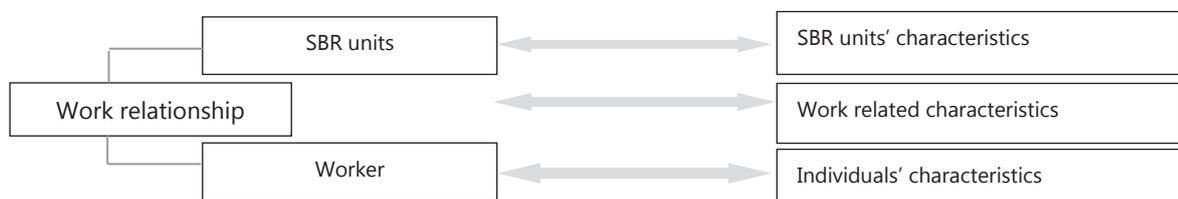


Figure E2 New conceptual approach: Integrated system for Virtual Census



Annex E2: Calculating a check digit for an identification number

Introduction

A *check digit* is a decimal (or alphanumeric) digit added to an identification number. It is a form of redundancy check that assists in detection of errors in identification numbers (for example, bank account numbers) that have been manually entered. It is analogous to a binary parity bit used to check for errors in computer-generated data. It is computed by an algorithm from the other digits (or letters) in the identification number⁵³.

The algorithms used to generate check digits are designed to detect typical human transcription errors. In order of complexity, these include:

- Single digit errors, such as 1 becoming 2.
- Transposition errors, such as 12 becoming 21.
- Twin errors, such as 11 becoming 22.
- Jump transpositions errors, such as 132 becoming 231.
- Jump twin errors, such as 131 becoming 232.
- Phonetic errors, such as 60 becoming 16.

In choosing an algorithm, high probability of detecting errors is traded off against implementation difficulty. Simple check digit algorithms are easily understood and implemented by humans but do not detect as many errors as complex ones, which, however, require sophisticated programs to implement.

Use of check digits in the Swiss Business Register

In the Swiss SBR, an algorithm based on Modulo 11⁵⁴ is used to calculate the check digits for all identification numbers. The characteristics of the algorithm are different from those based on other modulus, such as the more common Modulo 10.

Local unit identification number (BURNR)

Local unit identification number (BURNR) in the Swiss SBR is an 8 digit number. The last digit is the check digit number.

- Example of BURNR: 62088168 – the final 8 is the check digit.

The procedure for calculating the check digit is as follows:

Each of the first 7 digits of the identification number is individually multiplied by a multiplier selected from a fixed sequence (5, 4, 3, 2, 7, 6, 5) according to the position of the digit within the number.

- The digit in position 1 is multiplied by 5
- The digit in position 2 is multiplied by 4
- The digit in position 3 is multiplied by 3
- The digit in position 4 is multiplied by 2
- The digit in position 5 is multiplied by 7
- The digit in position 6 is multiplied by 6
- The digit in position 7 is multiplied by 5

All resulting products are added and the result is divided by 11.

- If the residual (Modulo 11) is zero the check digit is zero.
- If the residual is 1, the original 7 digit number is not used as an identification number – it is considered invalid.
- Otherwise the check digit is the number obtained by subtracting the residual from 11.

⁵³ Extracted from Wikipedia:
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Check_digit

⁵⁴ The Barcode Solution
<http://www.activebarcode.com/codes/checkdigit/modulo11.html>

Examples of calculation of check digits

Calculation of local unit identification number (BURNR)

BURNR	62088168
Effective digits	6208816
Sequence of multipliers	5432765
Products	$(6*5=30) + (2*4=8) + (3*0=0) + (8*2=16) + (8*7=56) + (1*6=6) + (6*5=30) = 146$
Result	$146 / 11 = 13$ residual 3
Check digit	$11 - 3 = 8$

Enterprise Identification Number

A similar procedure is used for the Enterprise Identification Number (ENTID) which has 9 digits including the check digit. The sequence of multipliers (5, 4, 3, 2, 7, 6, 5, 4). The first 7 numbers are the same as for the BURNR.

ENTID	109322551
Effective digits	10932255
Sequence of multipliers	54327654
Products	$(1*5=5) + (0*4=0) + (9*3=27) + (3*2=6) + (2*7=14) + (2*6=12) + (5*5=25) + (5*4=20) = 109$
Result	$109 / 11 = 9$ residual 10
Check digit	$11 - 10 = 1$

Unique Enterprise Identification Number (UID)⁵⁵

Exactly the same procedure is used for the Unique Enterprise Identification Number (UID).

UID	CHE109322551
Effective digits	10932255
Sequence of multipliers	54327654
Products	$(1*5=5) + (0*4=0) + (9*3=27) + (3*2=6) + (2*7=14) + (2*6=12) + (5*5=25) + (5*4=20) = 109$
Result	$109 / 11 = 9$ residual 10
Check digit	$11 - 10 = 1$

⁵⁵ UID Register : <https://www.uid.admin.ch/Search.aspx?lang=en>

Glossary⁵⁶

Active unit

A unit is active when it has any economic activity or when it has no economic activity but is legally or administratively registered and part of another unit that has economic activity at any time during a respective reference period.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Activity, economic activity

Activity

An activity is a process, i.e. the combination of actions that result in a certain set of products. Activities are defined as the use of inputs (e.g., capital, labour, energy and materials) to produce outputs. The outputs that result from undertaking activities can be transferred or sold to other units (in market or non-market transactions), placed in inventory or used by the producing units for own final use.

In practice the majority of units carry on activities of a mixed character. One can distinguish between three types of economic activity:

Principal activity: The principal activity is the activity which contributes most to the total value added of the unit under consideration.

Secondary activity: A secondary activity is any other activity of the unit that produces goods or services.

Ancillary activity: Any ancillary activities are those that exist solely to support the main productive activities of a unit by providing non-durable goods or services for the use of that entity.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Active unit, economic activity, classification of activities, ancillary activity, secondary activity, principal activity.

Administrative business register

An administrative business register is a regularly updated structured list of specific business units in a territorial area, which is maintained by administrative authorities for administrative, legal or taxation purposes (e.g. recording and maintaining certain details of businesses or taxation).

Related terms: Administrative register, statistical business register

Administrative data

Data originally collected for non-statistical purpose. Control of the methods by which the administrative data are collected and processed rests with the administrative agency. In most cases the administrative authority will be a government unit.

Source: United Nations Economic Commission for Europe, "Using Administrative and Secondary Sources for Official Statistics: A Handbook of Principles and Practices", United Nations, New York and Geneva, 2011.

Link: http://www.unece.org/fileadmin/DAM/stats/publications/Using_Administrative_Sources_Final_for_web.pdf

⁵⁶ Definitions may slightly differ from the wordings in the original sources as the meanings of the terms are expressed in the way that best fits the purpose of a statistical business register.

Related terms: Administrative register, administrative source

Administrative register

A register is a written and complete record containing regular entries of items and details on particular set of objects. Typically, a register is a structured list of units, containing a number of attributes for each of those units, and having some sort of regular updating mechanism. Registers maintained by administrative authorities for administrative purposes can be considered to be administrative registers. 'Administrative register' is an umbrella term and covers for example records collected for business registers or personal registers for administrative purposes.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Administrative business register

Administrative source

Administrative source are files of data collected by government bodies for the purposes of administering taxes and benefits or monitoring populations. More generally, administrative sources contain information that is not primarily collected for statistical purposes.

Source: United Nations Economic Commission for Europe, "Using Administrative and Secondary Sources for Official Statistics: A Handbook of Principles and Practices", United Nations, New York and Geneva, 2011.

Link: http://www.unecce.org/fileadmin/DAM/stats/publications/Using_Administrative_Sources_Final_for_web.pdf

Related terms: Administrative register, administrative data

Administrative unit

An administrative unit is designed for the purposes of conforming with an administrative regulation, for example for registration purposes or for accounting purposes of VAT and other taxes.

Related terms: Statistical unit

All-resident enterprise group

An all-resident enterprise group is an enterprise group composed only of enterprises that are all resident in the same country.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise group, domestically controlled enterprise group

Ancillary activity

Ancillary activities are undertaken to support principal and secondary productive activities of a unit by providing goods or services entirely or primarily for the use of that entity, such as bookkeeping, transportation, storage, purchasing, sales promotion, cleaning, repair and maintenance, security etc. The output is always intended for intermediate consumption within the same unit and is therefore usually not recorded separately. Although most ancillary activities produce services, some goods-producing activities may, by exception, be regarded as ancillary. The goods thus produced, however, may not become a physical part of the output of the main productive activities. Ancillary activities are usually fairly small-scale compared with the principal activity they support.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Activity, economic activity, principal activity, secondary activity

Attribute

See: Characteristic

Birth (of enterprise)

A birth is characterized by the creation of a combination of production factors with the restriction that no other enterprises are involved in the event. Births do not include creation of entries into the population due to mergers, break-ups, split-off or restructuring of a set of enterprises. It does not include entries into a sub-population resulting only from a change of activity. A birth means the enterprise starts from scratch and actually starts activity. An enterprise creation can be considered as an enterprise birth if new production factors, in particular new jobs, are created. If a dormant unit is reactivated within two years, this event is not considered a birth.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Break-up (of enterprise), creation (of business), date of creation (of enterprise), new enterprise, split-off (of enterprise)

Birth (of enterprise group)

The birth of an enterprise group is the establishing of a link of control, direct or indirect, between two or more independent legal units, where no link of control existed before and no other enterprise group is involved.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Break-up (of enterprise group), creation (of business), date of creation (of enterprise groups)

Branch

A branch is an unincorporated enterprise that wholly belongs to a non-resident unit, known as the parent. It is resident and treated as a quasi-corporation. For the purpose of the statistical business register a branch shall be treated as an enterprise.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Foreign affiliate, subsidiary

Break-up (of enterprise)

A break-up results in one enterprise before and more than one enterprise after the event. In a break up, the enterprise is divided in such a way that neither (none) of the new enterprises keeps the identity of the original enterprise. There is no continuity or survival, but the closure of the previous enterprise is not considered to be a real death. Similarly the new enterprises are not considered to be real births. A break up is similar to split-off and can be seen as the opposite of a merger.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Birth (of enterprise), creation (of business), new enterprise, split-off (of enterprise)

Break-up (of enterprise group)

A break-up results in one enterprise group before and more than one enterprise group after the event. In a break-up, the enterprise group is divided in such a way that neither (none) of the new enterprise groups keep the identity of the original enterprise group.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Birth (of enterprise group), creation (of business)

Business

Term is used as a type of enterprise, namely a "commercial enterprise" or legal unit with commercial economic activity

Related terms: Enterprise

Business closures

See: Cessation of business

Business demography

Business demography covers events, like births and other creations of units, deaths and other cessations of units, and their ratio to the business population. It covers follow-up of units in time dimension, thus gaining information on their survival or discontinuity. It also covers development in time dimension according to certain characteristics like size, thus gaining information on the growth of units, or a cohort of units, by type of activity. Demographic information can in principle be produced for any statistical unit; however, a clear political interest in Europe is on enterprise demography. In other regions business demography data are often calculated based on establishments. The demography of enterprises can be assessed by studying enterprise births and enterprise deaths and by examining the change in the number of enterprises by type of activity, i.e. by examining the flows and stocks to get a complete picture of the enterprise dynamism.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Continuity, survival

Business start-ups

See: Creation of business

Business statistics

See: Economic statistics

Captive financial institution

Activities of holding companies, i.e. units that hold the assets (owning controlling-levels of equity) of a group of subsidiary corporations and whose Institutional units and sectors principal activity is owning the group, are treated as captive financial institutions. The holding companies in this class do not provide any other service to the enterprises in which the equity is held, i.e. they do not administer or manage other units. Other units that are also treated as captive financial institutions are units with the characteristics of special purpose entities (SPEs) including investment and

pension funds and units used for holding and managing wealth for individuals or families, holding assets for securitization, issuing debt securities on behalf of related companies (such a company may be called a conduit), securitization vehicles and carry out other financial functions. The degree of independence from its parent may be demonstrated by exercising some substantive control over its assets and liabilities to the extent of carrying the risks and reaping the rewards associated with the assets and liabilities.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Control, ownership, SPE

Characteristic

A characteristic is one of a set of information that is stored in a business register to describe a statistical unit. Characteristics are provided for identification of a unit like name, address, and identification numbers, for economic description of a unit, like activity code, turnover or employment of a unit or for the structure of a unit, like the relationship to other statistical units.

Related terms: Variable

Cessation (of business)

The cessation of activities of a unit can occur either due to a (real) death of the unit, or due to other cessation by a merger, take-over, break-up or discontinuity point according to the continuity rules.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Business closures, death (of enterprise), death (of enterprise group)

Classification of activities

The main purpose of a classification of activities is to classify economic entities and statistical units, such as establishments or enterprises, according to the economic activity in which they mainly engage. The main aim is to provide a set of activity categories that can be utilised when dissecting statistics according to such activities. Different classifications are needed to cater for the different functions which statistics are required to perform, so at international and national levels classifications have been developed for a wide range of purposes, whereby each has its own specific area of application depending on the subject of classification. Economic classifications can be broadly divided into two categories:

Classifications of economic activities, which aim to cover all economic activities – from agriculture to services – are used to classify economic entities (enterprises, establishments, local units or other statistical units). Such classifications therefore form the basis for compiling statistics on output, the production factors entering into the production process (input: labour, raw materials and supplies, energy etc.), capital formation or financial transactions. The international classification for activity is the International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC), maintained by the United Nations, used at world level.

Classifications of products. The outputs of the economic entities are termed products and are generally divided into goods and services and grouped according to a product classification. The international classification for products is the Central Product Classification (CPC), maintained by the United Nations and used worldwide.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008; and "CPC ver. 2. Explanatory notes" 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

<http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/cpc-2.asp>

Related terms: Activity

Common frame

See: Frozen frame

Company

See: Corporation

Concentration of enterprises

Concentration of enterprises refers to demographic events involving more than one enterprise before and one enterprise after events like merging or taking-over. The term may also be used to denote that the population of enterprises gets fewer owners or is spread over a reduced number of enterprise groups.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Mergers, take-over

Continuation

See: Survival

Continuity (of enterprise)

In theory, the continuity rules would be derived from the definition of the enterprise (or other units) and its statistical uses. In principle, the continuity of an enterprise depends on the continuity of its production factors: employment, machines and equipment, land, buildings, management, and intangible assets. The continuity of these factors can be measured and weighted to decide upon the continuity of the enterprise. In practice, the continuity rules consider three main criteria: continuity of control, economic activity and location.

Source: Eurostat, "Business registers. Recommendations manual", Methodologies and Working Papers, Publications Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Business demography, Survival

Control

A single institutional unit owning more than a half of the shares, or equity, of a corporation is able to control its policy and operations by outvoting all other shareholders, if necessary. Similarly, a small, organized group of shareholders whose combined ownership of shares exceeds 50 per cent of the total is able to control the corporation by acting in concert.

Corporation B is said to be a subsidiary of corporation A when: Either corporation A controls more than half of the shareholders' voting power in corporation B; or corporation A is a shareholder in corporation B with the right to appoint or remove a majority of the directors of corporation B. Corporation A may be described as the parent corporation in this situation. As the relationship of a parent corporation to a subsidiary is defined in terms of control rather than ownership, the relationship must be transitive: that is, if C is a subsidiary of B and B is a subsidiary of A, then C must also be a subsidiary of A. If A has a majority shareholding in B while B has a majority shareholding in C, A cannot also have a majority shareholding in C. Nevertheless, A must be able to control C if it controls B.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Ownership, subsidiary

Corporation

In the legal sense, corporations may be described by different names: corporations, incorporated enterprises, public limited companies, public corporations, private companies, joint-stock companies, limited liability companies, limited liability partnerships, and so on. In the SNA, the term corporation covers legally constituted corporations and also cooperatives, limited liability partnerships, notional resident units and quasi-corporations. The term corporation is used more broadly than in just the legal sense. In general, all entities that are: capable of generating a profit or other financial gain for their owners, recognized at law as separate legal entities from their owners who enjoy limited liability, set up for purposes of engaging in market production.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise, enterprise group, establishment, legal unit

Creation (of business)

The emergence of a new business unit. This can be either due to a (real) birth of the unit, or due to other creation by a merger, break-up, split-off or discontinuity point according to the continuity rules.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Birth (of enterprise), birth (of enterprise group), break-up (of business), business start-ups, new enterprise, take-over

Date of birth (of enterprise)

See: Date of creation (of enterprise)

Date of birth (of enterprise group)

See: Date of creation (of enterprise)

Date of birth (of legal unit)

See: Date of creation (of legal unit)

Date of birth (of local unit)

See: Date of creation (of local unit)

Date of cessation (of enterprise)

Date of final cessation of activities. It refers to the death or other deletion date of the enterprise (when it becomes historical) and is interpreted in a way similar to the corresponding variable for local units. A death amounts to the dissolution of a combination of production factors with the restriction that no other enterprises are involved in the event. Deaths do not include exits from the population due to mergers, take-overs, break-ups or restructuring of a set of enterprises. It does not include exits from a sub-population resulting only from a change of activity. An enterprise is included in the count of deaths only if it is not reactivated within two years. Equally, a reactivation within two years is not counted as a birth.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business), death (of enterprise)

Date of cessation (of enterprise group)

Date of cessation of the all-resident/truncated enterprise group. Cessation of a group means either death of the group (dissolution of the links of control between the units belonging to the group), or (more commonly) other cessation date by merger with or take-over by another group, or break-up, split-off, or restructure into two or more groups. The death of an enterprise group is the cessation of all control links, direct or indirect, between the legal units of which the enterprise group consists. The legal units become independent again or cease to exist. No other enterprise group is involved.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business), death (of enterprise group)

Date of cessation (of legal unit)

Date of cessation is not easy to collect but the registration of the event is far more important than the precise day and month of its having taken place. Basically, the legal unit ceases to be part of an enterprise when: The legal unit ceases to exist or the legal unit ceases to be economically active and it is not part of the control chain within the enterprise group. Between activity and real death, there is therefore often a period of inactivity during which the unit may be regarded as 'dormant'. A sign of such a situation would be the lack of employees, the cessation of tax compliance or the inability to contact the unit after repeated efforts.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business)

Date of cessation (of local unit)

Date of cessation of activities. It refers to the death or other deletion date of the local unit. As for legal units, this date may not be available with any precision, only the fact that the local unit has ceased to exist during the reference year may be known. Since the local unit is a part of an enterprise, situated in a geographically identified place, and the enterprise is a combination of production factors, the death of a local unit amounts to the dissolution of a (partial) combination of production factors at a geographically identified place.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business)

Date of creation (of enterprise)

Date of commencement of activities. The date refers to the date of birth, i.e. in principle the date on which the first financial commitments are made, although in practice it may refer to the registration date in the administrative source, if the unit starts its economic activities immediately after that. However, the legal unit may change and be reregistered for instance after a change of legal form, while the enterprise remains the same, because the continuity rules for enterprises should be applied.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Birth (of enterprise), creation (of business)

Date of creation (of enterprise group)

Date of commencement of the all-resident/truncated enterprise group. The date refers either to a date when a new all-resident group is born, or other creation date of a new group (by merger, break-up, split-off, or restructure). The birth of a new group may be difficult to define in practice, if the smallest groups of no statistical importance to the Member State are not monitored. The date from which the group is being monitored shall then be used as a proxy. However, the approximate dates are important in order to know from which year a certain multinational group is monitored in different countries."

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Birth (of enterprise group), creation (of business)

Date of creation (of legal unit)

Date of incorporation for legal persons or date of official recognition as an economic operator for natural persons - The "date of official recognition" should be the date on which an identification number is given, or the date on which the legal existence was approved, be it a company/trade register number, a VAT number or other.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Creation (of business)

Date of creation (of local unit)

Date of commencement of the activities - This date should refer to the birth or other creation date of the local unit according to the continuity rules.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Creation (of business)

Date of death (of business)

See: Date of cessation (of business)

Date of death (of enterprise)

See: Date of cessation (of enterprise)

Date of death (of enterprise group)

See: Date of cessation (of enterprise group)

Date of death (of legal unit)

See: Date of cessation (of legal unit)

Date of death (of local unit)

See: Date of cessation (of local unit)

Death (of enterprise)

The death of an enterprise refers to the dissolution of a combination of production factors with the restriction that no other enterprises are involved in the event. Deaths do not include exits from the population due to mergers, take-overs, break-ups or restructuring of a set of enterprises. It does not include exits from a sub-population resulting only from a change of activity.

Source: Commission Regulation No 2700/98 concerning definitions of characteristics for structural business statistics; see "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", edition 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Business closures, cessation (of business), date of cessation (of enterprise)

Death (of enterprise group)

The death of an enterprise group is the cessation of all control links, direct or indirect, between the legal units of which the enterprise group consists. The legal units become independent again or cease to exist. No other enterprise group is involved.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Business closures, cessation (of business), date of cessation (of enterprise group)

De-concentration

De-concentration refers to demographic events involving one enterprise before and more than one enterprise after the events by break-ups and split-offs. The term may also be used to denote that the population of enterprises gets more owners or is spread over a larger number of enterprise groups.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Break-up, split-off

Delineation

The various needs of the users of the business registers require providing different units correctly delineated with respect to structure, and characteristics of the unit. The delineation of statistical units is done by grouping or dividing administrative or other relevant units according to harmonised rules and also by using classifications to delineate the unit according to its activity, location or any other characteristics.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Statistical unit, profiling

Domestically controlled enterprise group

A domestically controlled enterprise group is a multinational group where the global decision-centre is in the country compiling the business register.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise group, foreign controlled enterprise group

Dormant unit

A unit is said to be dormant if it is legally alive and has legal personality, but does not carry on any activity and has neither employment nor turnover.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation of business, reactivation

Economic activity

Any activity comprising the offer of goods and services on a given market are economic activities. Additionally, non-market services contributing to the GDP as well as direct and indirect holdings of active legal units are economic activities for the purpose of statistical business registers.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Active unit, activity

Economic census

A survey conducted on the full set of observation objects belonging to a given business population.

Source: Economic Commission for Europe of the United Nations (UNECE), "Terminology on Statistical Metadata", Conference of European Statisticians Statistical Standards and Studies, No. 53, Geneva, 2000.

Link: <http://www.unece.org/stats/publications/53metadaterminology.pdf>

Related terms: Economic survey

Economic operator

See: Economic unit

Economic organisation

See: Economic unit

Economic statistics

Economic statistics describe the activities of economic transactors and the transactions that take place between them. In the real world, economic entities engaged in the production of goods and services vary in their legal, accounting, organizational and operating structures.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Business statistics

Economic survey

An investigation about the characteristics of a given business population by means of collecting data from a sample of that population and estimating their characteristics through the systematic use of statistical methodology

Source: Economic Commission for Europe of the United Nations (UNECE), "Terminology on Statistical Metadata", Conference of European Statisticians Statistical Standards and Studies, No. 53, Geneva, 2000.

Link: <http://www.unece.org/stats/publications/53metadaterminology.pdf>

Related terms: Economic census

Economic unit

An economic unit is a legal unit, or part of a legal unit, with economic production as defined in the current version of the SNA.

Related terms: Legal unit, economic production, statistical unit

Economic producer

See: Economic unit

Economic production

Economic production may be defined as an activity carried out under the control and responsibility of an institutional unit that uses inputs of labour, capital, and goods and services to produce outputs of goods or services.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Activity, economic unit

Employees

Employees are persons who, by agreement, work for a resident enterprise and receive a compensation for their labour. The relationship of employer to employee exists when there is an agreement, which may be formal or informal, between the employer and a person, normally entered into voluntarily by both parties, whereby the person works for the employer in return for remuneration in cash or in kind. The measurement is realized by the actual number of persons employed, and number of employees, both as head counts and, in the latter case, also in full-time equivalents (FTEs) defined as total hours worked divided by average annual hours worked in full-time jobs. The main uses of these characteristics are in stratification for sampling, analysis and dissemination purposes.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Employment, number of employees, number of persons employed

Employment

Employment includes all persons, both employees and self-employed persons, engaged in some productive activity that is undertaken by a resident enterprise.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Employees, self-employed

Enterprise

An enterprise is a legal unit (or the smallest set of legal units) producing economic goods and services with autonomy in respect of financial and investment decision-making, as well as authority and responsibility for allocating resources for the production of goods and services. It may be engaged in one or more productive activities. An enterprise may be a corporation (or quasi-corporation), a non-profit institution or an unincorporated enterprise. Corporate enterprises and non-profit institutions are complete institutional units. On the other hand, the term "unincorporated enterprise" refers to a household or government unit in its capacity as a producer of goods and services. The enterprise is the level of statistical unit at which information relating to its transactions, including financial and balance-sheet accounts, are maintained, and from which international transactions, an international investment position (when applicable), consolidated financial position and net worth can be derived.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Multinational enterprise, standard statistical unit

Enterprise group

An enterprise group is an association of enterprises bound together by legal and/or financial links. A group of enterprises can have more than one decision-making centre, especially for policy on production, sales and profit. It may centralise certain aspects of financial management and taxation. It constitutes an economic unit which is empowered to make choices, particularly concerning the units which it comprises. An enterprise group is a set of enterprises controlled by the group head.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: All-resident enterprise group, multinational enterprise group, truncated enterprise group

Establishment

The establishment is defined as an enterprise or part of an enterprise that is situated in a single location and in which only a single (non-ancillary) productive activity is carried out or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Standard statistical unit

EuroGroups Register (EGR)

The EuroGroups Register (EGR) is a network of registers, consisting of a central register kept at Eurostat and registers in each EU Member State and in EFTA countries. The central register contains information about multinational enterprise groups, which have statistically relevant financial and non-financial transnational operations in at least one of the European countries. Registers in the EU Member States and in EFTA countries contain information regarding multinational enterprise groups active in the respective countries and are fully consistent with the central register. The aim of the EGR network is to hold a complete, accurate, consistent and up-to-date set of linked and coordinated statistical registers, which offer compilers a common frame of multinational enterprise groups, global as well as

truncated national groups, operating in the economy of the EU and EFTA countries, together with their constituent legal units and enterprises and the ownership and control relationships between legal units.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: European System of interoperable statistical Business Registers, multinational enterprise group

European system of accounts (ESA 2010)

The European System of National and Regional Accounts (ESA) is an internationally compatible accounting framework for a systematic and detailed description of a total economy (that is a region, country or group of countries), its components and its relations with other total economies. The ESA is fully consistent with the world-wide guidelines on national accounting, namely the System of National Accounts (SNA).

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), "European System of National Accounts 2010", Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2013.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/documents/3859598/5925693/KS-02-13-269-EN.PDF/>

Related terms: System of National Accounts

European System of interoperable statistical Business Registers (ESBRs)

A project of the European Statistical System (2013 – 2017) to create a network of consistent and interoperable national statistical business registers in the EU and the statistical EuroGroups Register (EGR), which will operate as backbone for the European business statistics.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), "The European System of interoperable Business Registers (ESBRs)", Compact guides, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2013.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/documents/4031688/5931580/KS-03-13-411-EN.PDF>

Related terms: EuroGroups Register

Financial corporation

See: Institutional sector

Firm

The term firm usually refers to a market business unit. It is often used as synonym for company or unincorporated business.

Related terms: Business, Company

Foreign affiliate

An enterprise resident in the compiling country over which an institutional unit not resident in the compiling country has control, or an enterprise not resident in the compiling country over which an institutional unit resident in the compiling country has control.

Source: Eurostat, "Recommendations Manual on the Production of Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS)", Methodologies and Working papers, 2007 Edition

Link: http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/FATS_2007_EN.pdf

Related terms: Foreign Affiliates Trade in Services, foreign controlled enterprise group

Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS)

FATS mean statistics describing the overall activity of foreign affiliates. As there are two points of view with respect to the location of the affiliate, FATS is divided in two statistics, inward and outward FATS: Inward statistics on foreign affiliates describe the activity of foreign affiliates resident in the compiling economy. Outward statistics on foreign affiliates describe the activity of foreign affiliates abroad controlled by the compiling economy.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS) Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2012.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/web/products-manuals-and-guidelines/-/KS-RA-12-016>

Related terms: Foreign affiliate, foreign controlled enterprise group

Foreign controlled enterprise group

A foreign controlled enterprise group is a multinational group where the global decision centre is outside the country compiling the business register.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise group, foreign controlled enterprise group

Foreign direct investment (FDI) statistics

FDI statistics embody four distinct statistical accounts: Investment positions, financial transactions, associated income flows between enterprises that are related through a direct investment relationship, and other changes in the value of assets, especially revaluation terms. Direct investment is a category of cross-border investment associated with a resident in one economy (the direct investor) having control or a significant degree of influence on the management of an enterprise (the direct investment enterprise) that is resident in another economy.

Source: Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "OECD Benchmark Definition of Foreign Direct Investment", fourth edition, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/EconStatKB/Attachment549.aspx>

Related terms: Foreign Affiliate Trade in Services, inward foreign affiliate statistics (I-FATS), outward foreign affiliate statistics (O-FATS)

Franchise

The operation of a franchise network is a method of doing business that is popular in a number of service activities, especially hotels, restaurants, and retail sales. Franchisees are independent legal units which sign a contract with another legal unit, the franchiser, to engage in an activity making use of trademarks, trading styles and marketing support provided by the franchiser, usually in return for a fee or a share of the profits. A franchise contract typically includes a number of restrictive clauses limiting the franchisee's freedom of choice. The franchiser, in turn, offers scale economies without completely taking away the autonomy of the franchisee, for example by taking care of collective marketing. Franchise operators may or may not belong to the same enterprise group. Franchisees are deemed to be separate enterprises because they consist of a complete combination of factors of production, and they run the full entrepreneurial risk. Moreover, the definition of the enterprise requires autonomy but allows for this autonomy to be somewhat restricted ("a certain degree of autonomy" is required), and full accounts tend to be available only at the level of the separate franchisees. The franchiser is also regarded as a separate enterprise.

Source: Eurostat and Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat - OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Edition 2007)", Methodologies and Working Papers, Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise

Frame

The frame for a given survey is the subset of the frozen frame, comprising the set of units that match the specification of the survey target population. Thus, for example, a survey of employment will include units in all (or at least most) industries that are employers, i.e., will exclude units that are non-employers. A survey of manufacturing will include all units that have an ISIC code in the manufacturing group, whether they have employees or not. A survey of capital expenditure may include all units above a certain size. Thus the survey frames are typically different from one another but may be extracted from the same common set of units, i.e. a frozen frame. A frame may be referred to as a survey frame also as a sampling frame or a survey sampling frame.

Related terms: Frozen frame

Frame population

See: Frame

Frozen frame

The frozen frame is a subset of the snapshot that comprises all statistical units that are active, or potentially active, or active within the previous reference year. It also includes administrative units that are linked to these statistical units. The aim is to include all units and all characteristics that are used by subsequent processes. In other words it is a trimmed down version of the snapshot that is easier to manipulate because the possible large number of inactive units are not there. It may be further restricted by containing only units for which there are values for the characteristics that are to be used for frame extraction and sample selection for at least one survey.

Related terms: Frame, live register

Frozen register

See: Register snapshot

General government

See: Institutional sector

Global decision centre

Unit where the strategic decisions referring to an enterprise group are taken. The term UCI, ultimate controlling institutional unit, is equivalent to this term.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Global group head, multinational enterprise group, ultimate controlling unit

Global group head

The group head is a parent legal unit of an enterprise group, which is not controlled either directly or indirectly by any other legal unit. In the case of multinational enterprise groups global and domestic group heads can be identified. The global group head is the group head of the multinational enterprise group, the domestic group head is on the top of the truncated national part of the multinational enterprise group.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Global decision centre, multinational enterprise group

Government unit

Government units are unique kinds of legal entities established by political processes that have legislative, judicial or executive authority over other institutional units within a given area.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Institutional unit

GSBPM

The Generic Statistical Business Process Model (GSBPM) models the phases of the statistical business process and provides generic terms to describe them. The GSBPM is used to harmonise statistical computing infrastructures, facilitate the sharing of software components and provide a framework for process quality assessment and improvement. The GSBPM is intended to apply to all activities undertaken by producers of official statistics, at both the national and international levels, that result in data outputs. It is designed to be independent of the data source, so it can be used for the description and quality assessment of processes based on surveys, censuses, administrative records, and other non-statistical or mixed sources.

Source: United Nations European Commission for Europe (UNECE), Statistical Metadata Wiki (METIS-Wiki), last consulted on 1st May 2015.

Link: <http://www1.unece.org/stat/platform/display/metis/The+Generic+Statistical+Business+Process+Model>

Related terms: GSIM

GSIM

To produce official statistics a set of processes needs to be followed, such as those described in the Generic Statistical Business Process Model (GSBPM). However, as well as processes also information about flows between them exists (data, metadata, rules, parameters etc.). The Generic Statistical Information Model (GSIM) aims to define and describe these information objects in a harmonized way. GSIM provides a common language to describe information that supports the whole statistical production process from the identification of user needs through to the dissemination of statistical products.

Source: United Nations European Commission for Europe (UNECE), Statistical Metadata Wiki (METIS-Wiki), last consulted on 1st May 2015.

Link: <http://www1.unece.org/stat/platform/display/gsim/Brochures>

Related terms: GSBPM

Head office

Head offices are units exercising some aspects of managerial control over its subsidiaries. Their activities include the overseeing and managing of other units of the company or enterprise; undertaking the strategic or organizational planning and decision making role of the company or enterprise; exercising operational control and manage the day-to-day operations of their related units.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Holding company

Historical data

When a unit has ceased and is not dormant (temporary inactive), for purpose of reconstructing demographic events the record needs to be marked historical and not to be deleted physically.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation of business, historical register

Historical register

A historical register is a version of the register with the capacity to view the content of a live register at some time point in the past.

Related terms: Historical data, live register

Holding company

A holding company is a unit that holds the assets of subsidiary corporations but does not undertake any management activities. The principal activity of a holding is owning the group. The holding company does not provide any other service to the enterprises in which the equity is held, i.e. they do not administer or manage other units.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Head office

Horizontal integration

Horizontal integration occurs when an activity results in end-products with different characteristics. This could theoretically be interpreted as activities carried out simultaneously using the same factors of production, in which case it would often be impossible to separate such activities statistically into different processes, assign them to different units or generally provide separate data for them, nor would rules relying on allocation of value added or similar measures be applicable. Alternative indicators, such as gross output, might sometimes be applicable, but there is no general rule for identifying the single activity that best represents the mix included in this horizontal integration. Since patterns of horizontal integration have been considered in the preparation of the classification, in many cases commonly integrated activities are included in the same class of activity even though their outputs have quite different characters.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Activity, vertical integration

Household

See: Institutional sector

Identifier

The purpose of an identifier is to identify a unit and to link it with other units in the register and with administrative and statistical sources. The identity number of a legal unit can be either specific to the statistical business register or an external one, common or shared with other institutions in the Member State, a so called unique identifier.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Characteristic

Indirect control

Indirect control means that a parent unit has control over a sub unit (sub-subsidiary) through one or many other subsidiaries. Indirect control does not require the parent unit to own a majority of an integrated shareholding in the capital share of the sub-subsidiaries.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS) Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2012.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/web/products-manuals-and-guidelines/-/KS-RA-12-016>

Related terms: Control, ownership, Parent Corporation

Industry

An industry consists of a group of establishments engaged in the same, or similar, kinds of activity. At the most detailed level of classification, an industry consists of all the establishments falling within a single Class of International Standard Industrial Classification (ISIC). At higher levels of aggregation corresponding to the Groups, Divisions and, ultimately, Sections of the ISIC, industries consist of a number of establishments engaged in similar types of activities.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Establishment, kind-of-activity

Informal sector

The informal sector is broadly characterised as consisting of units engaged in the production of goods or services with the primary objective of generating employment and incomes to the persons concerned. These units typically operate at a low level of organisation, with little or no division between labour and capital as factors of production and on a small scale. Labour relations – where they exist – are based mostly on casual employment, kinship or personal and social relations rather than contractual arrangements with formal guarantees. The informal sector thus defined excludes households producing exclusively for own final use.

Source: Measuring the Non-Observed Economy: A Handbook, OECD, IMF, ILO, Interstate Statistical Committee of the Commonwealth of Independent States, 2002.

Link: <http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/9/20/1963116.pdf>

Related terms: Institutional sector

Institutional sector

In the 2008 SNA all resident institutional units are grouped together to form five institutional sectors, on the basis of their principal functions, behaviour and objectives:

S.11. Non-financial corporations are institutional units which are independent legal entities and market producers that are principally engaged in the production of goods and non-financial services.

S.12. Financial corporations are institutional units which are independent legal entities and market producers that are principally engaged in financial services including financial intermediation.

S.13. General Government consists of institutional units that, in addition to fulfilling their political responsibilities and their role of economic regulation, produce services (and possibly goods) for individual or collective consumption mainly on a non-market basis and redistribute income and wealth.

S.14. Households are institutional units consisting of individuals or groups of individuals as consumers and as entrepreneurs producing market goods and non-financial and financial services provided that the production of goods and services is not by separate entities treated as quasi-corporations. It also includes individuals or groups of individuals as producers of goods and non-financial services for exclusively own final use.

S.15. Non-profit institutions serving households (NPISHs) are separate legal entities which are non-market producers that are principally engaged in the production of services for households or the community at large and whose main resources are voluntary contributions.

ESA 2010 further divides the institutional sectors S.11 – S.14 into sub-sectors according to type of production (market or non-market) and control (government or non-government) of the institutional units.

No single method of sub-sectoring may be optimal for all purposes or all countries, so that alternative sub-sectoring may be useful. Dividing the total economy into sectors enhances the usefulness of the accounts for purposes of economic analysis by grouping together institutional units with similar objectives and types of behaviour. Sectors and subsectors are also needed in order to be able to target or monitor particular groups of institutional units for policy purposes.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009; European Commission (Eurostat), "European System of National Accounts 2010", Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2013.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf> and <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/documents/3859598/5925693/KS-02-13-269-EN.PDF/>

Related terms: Institutional unit

Institutional unit

An institutional unit is an economic unit that is capable, in its own right, of owning assets, incurring liabilities and engaging in economic activities and in transactions with other entities. Thus an institutional unit is entitled to own goods or assets in its own right; to exchange ownership of goods or assets in transactions with other institutional units, is able to take economic decisions and engage in economic activities for which it is itself held to be directly responsible and accountable at law, is able to incur liabilities on its own behalf, to take on other obligations or future commitments and to enter into contracts, has a complete set of accounts or it would be possible to compile a complete set of accounts if they were required.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Institutional sector, standard statistical unit

Inward statistics on foreign affiliates (I-FATS)

Inward statistics on foreign affiliates describe the activity of foreign affiliates resident in the compiling economy.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS) Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2012.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/web/products-manuals-and-guidelines/-/KS-RA-12-016>

Related terms: Foreign Affiliate Trade in Services, foreign direct investment (FDI) statistics, outward foreign affiliate statistics (O-FATS)

Kind-of-activity unit (KAU)

A kind-of-activity unit is an enterprise or part of an enterprise that engages in only one kind of productive activity or in which the principal productive activity accounts for most of the value added. Compared with the establishment, the KAU is not restricted on the geographic area in which the activity is carried out but it is characterized by homogeneity of activity.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isc-4.asp>

Related terms: Establishment

Legal form

The legal form (also known as legal status) is defined according to national legislation. It is useful for eliminating ambiguity in identification searches and as the possible criterion for selection or stratification for surveys. It is also used for defining the institutional sector. Statistics according to legal form are produced e.g. in business demography. The character of legal or natural person is decisive in fiscal terms, because the tax regime applicable to the unit depends on this. It means that any statistical register fed with fiscal records will have that information. Experience has shown that legal form will often be useful to make adjustments to information collection processes and questionnaires on the legal unit operating an enterprise. A code representing the legal form should therefore be recorded in accordance with the classification of legal forms or categories. The following legal forms can be found in most countries:

- Sole proprietorship: Enterprise owned exclusively by one natural person.
- Partnership: Association of persons who conduct a business under a collective name. It can take the form of a limited partnership.
- Limited liability companies: Enterprises comprising joint-stock companies, limited partnerships with share capital and private limited company.
- Co-operative societies: These are bodies set down by law in each country. They observe a number of general principles, for example they may only be entitled to provide their services to members, profits are often distributed in proportion to members' dealings with the society, etc.
- Non-profit institutions
- Enterprises with other forms of legal constitution: This group includes non taxative nationalised industries in form of publicly-owned enterprises and state or local authority monopolies.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Legal person, legal unit

Legal person

The term "legal person" corresponds to all forms of legal construction organised by the constitution and laws of countries and endowed with rights and obligations characteristic of legal personality.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Legal form, legal unit, natural person

Legal unit

Legal units include:

- Legal persons whose existence is recognised by law independently of the individuals or institutions which may own them or are members of them.
- Natural persons who are engaged in an economic activity in their own right.

The legal unit is usually recorded in one or more administrative sources. The sources used for statistical business registers do not necessarily provide identical views of legal units. These units can vary both between different sources within a country and between countries. Thus the legal unit is not suitable as a statistical unit, particularly for international comparisons. The characteristics of a legal unit are: it owns goods or assets, it incurs liabilities and it enters into contracts. The legal unit always forms, either by itself or sometimes in combination with other legal units, the basis for the statistical unit known as the "enterprise".

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Legal form, legal person, natural person

Live Register

An important role of the SBR is to maintain and to keep track of changes in statistical units and their characteristics that occur in the economy. Maintenance is a continuous process in which constant modifications of the set of statistical units occur over time. The extent of the modifications depends on the update strategy of the SBR. In this respect the SBR is considered to be a live register in which the composition and characteristics of units constantly change over time.

The live register is a vehicle for bringing together data from the various sources that provide the basis for derivation of statistical units. It is the starting point for communications with the owners of the sources and for discussions about units. Legal units are usually the building blocks for creating statistical units. In some countries the SBR is the only environment in which legal units of all forms are brought together. Statistical units are created in the live register.

Related terms: Administrative business register, EuroGroups Register

Local kind-of-activity unit (local KAU)

See: Establishment

Local unit

A local unit is an enterprise or part of an enterprise (for example, a workshop, factory, warehouse, office, mine or depot) that is engaged in productive activity at or from one location. The definition has only one dimension in that it does not refer to the kind of activity that is carried out.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Enterprise, statistical unit

Majority ownership

A single investor controls an enterprise by holding a majority (more than 50 %) of the voting power or of the shares, directly or indirectly. While majority ownership is the major criterion for determining control, it is not indispensable for exercising control. A government can exert control through a legislative decree or regulation, empowering it (the government) to determine the enterprise's policy or to appoint (a majority of) directors.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS) Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2012.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/web/products-manuals-and-guidelines/-/KS-RA-12-016>

Related terms: Control, ownership

Market producer

A market producer is a corporation that is created for the purpose of producing goods or services for sale on the market at prices that are economically significant.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Non-market output, production unit

Master frame

See: Frozen frame

Merger

Enterprises may integrate to the extent that the number of existing enterprises is reduced. If two enterprises integrate entirely, the enterprises involved may lose their identity because they are dissolved beyond recognition in the new organisation. If both enterprises lose their identity, the event is called a merger. There is no continuity or survival, but the closures of the previous enterprises are not considered to be real deaths. Similarly the new enterprise is not considered to be a real birth. This event can be seen as the opposite of a break-up.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: enterprise, take-over (of enterprise)

Multinational enterprise group

A multinational enterprise group is an enterprise group which has at least two enterprises or legal units located in different countries.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: All-resident enterprise group, enterprise group, truncated enterprise group

National Statistical Authority (NSA)

See: National Statistical Institute

National Statistical Institute (NSI)

The national statistical institute is the leading statistical body within a national statistical system that is in charge of producing and disseminating official statistics.

Source: Measuring the Non-Observed Economy: A Handbook, OECD, IMF, ILO, Interstate Statistical Committee of the Commonwealth of Independent States, 2002, Annex 2, Glossary

Link: <http://www.oecd.org/dataoecd/9/20/1963116.pdf>

Related terms: National Statistical Authority, National Statistical Office

National Statistical Office (NSO)

See: National Statistical Institute

Natural person

The term natural person is used by the law and by many administrative authorities to denote a human being endowed with all the rights constituting legal personality.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Legal person

Nature of business survey

See: SBR improvement survey

New enterprise

See: Birth of enterprise, creation (of business)

Non-financial corporation

See: Institutional sector

Non-market output

Non-market output consists of goods and individual or collective services produced by non-profit institutions serving households (NPISHs) or government that are supplied free, or at prices that are not economically significant, to other institutional units or the community as a whole. A price is said to be not economically significant when it has little or no influence on how much the producer is prepared to supply and is expected to have only a marginal influence on the quantities demanded.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Market producer

Non-observed economy

The term is used to describe activities that, for one reason or another, are not captured in regular statistical enquiries. The reason may be that the activity is informal and thus escapes the attention of surveys geared to formal activities, the producer may be anxious to conceal a legal activity, or it may be that the activity is illegal.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Informal sector, Market producer

Non-profit institution (NPI)

Most NPIs are separately identified institutional units. That is, they are capable in their own right of owning assets, incurring liabilities and engaging in economic activities and in transactions with other entities. It follows that a complete set of accounts for the unit, including a balance sheet of assets and liabilities, exists or could be constructed if required. NPIs are categorized as follows:

- a. those providing services to corporations whose output is sold to the corporations concerned and treated as intermediate consumption;
- b. those that are controlled by government and provide individual or collective services on a non-market basis;
- c. those providing goods and services to households, divided between: those that provide goods and services to individual households at economically significant prices; those providing services to individual households free or at prices that are not economically significant and those that provide collective services free or at prices that are not economically significant.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Non-market output, NPISH

Non-profit institution serving households (NPISHs)

See: Institutional sector

Number of employees

Number of employees is defined as those persons who work for an employer and who have a contract of employment and receive compensation in the form of wages, salaries, fees, gratuities, piecework pay or remuneration in kind. A worker from an employment agency is considered to be an employee of that employment agency and not of the units in which they (temporarily) work.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms Employees, employment, number of persons employed

Number of persons employed

Number of persons employed is defined as the total number of persons who work in the unit, including wage-earners and self-employed persons (i.e., working proprietors, partners working regularly in the unit and unpaid family workers) as well as persons who work outside the unit but who belong to it and are paid by it (e.g., sales representatives, delivery personnel, repair and maintenance teams). It excludes manpower supplied to the unit by other enterprises, persons carrying out repair and maintenance work in the unit on behalf of other enterprises, as well as those on compulsory military service.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms Employees, employment, number of employees

Observation unit

A unit about which data are obtained during the course of a survey. Usually a statistical unit, or, if data cannot be obtained about a statistical unit, then some other unit about which data can be obtained and from which data for a statistical unit can be compiled.

Related terms: Reporting unit, statistical unit

Offshoring

Offshoring is generally defined as companies' purchases of intermediate goods and services from foreign providers at arm's length or the transfer of particular tasks within the firm to a foreign location, i.e. to foreign affiliates.

Source: Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Measuring Globalisation: OECD Economic Globalisation Indicators 2010", OECD, 2010.

Link: <http://www.oecd-ilibrary.org/docserver/download/9210031e.pdf?expires=1421077118&id=id&accname=ocid194935&checksum=9AC2705CA7526D789461FA65C002DF58>

Related terms: Outsourcing

Operational unit

A unit defined by a legal unit for the purposes of organising itself, for example a division, branch, workshop, warehouse, or outlet. In small enterprises, the operational and legal structures often coincide and may even be embodied in a single unit. For large enterprises, the operational structure may be different from the legal structure, coinciding with it only at the highest level of the business. In such cases, the organizational and production units of the enterprise's operational structure may differ from the units of their legal structure. The statistical units of large and complex institutional units may be delineated through a process referred to as profiling. Profiling identifies the enterprise, its legal structure, its operating structure, and the production and organizational units that are used to derive the statistical units.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Legal unit

Outsourcing

Outsourcing refers to the purchasing of intermediate goods and services from outside specialist providers at arm's length either nationally or internationally.

Source: Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Measuring Globalisation: OECD Economic Globalisation Indicators 2010", OECD, 2010.

Link: <http://www.oecd-ilibrary.org/docserver/download/9210031e.pdf?expires=1421077118&id=id&accname=ocid194935&checksum=9AC2705CA7526D789461FA65C002DF58>

Related terms: Offshoring

Outward statistics on foreign affiliates (O-FATS)

Outward statistics on foreign affiliates describe the activity of foreign affiliates abroad controlled by the compiling economy.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Foreign Affiliates Statistics (FATS) Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2012.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/web/products-manuals-and-guidelines/-/KS-RA-12-016>

Related terms: Foreign Affiliate Trade in Services, foreign direct investment (FDI) statistics, inward foreign affiliate statistics (I-FATS)

Ownership

The ownership of a unit or a group of units is related to the property of its assets and determines the distribution of financial flows and income. If a unit or group of units is owned by shareholders, its ownership is vested in the shareholders collectively and can be seen as diffused among the legal units that own its shares in proportion to their shareholdings, and independently of voting rights.

Source: Eurostat, "Business registers. Recommendations manual", Methodologies and Working Papers, Publications Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Control, parent corporation, subsidiary

Parent corporation

See: Control

Principal activity

Principal activity: The principal activity is the activity which contributes most to the total value added of the unit under consideration. Ideally, the principal activity of the unit should be determined with reference to the value added to the goods and services produced, by applying the top-down method. The top-down method follows a hierarchical principle: the classification of the unit at the lowest level of the classification must be consistent with the classification of the unit at the higher levels. The principal activity so identified does not necessarily account for 50% or more of the entity's total value added. In case that the value added is not known, substitute criteria can be used as proxies to obtain the best approximation possible compared to the result which would have been obtained on the basis of value added data.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Activity, economic activity, ancillary activity, secondary activity

Producer

See: Production unit

Producing unit

See: Production unit

Product

Products are goods and services (including knowledge-capturing products) that result from a process of production. They are exchanged and used for various purposes: as inputs in the production of other goods and services, as final consumption or for investment. The SNA makes a conceptual distinction between market, own final use and non-market goods and services, allowing in principle any kind of good or service to be any of these three types.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009"

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Non-market outcome, production unit

Production unit

A production unit carries out an economic activity under the control and responsibility of an institutional unit using inputs of labour, capital and goods and services to produce outputs of goods and services. Enterprises can be very heterogeneous if they have several secondary activities that are quite different from their principal activities. In order to obtain groups of producers whose activities are more homogeneous, enterprises are partitioned into smaller and more homogeneous units of production like local units, kind-of-activity units, and establishments.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009"

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Economic unit, institutional units, market producer, product, statistical unit

Profiling

Method to analyse the legal, operational and accounting structure of an enterprise group at national and world level, in order to establish the statistical units within that group, their links, and the most efficient structures for the collection of statistical data.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Delineation

Property

See: Characteristic

Quality improvement survey

See: SBR improvement survey

Quality

Users of statistical business registers want those registers to be 'of good quality'. It is therefore important to establish what level of quality is required, to have a policy to monitor and, where necessary, to improve the quality of the register. This approach is consistent with the definition of quality in the ISO standard 9000:2000, which states that quality is the "degree to which a set of inherent characteristics fulfils requirements". Therefore the quality of statistical business registers can be determined by the extent to which they meet user needs. The main aspects of quality are:

- Relevance
- Accuracy
- Timeliness and punctuality
- Accessibility and clarity
- Comparability
- Coherence

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Quality indicator

Quality indicators

Quality indicator is an indicator of the degree of quality of a certain quality aspect.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "ESS Handbook for quality Reports", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2009.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/documents/3859598/6651706/KS-GQ-15-003-EN-N.pdf/18dd4bf0-8de6-4f3f-9adb-fab92db1a568>

Related terms: Quality

Quasi-corporations

Some unincorporated enterprises may behave in much the same way as corporations. In the SNA such enterprises should be treated as quasi-corporations if they have a complete set of accounts, and included with corporations in the non-financial and financial corporations sectors. SNA recognises three main kinds of quasi-corporations: a) Unincorporated enterprises owned by government units engaged in market production and operated in a similar way to publicly owned corporations; b) Unincorporated enterprises, including unincorporated partnerships or trusts, owned by households that are operated as if they were privately owned corporations; c) Unincorporated enterprises that belong to institutional units resident abroad, referred to as "branches". The SBR should cover quasi-corporations.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009"

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Corporations, unincorporated enterprise

Reactivation

This event involves an enterprise becoming dormant for a period of less than two years, then recommencing activity in a way that complies with the definition of continuity. In terms of business demography this event does not constitute a birth or death.

Source: Eurostat and Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat - OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Edition 2007)", Methodologies and Working Papers, Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Dormant unit

Register picture

See: Register snapshot

Register snapshot

A copy of all the statistical units in the live register as of a given point in time, including all administrative units or links from statistical units to administrative units. The snapshot is an intermediary step between the live register and the frozen frame. It is used to check for errors that have crept in during processing since the previous snapshot, also as the basis for a historical record. It may contain many inactive enterprises.

Related terms: Live register, frozen frame

Reporting unit

The reporting unit is the unit that reports to the survey authority. It reports information for each of the observation units. In certain cases it may correspond to an observation unit. An example where it is not the same is where an accounting business reports data on behalf of a client business that is the actual subject of the survey.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Observation unit

Restructuring

Restructuring within an enterprise does not affect the continuity of the enterprise, but changes its structure in the process. An example could be the creation or deletion of a local unit. Restructuring may affect key characteristics such as size or principal activity. It could be argued that this is not really a demographic event at the level of the enterprise and does not impact on the demographic variables relating to the enterprise, but it could affect the way the enterprise is included in demographic statistics. Restructuring within an enterprise group is a change (e.g. creation and/or cessation of one or more enterprises) involving more than one enterprise before and more than one enterprise after the event, where all enterprises involved are under common control. It affects the identity of at least one enterprise, though the total number of enterprises before and after the event may be the same. A typical example is the complete reorganisation of the production capacity of a large enterprise group. Complex restructuring is a similar event, but this is not constrained to one enterprise group. Restructuring within an enterprise group, or complex restructuring, may entail any number of register creations and deletions.

Source: Eurostat and Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat - OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Edition 2007)", Methodologies and Working Papers, Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Continuity, survival

Revenue

See: Turnover

Sampling Frame

See: Frame

Satellite

A statistical business register may be quite a complex network of databases and functionalities. An approach that can be used to extend the functionality with minimum complication is to extract parts or the whole of one or more frozen frames from the SBR and afterwards link information from other data sources to its units. The resulting product, which is maintained outside and independent of the SBR, is called an SBR satellite. The responsibility for and control of a satellite are separated from the SBR and usually take place in a different environment.

Related terms: Statistical business register

Secondary activity

A secondary activity is each separate activity that produces products eventually for third parties and that is not the principal activity of the unit in question. The outputs of secondary activities are secondary products. Most economic entities produce at least some secondary products.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isc-4.asp>

Related terms: Activity, economic activity, ancillary activity, principal activity

Self-employed

Self-employed persons are persons who are the sole or joint owners of the unincorporated enterprises in which they work. Persons who work in unincorporated enterprises are classed as self-employed persons if they are not in paid employment that constitutes their principal source of income; in that latter case, they are classified as employees.

Source: "System of National Accounts 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Employment

Small and medium-sized enterprises

Small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) are non-subsidary, independent firms which employ less than a given number of employees. This number varies across countries. The most frequent upper limit designating an SME is 250 employees, as in the European Union. However, some countries set the limit at 200 employees, while the United States considers SMEs to include firms with fewer than 500 employees. Small firms are generally those with fewer than 50 employees, while micro-enterprises have at most 10, or in some cases 5, workers. Financial assets are also used to define SMEs. In the European Union, a new definition came into force on 1 January 2005 applying to all Community acts and funding programmes as well as in the field of State aid where SMEs can be granted higher intensity of national and regional aid than large companies. The definition includes the financial ceilings: the turnover of medium-sized enterprises (50-249 employees) should not exceed EUR 50 million; that of small enterprises (10-49 employees) should not exceed EUR 10 million while that of micro firms (less than 10 employees) should not exceed EUR 2 million. Alternatively, balance sheets for medium, small and micro enterprises should not exceed EUR 43 million, EUR 10 million and EUR 2 million, respectively.

Source: OECD Glossary of statistical terms

Link: <http://stats.oecd.org/glossary/>

Related terms: Enterprise

Special purpose entity (SPE)

There is no common definition of an SPE but some of the following characteristics may apply. Such units often have no employees and no non-financial assets. They may have little physical presence beyond a "brass plate" confirming their place of registration. They are always related to another corporation, often as a subsidiary, and SPEs in particular are often resident in a territory other than the territory of residence of the related corporations. In the absence of any

physical dimension to an enterprise, its residence is determined according to the economic territory under whose laws the enterprise is incorporated or registered. Entities of this type are commonly managed by employees of another corporation which may or may not be a related one. The unit pays fees for services rendered to it and in turn charges its parent or other related corporation a fee to cover these costs. This is the only production the unit is involved in though it will often incur liabilities on behalf of its owner and will usually receive investment income and holding gains on the assets it holds. Whether a unit has all or none of these characteristics, and whether it is described as an SPE or some similar designation or not, it is treated in the SNA in the same way as any other institutional unit by being allocated to sector and industry according to its principal activity unless it falls into one of the three following categories: Captive financial institutions, artificial subsidiaries of corporations, or special purpose units of general government.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Institutional unit

Split-off (of enterprise)

Split-off involves one enterprise before and more than one enterprise after the event. In a split-off, the new enterprise(s) is (are) generally much smaller and the identity of the original enterprise is retained by the larger enterprise. There is no death, but one or more new enterprises are created. This event can be seen as the opposite of a takeover."

Source: Eurostat and Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat - OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics (Edition 2007)", Methodologies and Working Papers, Office for Official Publications of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Break-up (of enterprise), new enterprise

Standard Statistical units

Statistical units are the units for which information is sought and for which statistics are ultimately compiled. Commonly used types of statistical units for economic statistics are the enterprise, the enterprise group, the kind-of-activity unit (KAU), the local unit and the establishment (in Europe called local kind-of-activity unit (LKAU)). In national accounts also the institutional unit is of importance.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/isic-4.asp>

Related terms: Legal unit, institutional unit

Statistical Business Register (SBR)

The statistical business register is a fully and comprehensive, regularly updated and structured list of business units engaged in the production of goods and services, which is maintained by national statistical authorities for statistical purposes to assist the compilation of statistical data and particular as a (backbone) tool for the preparation and coordination of surveys, as a source of information for statistical analysis of the business population and its demography, for the use of administrative data, and for the identification and construction of statistical units.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Administrative business register

SBR survey

See: SBR improvement survey

SBR coverage survey

See: SBR improvement survey

SBR improvement survey

A survey conducted by statisticians to improve SBR quality.

Related terms: Statistical business register

SBR quality improvement survey

See: SBR improvement survey

Statistical unit

See: Standard statistical units

Subcontracting

See: Outsourcing

Subsidiary

A subsidiary is a company controlled by another company. A subsidiary is a corporation in which over 50 per cent of the voting power is held by their respective parents.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Branch, control, ownership

Survey Frame

See: Frame

Survival

In general, survival occurs when a unit is active and identifiable both before and after a specific (business) demographic event. The unit may be changed in some way, e.g. in terms of economic activity, size, ownership or location, but there should be continuity of the unit reference number in the statistical business register.

In the Business Demography context, survival occurs if an enterprise is active in terms of employment and/or turnover in the year of birth and the following year(s). An enterprise is also considered to have survived if the linked legal unit(s) have ceased to be active, but their activity has been taken over by a new legal unit set up specifically to take over the factors of production of that enterprise (= survival by take-over)."

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Business demography, continuity

System of National Accounts (SNA)

The System of National Accounts (SNA) is the internationally agreed standard set of recommendations on how to compile measures of economic activity in accordance with strict accounting conventions based on economic principles. The recommendations are expressed in terms of a set of concepts, definitions, classifications and accounting rules that comprise the internationally agreed standard for measuring such items as gross domestic product (GDP), the most frequently quoted indicator of economic performance. The accounts present in a condensed way a mass of detailed information, organized according to economic principles and perceptions, about the working of an economy. They provide a comprehensive and detailed record of the complex economic activities taking place within an economy and of the interaction between the different economic agents, and groups of agents, which takes place on markets or elsewhere.

The System of National Accounts (SNA) has been prepared under the joint responsibility of the United Nations, the International Monetary Fund, the Commission of the European Communities, the OECD and the World Bank. The SNA is designed to give a realistic and compact view of the economy that is suitable for policy and analytical use.

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: European System of Accounts (ESA)

Take-over (of enterprise)

Enterprises may integrate to the extent that the number of existing enterprises is reduced. If two enterprises integrate entirely, one of the enterprises may remain largely the same. In this case the other enterprise is generally much smaller, it is merely absorbed by the larger enterprise, which remains the same. If one of the enterprises keeps its identity, the event is called a take-over. Enterprises taken over are not considered to be real deaths. In this case, one of the original enterprises does survive in a recognisable form, and therefore there is both continuity and survival. The remaining original enterprises are closed. This event can be seen as the opposite of a split-off.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business), death (of enterprise), merger,

Take-over (of enterprise group)

Like enterprises, enterprise groups may have many kinds of intergroup relations and integrate their operations partly or totally. Two (or more) enterprise groups may integrate entirely and become one group. In this process either both groups involved may lose their identity, because they are dissolved beyond recognition in the new organisation, or one group may remain largely the same. In the latter case the other group is generally much smaller; it is merely absorbed by the larger group, which remains largely the same. If one of them keeps its identity, it is called a take-over.

Source: European Commission (Eurostat), Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), "Eurostat – OECD Manual on Business Demography Statistics", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Communities, Luxembourg, 2007.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-RA-07-010-EN.pdf>

Related terms: Cessation (of business), death (of enterprise group), merger,

Truncated enterprise group

A truncated enterprise group consists of the enterprises and the legal units of a multinational enterprise group, which are resident in the same country. It may comprise only one unit, if the other units are non-resident. An enterprise may be the truncated group or part thereof. A truncated group may consist of several units and subgroups, which can appear seemingly unlinked if their parent is non-resident, but actually belong to the same multinational enterprise.

Source: European Commission, Eurostat, "Business Registers Recommendations Manual", Methodologies and Working papers, Publication Office of the European Union, Luxembourg, 2010.

Link: <http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Related terms: All-resident enterprise group, enterprise group, multinational enterprise group

Turnover

Turnover comprises the totals invoiced by the observation unit during the reference period, and this corresponds to market sales of goods or services supplied to third parties. Turnover also includes all other charges (transport, packaging, etc.) passed on to the customer, even if these charges are listed separately in the invoice. Turnover excludes VAT and other similar deductible taxes directly linked to turnover as well as all duties and taxes on the goods or services invoiced by the unit. Reduction in prices, rebates and discounts as well as the value of returned packing are not taken into account. Income classified as other operating income, financial income and extraordinary income in company accounts is excluded from turnover.

Source: European Union, Commission Regulation (EC) No 2700/98 of 17 December 1998 concerning the definitions of characteristics for structural business statistics Indices of Distributive Trade: Handbook on Good Practices, United Nations, 2010, pag.34

Link: <http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:L:1998:344:0049:0080:EN:PDF>

Synonyms: Revenue

Ultimate controlling institutional unit (UCI)

See: Global decision centre

Unincorporated enterprise

An unincorporated enterprise represents the production activity of a government unit, NPISH or household that cannot be treated as the production activity of a quasi-corporation. An unincorporated enterprise is a producer unit which is not incorporated as a legal unit separate from the owner (household, government or foreign resident); the fixed and other assets used in unincorporated enterprises do not belong to the enterprises but to their owners, the enterprises as such cannot engage in transactions with other economic units nor can they enter into contractual relationships with other units nor incur liabilities on their own behalf; in addition, their owners are personally liable, without limit, for any debts or obligations incurred in the course of production (2008 SNA: 4.21; 5.1).

Source: "System of National Accounts, 2008", United Nations, New York, 2009

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

Related terms: Enterprise

Variable

The term equals the meaning of the term "characteristic" but is more appropriate in the case of surveys where sampling is involved and thus the notion of variability due the probability mechanism applied for selecting samples.

Related terms: Characteristic

Vertical integration

The vertical integration of activities is given wherever the different stages of production are carried out in succession within a unit and the output of one process serves as input to the next.

Source: United Nations, Statistics Division, "International Standard Industrial Classification of all Economic Activities (ISIC)", Statistical Papers Series M No. 4, Rev. 4, New York, 2008.

Link: <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/cr/registry/iscic-4.asp>

Related terms: Activity, horizontal integration

References

UN and other international agencies

Conducting agricultural censuses and surveys. FAO Statistical Development Series, No. 6. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (1996)

http://www.fao.org/fileadmin/templates/ess/documents/publications_studies/publications/SDS_6_Conducting_agricultural_censuses_and_surveys.pdf

Generic Statistical Business Process Model

UN Economic Commission for Europe

<http://www1.unece.org/stat/platform/display/GSBPM/GSBPM+v5.0>

Guidelines for Building Statistical Business Register in Africa

African Development Bank (latest version, 2014)

<http://www.afdb.org/en/knowledge/publications/guidelines-for-building-statistical-business-registers-in-africa/>

International Standard Industrial Classification of All Economic Activities (ISIC) Revision 4

Statistical Paper Series M No.4/Rev4, United Nations (2008)

http://unstats.un.org/unsd/publication/seriesM/seriesm_4rev4e.pdf

ISO 9000:2005 Quality management systems -- Fundamentals and vocabulary

International Standards Organisation (2005)

http://www.iso.org/iso/catalogue_detail?csnumber=42180

Measuring informality: A statistical manual on the informal sector and informal employment International Labour Organization (2013)

http://www.ilo.org/wcmsp5/groups/public/---dgreports/---dcomm/---publ/documents/publication/wcms_222979.pdf

Measuring the Non-Observed Economy: A Handbook

Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (2002)

<http://www.oecd.org/std/na/1963116.pdf>

National Quality Assurance Frameworks

United Nations Statistics Division

<http://unstats.un.org/unsd/dnss/QualityNOAF/nqaf.aspx>

Resolution concerning statistics of employment in the informal sector,

adopted by the Fifteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians

(January 1993)

http://www.ilo.org/wcmsp5/groups/public/---dgreports/---stat/documents/normativeinstrument/wcms_087484.pdf

System of National Accounts 2008

United Nations et al, New York, 2009

<http://unstats.un.org/unsd/nationalaccount/docs/SNA2008.pdf>

System of Environmental-Economic Accounting 2012

United Nations, et al, New York 2014

http://unstats.un.org/unsd/envaccounting/seeaRev/SEEA_CF_Final_en.pdf

Working Paper on Statistical Business Registers
United Nations Statistical Division and Eurostat (2011)

European Commission and EUROSTAT

Business Registers Recommendations Manual

Eurostat, Methodologies and Working Papers, Publications Office of the European Union, Luxembourg (2010)

<http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/KS-32-10-216-EN-C-EN.pdf>

Business Register Regulation 2008

Regulation (EC) No. 177/2008 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 February 2008

<http://eur-lex.europa.eu/legal-content/en/TXT/?uri=CELEX:32008R0177>

European System of National Accounts

EU Regulation (EC° N° 549/2013) of 21 May 2013 on the European system of national and regional accounts in the European Union

<http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=OJ:L:2013:174:0001:0727:EN:PDF>

Framework Regulation for Integrated Business Statistics (FRIBS)

Eurostat (Draft, 2014)

Handbook on Data Quality Assessment Methods and Tools

EUROSTAT (2007)

http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/statmanuals/files/Handbook_on_data_qual_assess_tools.pdf

Handbook on Methodology on Modern Business Statistics (MEMOBUST)

Eurostat, Luxembourg 2014

<http://www.cros-portal.eu/content/handbook-methodology-modern-business-statistics>

Manual on Business Demography Statistics

EUROSTAT, OECD

ISBN 978-92-79-04726-8 (2007)

<http://www.oecd.org/std/39974460.pdf>

Seventh Council Directive 83/349/EEC of 13 June 1983 based on Article 54(3)(g) of the Treaty on consolidated accounts

http://europa.eu/legislation_summaries/internal_market/businesses/company_law/l26010_en.htm

Report of the Work Package B of the ESSnet on profiling large and complex MNEs: Conceptual framework, methodology, rules and standards

Eurostat (2014)

Statistical Units Regulation

Council regulation (EEC) No 696/93 of 15 March 1993 ()

<http://eur-lex.europa.eu/LexUriServ/LexUriServ.do?uri=CONSLEG:1993R0696:20081211:EN:PDF>

Task Force on Statistical Units: Conclusions of meeting 21-22 January 2014 ESTAT/G1/TF SU/21-22

Eurostat (January 2014)

National statistical institutes and statisticians

A theory for record linkage

Fellegi, I.P. & A.B. Sunter, *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 64, pp. 1183-1210, 1969

Checklist for the Quality Evaluation of Administrative Data Sources

Piet Daas, Saskia Ossen, Rachel Vis-Visschers and Judit Arends-Tóth Piet Daas, Saskia Ossen, Rachel Vis-Visschers and Judit Arends-Tóth,

Discussion paper 09042, Statistics Netherlands (2009)

<http://www.cbs.nl/nr/rdonlyres/0dbc2574-cdae-4a6d-a68a-88458cf05fb2/0/200942x10pub.pdf>

DANE, Metodología Directorio Estadístico de Empresas –DEST–, Bogotá, D. C, Colombia. Versión 5. 2013.

http://www.dane.gov.co/files/investigaciones/boletines/ipp/bol_ipp_ago13.pdf

Data Quality and Record Linkage Techniques,

Thomas N. Herzog, Fritz J. Scheuren, William E. Winkler

Springer 2007,

Data quality: A statistical perspective

Karr, A.F., Sanil, A.P., Banks, D.L.

Statistical Methodology, 3, pp. 137-173 (2006)

Re-thinking Statistics Canada's Business Register

Bérard, Hélène, Pursey, Stuart & Rancourt, Eric., *Statistics Canada*.

https://fcsml.sites.usa.gov/files/2014/05/2005FCSM_Rancourt_Berard_Pursey_IVB.pdf

Seeing the whole elephant: A proposed experiment on measuring the activities of multinational enterprises

Richard Barnabé, *Statistics Canada* (2003)

<http://www.unece.org/fileadmin/DAM/stats/documents/ces/2003/13.e.pdf>

Statistical Business Register: Content, place and role in Economic Statistics.

Ritzen, Jean. *Statistics Netherlands*

http://ec.europa.eu/eurostat/ramon/coded_files/RITZEN_Jean_SBR.pdf

String comparator metrics and enhanced decision rules in the Fellegi-Sunter model of record linkage

Winkler, W.E., *Proceedings of the Section on Survey Research Methods, American Statistical Association*, pp. 354-359, 1990

The French Business Register: From a quality approach to a statistical register.

Projects on the Improvement of Business Register, Session 5.

<http://www.oecd.org/industry/business-stats/41691270.pdf>

UNIMATCH –a computer system for generalized record linkage under conditions of uncertainty

Jaro, M.A., *Spring Joint Computer Conference, 1972, AFIPSL-Conference Proceedings*, 40, pp.523-530, 1972

Joint UNECE/Eurostat/OECD Expert Group on Business Registers

Paper and proceedings of meetings of the Expert Group on Business Registers are available through the UNECE website:

www.unece.org/stats

Wiesbaden Group on business Registers

Paper and proceedings of the meetings of the Wiesbaden Group are available through the UN website:

<http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/citygroup/wiesbaden.htm>

Guidelines on Statistical Business Registers

The statistical business register plays a central role in the production of economic statistics. Both in terms of the way the statistics are produced and in terms of the content and quality of the statistics. To assist countries the Guidelines on Statistical Business Registers provides practical guidance and recommendations on the establishment and maintenance of statistical business registers.

The Guidelines consist of 12 chapters – an introductory chapter followed by substantive chapters dealing with the roles of the SBR; coverage; statistical units and their characteristics; data sources; maintenance; frame methodology; dissemination; quality; organizational, database and other IT issues; and topics for further work and research. The Guidelines include also a number of annexes on methodological issues and country examples, and an extensive glossary.

An electronic version of the Guidelines is available from the UNECE Statistical Division's website, www.unece.org/stats

Information Service
United Nations Economic Commission for Europe

Palais des Nations
CH - 1211 Geneva 10, Switzerland
Telephone: +41(0)22 917 44 44
Fax: +41(0)22 917 05 05
E-mail: info.ece@unece.org
Website: <http://www.unece.org>